

CANADIAN THESES ON MICROFICHE

I.S.B.N.

THESES CANADIENNES SUR MICROFICHE



National Library of Canada
Collections Development Branch

Canadian Theses on
Microfiche Service

Ottawa, Canada
K1A 0N4

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada
Direction du développement des collections

Service des thèses canadiennes:
sur microfiche

NOTICE

The quality of this microfiche is heavily dependent upon the quality of the original thesis submitted for microfilming. Every effort has been made to ensure the highest quality of reproduction possible.

If pages are missing, contact the university which granted the degree.

Some pages may have indistinct print especially if the original pages were typed with a poor typewriter ribbon or if the university sent us a poor photocopy.

Previously copyrighted materials (journal articles, published tests, etc.) are not filmed.

Reproduction in full or in part of this film is governed by the Canadian Copyright Act, R.S.C. 1970, c. C-30. Please read the authorization forms which accompany this thesis.

THIS DISSERTATION
HAS BEEN MICROFILMED
EXACTLY AS RECEIVED

AVIS

La qualité de cette microfiche dépend grandement de la qualité de la thèse soumise au microfilmage. Nous avons tout fait pour assurer une qualité supérieure de reproduction.

S'il manque des pages, veuillez communiquer avec l'université qui a conféré le grade.

La qualité d'impression de certaines pages peut laisser à désirer, surtout si les pages originales ont été dactylographiées à l'aide d'un ruban usé ou si l'université nous a fait parvenir une photocopie de mauvaise qualité.

Les documents qui font déjà l'objet d'un droit d'auteur (articles de revue, examens publiés, etc.) ne sont pas microfilmés.

La reproduction, même partielle, de ce microfilm est soumise à la Loi canadienne sur le droit d'auteur, SRC 1970, c. C-30. Veuillez prendre connaissance des formules d'autorisation qui accompagnent cette thèse.

LA THÈSE A ÉTÉ
MICROFILMÉE TELLE QUE
NOUS L'AVONS RÉCUE

Canada

35

55910

0-315-07990-8



National Library
of Canada

Bibliothèque nationale
du Canada

CANADIAN THESES
ON MICROFICHE

THÈSES CANADIENNES
SUR MICROFICHE

NAME OF AUTHOR/NOM DE L'AUTEUR

SUZANNE MARIA ROSE

TITLE OF THESIS/TITRE DE LA THÈSE

KYLI QUOT GRAMMAR

UNIVERSITY/UNIVERSITÉ

UNIVERSITY OF VICTORIA

DEGREE FOR WHICH THESIS WAS PRESENTED/
GRADE POUR LEQUEL CETTE THÈSE FUT PRÉSENTÉE

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

YEAR THIS DEGREE CONFERRED/ANNÉE D'OBTENTION DE CE GRADE

1981 NOV.

NAME OF SUPERVISOR/NOM DU DIRECTEUR DE THÈSE

BARRY F. CARLSON

Permission is hereby granted to the NATIONAL LIBRARY OF
CANADA to microfilm this thesis and to lend or sell copies
of the film.

The author reserves other publication rights, and neither the
thesis nor extensive extracts from it may be printed or other-
wise reproduced without the author's written permission.

L'autorisation est, par la présente, accordée à la BIBLIOTHÈ-
QUE NATIONALE DU CANADA de microfilmer cette thèse et
de prêter ou de vendre des exemplaires du film.

L'auteur se réserve les autres droits de publication; ni la
thèse ni de longs extraits de celle-ci ne doivent être imprimés
ou autrement reproduits sans l'autorisation écrite de l'auteur.

DATED/DATE

20/08/81

SIGNED/SIGNE

Suzanne Maria Rose

PERMANENT ADDRESS/RÉSIDENCE FIXE

c/o C. J. VELAY

2164 Ferndale St.

VICTORIA B.C.

35

KYUQUOT GRAMMAR

by

C

Suzanne Maria Rose

B.A., University of Victoria, 1974
M.A., University of Victoria, 1976

A DISSERTATION SUBMITTED IN PARTIAL FULFILLMENT

OF THE REQUIREMENTS FOR THE DEGREE OF

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

in the Department

of

Linguistics

ACCEPTED

FACULTY OF GRADUATE STUDIES

DEAN

DATE 5 Feb 1982

We accept this dissertation as conforming
to the required standard

B.F. Carlson
Dr. B.F. Carlson

T.M. Hess
Dr. T.M. Hess

G.N. O'Grady
Dr. G.N. O'Grady

R.D. Levine
Dr. R.D. Levine

K.W. Rankin
Dr. K.W. Rankin

N.R. Crumrine
Dr. N.R. Crumrine

© SUZANNE MARIA ROSE, 1981

UNIVERSITY OF VICTORIA

July 1981

All rights reserved. This dissertation may not be reproduced
in whole or in part, by mimeograph or other means,
without the permission of the author.

Supervisor: Professor Barry F. Carlson

ABSTRACT

In this dissertation, Kyuquot Nootka morphology and syntax are examined once previous linguistic research and phonology are summarized. Phonological and morphophonological rules are ordered. Phonotactics include syllable number, phoneme distribution, and cluster constraints.

Kyuquot is VSO and accusative. The clause head (predicate), consisting of any stem or NP, can govern a subject (and object), take clause-level inflection, and be preceded by subject or object NP (i.e. *adjunct*). NP's include an article, deictic, modifier stem(s), head, or phrasal modifier (e.g. relative clause), generally in that order. *Obliges*, which cannot precede their predicate, include NP's and adverbial or complement clauses and are ordered. Complements are classified by subject coreferentiality and lexical cues.

Kyuquot marked sentence types are: passive, topical, content question, quantifier-headed, or cleft. Passives are base-generated and are not due to person relations or switch-reference. Topicals have a predicate whose complement would be matrix in an unmarked paraphrase. Content question and quantifier stems are sentence-initial. Clefts, including adjunct-predicate, object-subject, and oblique-adjunct, indicate a new, surprising, or 'heavy' NP in any clause except content questions.

Each semantic class has referential/relative stems anaphoric to NP's or predicates but predicative and inflected for relative mood if in a relative clause (RC). A NP focused in a topical, content question, quantifier-headed or RC construction is case-marked. RC's can be headless and independent. Anaphora of predicates and NP's involves, as well, deictics, articles, and ellipsis (rightward or leftward). New or contrastive information is signalled by position (in roots, matrix clauses, and clefted NP's) and morpheme (in objects).

Complex structures with multiple modifiers or subordinate clauses are avoided and redundancy is favoured, resulting in coordinate clauses,

including V_iS V_iD, XY:XY, and XY YX types.. Coordinate clauses are non-cued or are cued by predicate or mood, and can differ in voice; mood, and subject.

The fourth chapter concerns morphology, including uninflected forms (e.g. interjections), emphatic morphemes, and stems. Inflectional affixes indicate plurality, tense, voice, possession (e.g. of subject), mood (over 15 such suffixes), and person. Predicative and NP inflection are contrasted. Aspectual affixes distinguish perfective, iterative, inceptive, continuative, and durative aspect, all except the durative yielding verbal stems. Perfective and graduative affixes can modify any aspectual affix. Aspects have varying distributions which effect their functions. There are also aspectual stems, e.g. habitual, prospective, and telic.

Word formation is polysynthetic. It is complicated by different stem-forming strategies and restrictions on root and stem forms associated with particular affixes. The 400 noninflectional affixes are each either governing (i.e. responsible for a stem's semantic class) or restrictive. Governing ones are predicative (i.e. dominating an object and/or complement) or classificatory. Choice of the NP or S constituent which serves as the base of the suffix is strictly determined. Constituents can be multiply embedded in stems. Derivation of stems is also implicit. Restrictive affixes (RA's), which are nonderivational and ordered by semantic class and figure-ground relations, are largely locative but can also indicate movement, manner, time, or number. If transitive, their object is external to the stem of the RA. A predicative NP affixed by a RA is coreferential to its subject.

Suffix compounds, stem-extenders, and cranberry affixes are discussed. Word structure constraints emphasize avoidance of multiply-reduplicated stems. Semantic classes are equated with morphological classes due to aspectual function, order and hierarchy of NP constituents, suitability of stems as one-word NP's, and ability of bases to dominate an attached suffix.

Summaries indicate the problems for future research and the typological characteristics of Kyuquot Nootka as a VSO language of the Northwest Coast area. An appendix lists the lexical affixes.

Examiners: B.T. Carlson

Robert Corine J. Ross Crimmins

K.B. Reeki Ed O'Brady

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| | |
|--|----|
| Table of Contents | v |
| List of Tables | ix |
| List of Figures | ix |
| List of Abbreviations | x. |
| 1. INTRODUCTION | |
| 1.1. The Language Setting | 1 |
| 1.2. <u>The Research Setting</u> | 4 |
| 1.2.1. Wakashan | 4 |
| 1.2.2. Nootkan | 5 |
| 1.2.3. Nootka | 6 |
| 1.3. <u>Theoretical Setting</u> | 7 |
| 1.3.1. Introduction | 7 |
| 1.3.2. Syntax | 9 |
| 1.3.3. Morphology | 10 |
| 1.3.4. Phonology | 12 |
| 2. PHONOLOGICAL AND MORPHOLOGICAL OVERVIEW | |
| 2.1. The Phonemes | 13 |
| 2.2. Morphophonological and Phonological Rules | 16 |
| 2.3. Morpheme Structure Constraints | 29 |
| 2.4. <u>Morphological Overview</u> | 31 |
| 2.4.1. Noninflecting Particles | 31 |
| 2.4.2. Inflecting Particles | 31 |
| 2.4.3. Stems | 32 |
| 2.4.4. Survey of Word Structure | 33 |
| 3. SYNTAX | |
| 3.1. <u>Simple Clauses and their Predicate Types</u> | 35 |
| 3.1.1. The Simple Clause | 35 |
| 3.1.2. The Nominal Phrase | 39 |
| 3.1.2.1. The Article | 40 |
| 3.1.2.2. Deictics | 41 |
| 3.1.2.3. NP Inflection | 43 |
| 3.1.2.4. Qualifiers | 46 |
| 3.1.2.5. Modifiers | 47 |
| 3.1.2.6. Transitive NP's | 51 |
| 3.1.2.7. Coordinate NP's | 51 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| 3.1.3. Qualifiers | 53 |
| 3.1.4. NP Predicates | 55 |
| 3.1.5. Summary | 57 |
| 3.2. <u>Obliques</u> | 57 |
| 3.2.1. Introduction | 57 |
| 3.2.2. NP-relating Obliques | 62 |
| 3.2.3. Surface Expression of Semantic Relations | 67 |
| 3.2.4. Comparative Structures | 69 |
| 3.2.5. Complement Obliques | 71 |
| 3.2.5.1. Unmarked Complements | 72 |
| 3.2.5.2. Marked Complements | 74 |
| 3.2.5.3. Conclusion | 77 |
| 3.3. <u>Marked Sentences</u> | 78 |
| 3.3.1. Passive | 78 |
| 3.3.1.1. Lexicalist Source of the Passive | 80 |
| 3.3.1.2. Distribution of Semantic Roles by Person | 84 |
| 3.3.1.3. Passive Assimilation | 86 |
| 3.3.2. Topical Clauses | 92 |
| 3.3.2.1. Adverbial Topical Predicates | 92 |
| 3.3.2.2. NP Topical Predicates | 93 |
| 3.3.2.3. NP-relating Predicates | 96 |
| 3.3.3. Quantifiers and Questions | 102 |
| 3.3.3.1. Quantifiers | 102 |
| 3.3.3.2. Content Questions | 106 |
| 3.3.4. Cleft Clauses | 109 |
| 3.3.4.1. Adjunct-Prédicte Cleft | 109 |
| 3.3.4.2. Adjunct-Adjunct Cleft | 112 |
| 3.3.4.3. Oblique-Adjunct Cleft | 113 |
| 3.4. <u>Other Complex Sentences</u> | 118 |
| 3.4.1. Referential Clauses | 118 |
| 3.4.2. Relative Clauses | 123 |
| 3.4.2.1. Nonnominal-Bound Relative Clauses | 123 |
| 3.4.2.2. Nominal-Bound Relative Clauses | 127 |
| 3.4.2.3. NP Role Identification | 130 |
| 3.4.2.4. RC Structure | 135 |
| 3.4.2.5. Summary | 139 |
| 3.4.3. Coordinate Clauses | 143 |
| 3.4.3.1. Particle-Cued Coordinate Clauses | 143 |
| 3.4.3.2. Conjunction-Cued Coordinate Clauses | 147 |
| 3.4.3.3. Other Cued Coordinate Clauses | 149 |
| 3.4.3.4. Noncued Coordinate Clauses | 153 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| 3.5. <u>Discourse</u> | 154 |
| 3.5.1. Anaphora | 154 |
| 3.5.1.1. Non-NP Anaphora | 154 |
| 3.5.1.2. Nonelliptical NP Anaphora | 158 |
| 3.5.1.3. NP Ellipsis | 162 |
| 3.5.1.4. Reflexives and Reciprocals | 167 |
| 3.5.2. Focus is New, Surprising, Contrastive, or Definite | 170 |
| 3.5.3. Participant Perspective | 174 |
| 3.5.4. Stylistics | 179 |
| 3.5.4.1. Clause Simplicity | 179 |
| 3.5.4.2. Redundancy | 186 |
| 3.6. <u>Summary</u> | 188 |
| 3.6.1. Problems | 188 |
| 3.6.2. Typological Considerations | 192 |
| 4. MORPHOLOGY | |
| 4.1. Introduction | 195 |
| 4.2. <u>Noninflecting Words</u> | 196 |
| 4.2.1. Particles | 196 |
| 4.2.2. Emphatic Morphemes | 199 |
| 4.3. <u>Inflection</u> | 204 |
| 4.3.1. Mode | 204 |
| 4.3.2. Tense | 208 |
| 4.3.3. Mood and Pronominal Suffixes | 212 |
| 4.3.3.1. Subordinating Moods | 214 |
| 4.3.3.2. Irrealis Moods | 217 |
| 4.3.3.3. Evidential Mood | 221 |
| 4.3.3.4. Indicative Mood | 223 |
| 4.3.3.5. Absolutive and Indefinite Moods | 226 |
| 4.3.3.6. Quotative Moods | 229 |
| 4.3.3.7. Imperative Mood | 231 |
| 4.3.3.8. Mood Synopsis | 233 |
| 4.3.4. Passive | 234 |
| 4.3.5. Possessive | 234 |
| 4.3.6. -?is and -?ka and -?i | 239 |
| 4.3.7. Plural | 240 |
| 4.3.8. Nonpredicative Inflection | 247 |
| 4.3.9. Summary | 253 |

| | | |
|----------|--|-----|
| 4.4. | <u>Aspect</u> | 255 |
| 4.4.1. | Introduction | 255 |
| 4.4.2. | Momentaneous | 259 |
| 4.4.3. | Continuative | 263 |
| 4.4.4. | Durative | 265 |
| 4.4.5. | Completive | 265 |
| 4.4.6. | Inceptive | 269 |
| 4.4.7. | Iterative | 271 |
| 4.4.8. | Habitual | 274 |
| 4.4.9. | Graduative | 275 |
| 4.4.10. | Summary | 280 |
| 4.5. | Roots and Stem Forms | 284 |
| 4.6. | Noninflectional Affixes - Introduction | 289 |
| 4.7. | <u>Governing Suffixes and Derivation</u> | 293 |
| 4.7.1. | Predicative Governing Suffixes | 293 |
| 4.7.1.1. | Choice of Base | 293 |
| 4.7.1.2. | Scope | 302 |
| 4.7.2. | Transitivity and Control | 304 |
| 4.7.3. | Classifier Governing Suffixes | 308 |
| 4.7.4. | Other Features of Derivation | 310 |
| 4.8. | <u>Restrictive Affixes</u> | 313 |
| 4.8.1. | Locative and Verbal Restrictive Affixes | 315 |
| 4.8.1.1. | Locative Affixes | 315 |
| 4.8.1.2. | Verbal Affixes | 320 |
| 4.8.1.3. | Aspectual Derivation | 322 |
| 4.8.2. | Adjectival Restrictive Affixes | 324 |
| 4.8.3. | Quantity Restrictive Affixes | 328 |
| 4.8.4. | Temporal Restrictive Affixes | 332 |
| 4.8.5. | Restrictive Affix Order | 334 |
| 4.9. | Other Morphemes and Morpheme Compounds | 337 |
| 4.10. | Word Structure Constraints | 338 |
| 4.11. | <u>Summary</u> | 343 |
| 4.11.1. | Morphological Summary | 343 |
| 4.11.2. | Typology | 346 |
| 4.11.3. | Further Research | 347 |
| | Bibliography | 350 |
| | Appendix: Lexical Affixes | 356 |

LIST OF TABLES

| | | |
|----|---|-----|
| 1 | Consonant Inventory | 13 |
| 2 | Allomorphic Variants of Kyuquot Vowels | 16 |
| 3 | Variable & Consonants | 17 |
| 4 | Kyuquot Determiners | 42 |
| 5 | Order of Adjectival Modifiers | 48 |
| 6 | Qualifiers | 54 |
| 7 | Referential (and Relative) Bases | 119 |
| 8 | Salient <i>?u·kw̥</i> , NP's in a Selected Story | 175 |
| 9 | Speaker-oriented Interjections | 197 |
| 10 | Vocative Variants of Final Vowels | 202 |
| 11 | Position of Mood and Pronominal Affixes | 212 |
| 12 | Imperative Morphemes | 231 |
| 13 | Imperative-Pronominal Sequences | 231 |
| 14 | The Role of <i>-uk</i> in Predicates | 236 |
| 15 | Interpretation of Predicate Plural Morphemes | 243 |
| 16 | Kyuquot Aspectual Values by Class | 258 |
| 17 | Perfective and Iterative Forms | 272 |
| 18 | Kyuquot Aspect Morphemes | 280 |
| 19 | Frequency of Occurrence of Primary Aspect Morphemes | 283 |
| 20 | Aspect Synopsis of Primary Aspect Morphemes | 283 |
| 21 | Base and Stem Forms | 285 |
| 22 | Stem Alternations Preceding <i>-q-</i> | 288 |
| 23 | Distribution of Selected Base Forms | 289 |
| 24 | Numbers of Affixes | 293 |
| 25 | Momentaneous-Causative Syncretic Allomorphs | 298 |
| 26 | Parasyntactic Reduplicative Patterns | 340 |

* LIST OF FIGURES

| | | |
|---|---|-----|
| 1 | Distribution of Mono- and Multisyllabic Roots | 29 |
| 2 | RC Structures | 136 |
| 3 | Aspectual Viewpoints | 256 |
| 4 | Primary Kyuquot Aspect Morphemes | 257 |
| 5 | Root Classes and Root-Stem Patterns | 285 |
| 6 | Object and Complement Bases of GS's | 296 |
| 7 | Word Classes by Grammatical Features | 345 |

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

| | | | | | |
|-------|---------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------|-------|----------------------------|
| A | adjectival | [L+S] | lengthening of first vowel, | S | sentence |
| ABS | absolutive | | shortening of second vowel | SIM | simultaneous ('meanwhile') |
| Ag | agent | Mod | modifier | SPOR | sporadic iterative |
| AgO | agent oblique | MOM | momentaneous | SUB | subordinate |
| C | variable nondel- | MOMCAUS | momentaneous causative | T | temporal class |
| | eting consonant | | | TEM | temporal tense |
| CAUS | causative | MUST | 'must (have)' | V | verbal |
| Co | complement | Mx | matrix clause | () | optionally delet- |
| COMB | combining -q- | N | nominal | | ing phoneme |
| COND | conditional | NOM | nominalizing affix [] | 1. | phonetic form |
| CONT | continuative | NP | nominal phrase | 2. | instructional |
| DEF | definite | O | object | | marker in under- |
| DIM | diminutive | PASS | passive | | lying form |
| DUB | dubitative | PAST | past | / / | underlying form |
| DUR | durative | PL | plural | : | coordinate clause |
| EVID | evidential | POSB | possibility | # | boundary |
| FUT | future | POSS | possessive | xx .- | reduplicative mor- |
| GRAD | graduative | PROB | probability | | pheme boundary |
| GS | governing suffix | PURP | purposive | | consonant-final |
| I | first person | Qr | quantifier | -xx | morpheme not under- |
| II | second person | QUE | interrogative | | going glottaliza- |
| III | third person | QUE* | interrogative plus -a: | -xx | tion |
| INC | inceptive | QUOT | quotative | -'xx | suffix not under- |
| IND | indicative | QUOTE MPH | quotative emphatic | | going elision or |
| INDEF | indefinite | Qy | quantity | | /?/ deletion |
| INF | inferential | [R] | reduplication of root, cf. | | lenition-inducing |
| INFL | inflectional affixes | | Table 27 | | suffix |
| IRR | irrealis | RA | restrictive affix | V | glottalization- |
| IRREL | irrealis relative | RC | relative clause | /V:/ | inducing suffix |
| IT | iterative | REL | relative | ? | long vowel |
| L | locative | REP | repetitive | * | invariably long vowel |
| [L] | lengthening of root vowel | | | | ungrammatical |
| | | | | | marginal form |

1. INTRODUCTION

This work is a grammar of the Kyuquot Nootka language. The introduction discusses in turn the Nootkan language, its dialect variation and setting; the Wakashan language family and relevant research; and theoretical influences.

The research for this work was financially supported by a Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council doctoral fellowship (1978-1981) and by fieldwork grants from the Melville and Elizabeth Jacobs Fund (1979-1981), the University of Victoria (1979-1980), and the British Columbia Provincial Museum (1978). My fieldwork, analysis, and writing have benefited from the interest, advice, and support of many people, including my dissertation committee, Drs. B.F. Carlson, T.M. Hess, and G.N. O'Grady; other readers, including Drs. M.D. Kinkade and R.D. Levine; other linguists, particularly Drs. H.J. Warkentyne and B.S. Efrat, who helped me secure fieldwork funds; fellow students and the departmental secretaries; native consultants (named below); and my family, husband, and other friends, particularly B. Hloókoff and R. von Fuchs, whose home made my fieldwork in Courtenay possible. In addition, my work has been inspired by a number of people, including Dr. Edward Sapir, whose love of the exotic did not obscure his sense of universality and systematicity, and Sr. Eleanor Marie (Edith Lineham), whose appreciation of language as a transmitter of vision and culture gave her Latin students a desire to investigate and understand the linguistic systems of different times and peoples.

1.1. The Language Setting

The traditional geographical setting of Kyuquot speakers is from Granite Island (*maqcu-p*) along the Kashutl and Tahsis Inlets and south to the Rugged Point flats (*qap'u-s*). This area, encompassing the whole Kyuquot Sound region of western Vancouver Island, is dotted with twenty-six small Indian Reserves but has inhabitants in only two locations, Aktis Island (*Saqti-s*, IR 1) and the coast of Vancouver Island between Clanninnick and Mackay Coves (*hupsitas*, IR 6). Both these areas are included in the village of Kyuquot, a community with a winter population

of approximately a hundred and fifty people, mostly Indian.

The environment in which the people live is dominated by forest and ocean. The terrain is rugged and mountainous, while the coast is steep, frequently beachless, indented by numerous fjords and flanked by a ribbon of banks and small islands. The climate is mild in temperature but subject to frequent heavy rains and severe winter winds. The forest cover is dense with conifers, particularly red cedar, Douglas fir, and western hemlock. Salal, skunk cabbage, and salmonberry bushes cover the steep slopes rising from the sea and stream. The cedar and berry bushes have been the main land resources of the Kyuquot people, the berries as food and the cedar as a material used for shelter, vehicles, clothing, art work, and tools such as fish hooks, twine, and baskets.

It is to the ocean, however, that the houses face. The ocean is the chief source of food. There are halibut and shellfish, but especially salmon, including spring, sockeye, coho, humpback (pink), and chum (dog). The sea has been the route for travel and communication. Visitors and goods traditionally arrived and left by water. In addition, the sea has been a source of personal power and mystery, traditionally through the quest of the whale, but still experienced during fishing, seaweed gathering, camping, and boating trips.

The West Coast culture is noted for drama, humor, three-dimensional art (especially in the wood medium), and the social importance of the acquiring and giving away of property (both material and mental), e.g. canoes, totem poles, songs, names, and ritual privileges. West Coast people value good public speaking, singing, and story-telling. Their oral literature is characterized by ribald humor, pathos, literary figures such as word play and metaphor, and rhetorical acumen.

The Kyuquot (*qa'y'uk'wth*) dialect of the Nootka language is still spoken by all Kyuquot people over the age of forty, in at least certain situations such as feasts or fishing trips. Kyuquot can be heard over the radio systems used on commercial fishing boats in the area. Evidently, even some young people (in their twenties) speak Kyuquot as well.

The chief consultants for this dissertation are Christina Cox and Sophie Jules. Secondary consultants include Larry Short (deceased),

David Jules (deceased), Joe Jules, Moses Cox, and George Louie (an Ahousaht speaker who helped translate texts). The consultants range in age from about forty to seventy-five years old. Mrs. Jules, the oldest, was the source of most of the texts studied. She was raised largely by her grandmother and belongs to the leading family of Kyuquot with respect to hereditary leadership. The data, consisting of about 120 hours of recorded material (yielding approximately 30,000 lines of transcription), were collected between the spring of 1978 and the autumn of 1980.

Kyuquot speakers recognize the similarity of their language to that of Port Alberni ('esa'7th or Tseshahst) speakers and to all the dialects and languages traditionally spoken between Cape Cook and Neah Bay. On the other hand, they recognize the distinctiveness of their speech even from that of their traditional neighbours, the Nuchatlat and Chickliset bands. Kyuquot speakers do not recognize a linguistic relation between Kyuquot and any Kwakiutlan languages, e.g. Quatsino Kwak'wala. However, they do sense a strong traditional socio-cultural link with the people of the Nimkish and Alert Bay areas.

Kyuquot is one of the northernmost Nootka dialects, separated linguistically from Quatsino Kwak'wala only by the Chickliset dialect. Because the Chickliset people amalgamated both geographically and socially with the Kyuquots, the Kyuquot dialect is now the one whose speakers inhabit the area directly adjacent to that inhabited by the Kwakiutlan speakers on western Vancouver Island. It should be noted that the Kyuquot community includes people born in other villages and, hence, speakers of different dialects or with different dialect substrates such as Amai, Nuchatlat, Ahousaht, etc. From Cape Cook to Barkley Sound are distributed the following bands: Kyuquot-Chickliset, Queen's Cove, Nuchatlat, Nootka (Moachat), Hesquiat, Ahousaht, Opitsat (Clayoquot), Toquaht, Ucluelet, Tseshahst (Port Alberni), Opetchesahst, and Ohiaht. (cf. Kenyon 1980:11 for a correlation of band and community names).

Each of these bands includes speakers of one or more dialects. It is not clear whether each village constitutes a dialect or not. However, dialects clearly exist. These dialects vary phonetically, e.g. in stress

placement or speed of delivery; phonologically, e.g. degree of vowel loss; and lexically and grammatically, e.g. shape of the mood and tense suffixes. The genetic subgrouping relations of these dialects are not known at present.

These dialects together constitute the Nootka proper language. The other languages in the Nootkan division are Nitinaht (possibly divided into two dialects, Nitinaht and Pacheenaht) and Makah (possibly also divided into two dialects, Makah and Ozette); spoken south-east of Barclay Sound and at Cape Flattery, respectively. These three languages may be genetically equidistant branches of the parent language, proto-Nootkan. Alternatively, Nootka proper may have split off from the Nitinaht-Makah group first. Makah and Nitinaht are assumed to have genetically separated from one another about 1000 years ago, as Makah speakers moved south into the Olympic Peninsula. Nootkan, also termed Southern Wakashan, and Kwakiutlan, or Northern Wakashan, constitute the Wakashan family, the name being standardized by Powell (1891:128-30). The Wakashan family is the most extensive linguistic class to which Kyuquot can be assigned membership on the basis of currently accepted linguistic research.

1.2. The Research Setting.

1.2.1. Wakashan

The genetic relationship between Kwakiutlan and Nootkan languages was advanced by Franz Boas as early as 1890, based largely on information from Heiltsuk and Kwak'wala in the former division, and Bar 1 y. Sound and Nootka Sound Nootka in the latter. Boas concentrated most of his Wakashan work on certain northern languages (cf. Boas 1900 through 1947). However, in addition, he (1900a:655) noted certain phonological, lexical, and morphological similarities between Kwakiutlan and Nootkan, emphasizing the sharing of morphophonemic processes such as hardening and softening (i.e. glottalization and lenition). Thompson (1970:51) observes that it was Sapir who most clearly verified Boas' theory. Sapir (1911 and 1951) cited sound correspondences and grammatical similarities within Wakashan, and in 1938, as Thompson (1970:52) notes,

recapitulated a great deal of Wakashan linguistic history in his discussion of glottalized continuants in these and some other languages.

Swadesh (1963:26, 41) assumed a time-depth in Wakashan of 2900 years since the Kwakiutlan-Nootkan split. This split is informally posited to have occurred near Quatsino Sound, just north of Kyuquot, because that is the present boundary between Kwakiutlan and Nootkan.

The reconstruction of proto-Wakashan has been delayed by several factors. First, linguists have been fascinated by the possibility of genetic relationship between Wakashan and other languages or families, such as Quileute and Salishan (cf. Andrade 1953, Frachtenberg 1920, Sapir 1929, and Swadesh 1949 and 1953), Algonkian (cf. Haas 1960, Sapir 1929), Tsimshian (cf. Boas 1929), and Eskimo-Aleut (cf. Swadesh 1962). Second, Boas' and Sapir's position as central researchers in proto-Wakashan may have led other linguists to believe that all important and/or interesting work in this field had been accomplished. Third, and most probable, detailed work in proto-Wakashan cannot begin until the subdivisions, Kwakiutlan and Nootkan, have been reconstructed. This work has not been undertaken until very recently (cf. Haas 1969a, Jacobsen 1979, and Lincoln & Rath 1980).

1.2.2. Nootkan

The comparative reconstruction of the Nootkan subdivision has been undertaken by one researcher specializing in Nitinahlt, Mary Haas (1969a, 1972), and one specializing in Makah, William Jacobsen Jr. (1968, 1969b). Haas focused on reconstructing morpheme shapes and the pronominal suffix series, while Jacobsen studied the origins of pharyngeals and the reflexes of glottalized resonants. Jacobsen is also largely responsible for the synchronic work done on Makah (cf. Jacobsen 1969a, 1971, 1973, 1978). Prior to 1970, Haas was the chief researcher on Nitinahlt. Since then, Terry Klokeid has investigated Nitinahlt phonology and syntax, using transformational-generative and relational grammar as models. Barry Carlson and John Thomas (1979) are now engaged in research on Nitinahlt as well.

The Nootkan subdivision has been represented in the literature most strongly by the subgroup Nootka proper, the bulk of work on Makah

and Nitinaht having been done after 1960 and therefore just beginning to appear in print. There are, in addition, early accounts and word-lists of Nootka proper, such as those of Jewitt (1815), Knipe (1868), Sproat (1868), Tolmie & Dawson (1884), Moziño (1913), Strange (1928), and Koppert (1930). It is not clear to which dialects these accounts refer.

1.2.3. Nootka

By far the most studied Nootka dialect has been Tseshahit. Sapir, aided by a native Nootka speaker A. Thomas, published texts and anthropologically-oriented discussions of this dialect, which came to be known as 'Nootka'. Swadesh, Sapir's pupil, then used Sapir's material to do morphological analysis of the language. There are also unpublished materials on this dialect by both Sapir and Swadesh. In addition, Swadesh made his own field trips, including one to Kyuquot, Port Alberni, and Port Renfrew in 1967. The data obtained from this last one are not yet analysed. The chief source for Nootka has been Sapir and Swadesh's (1939) work Nootka Texts, which consists of a collection of transcribed, translated, and annotated texts, a grammatical sketch, and a Nootka-English glossary. This was accompanied in the same year by their book Native Accounts of Nootka Ethnography. Recently, the problem of variable vowel length in Tseshahit has been reanalysed (cf. Klokeid 1975b).

By native speaker accounting, there are aside from Tseshahit between 13 and 19 Nootka dialects in use between Barclay Sound and Cape Cook. These posited dialects may be divided into those represented in the literature, those under investigation but not in the literature, and those not under investigation. Those dialects apparently not under investigation and lacking description are Uchucklesit, Toquat, Ucluelet, Kilsmat, Moachat, Muchalat, Nuchatlet, Ehetisat, and Chickliset (ordered from Barclay Sound northwest towards Cape Cook). Those in the literature, aside from Tseshahit, are Clayoquot (cf. Paik 1968) and Ahousahit (cf. for example Moon & Wester 1975). Those dialects for which materials (largely word-lists or ethnobotanical data) have been collected but which are not yet in print are Ohiash, Hopachisat, Hesquiat, and Kyuquot. For Kyuquot, this prior linguistic research consists of a Kyuquot-English word-list of approximately 1800 words, collected by Morris Swadesh and Terry Klokeid

at Aktis Island in May of 1967.

1.3. Theoretical Setting

1.3.1. Introduction

The linguistic study of a given language is interesting to the extent that observations made are comparable to those of other languages and are empirically testable. This necessitates that linguistic data, e.g. from the Kyuquot language, be identified; analysed, and presented within a widely understood linguistic paradigm or set of paradigms.

The hierarchical nature of language, e.g. the existence of surface and underlying representations in the levels of phonology, morphology, and syntax, and the universality of certain linguistic characteristics are here posited to be the products of survival-oriented evolution and physiological constraints (cf. Simon 1962).

However, although discrete hierarchical levels and subclasses are posited, it is acknowledged that language is a human behavior and therefore probabilistic as well as rule-governed, with linguistic components (i.e. levels or classes) being necessarily characterized by 'fuzzy sets' (Bailey 1973). Because language is a social and creative activity, the data on which this grammar is based consist not only of elicited utterances but also of stories, conversations, and environmentally-stimulated responses (e.g. to pictures) not elicited as translations of English sentences. It is acknowledged that a grammar should ideally account for any language user's abilities to produce and comprehend novel and meaningful utterances, spoken in a range of lects (cf. Hooper 1976) and based on a network of idiolectal, language-specific, and universal structures and rules. These latter entities are subject to probabilistic weightings which are a function of the physiological, linguistic, cognitive, and social contexts in which a particular utterance is produced and comprehended.

It is recognized that a simple rule is not necessarily natural (and vice versa), that a derivation does not constitute an explanation, and that simplicity, economy, and naturalness are not obvious symptoms of

psychological reality. Finally, it is recognized that although language is a system, it is also characterized by tendencies of usage and other types of nongenerative creativity (cf. W. Haas 1978:308).

Language is viewed here as an interaction of intention and convention (cf. for example Tyler 1978:14 and Halliday 1977:193). An utterance's intention includes the proposition(s) (or content) to be communicated, the illocutionary mode (e.g. question, statement, or command), and the choice of conventions. Conventions impinging upon the intention include worldview, linguistic context (e.g. presupposition), discourse stylistics (e.g. medium, lect variance, and literary figures), and linguistic principles (of phonology and grammar) including strategies for indicating equivalence, anaphora, paraphrase, metaphor, and subordination relations. Conventions can be explicit or cryptotypic (cf. Whorf 1945).

All of the principles of language use interact, e.g. lexical choice and sound symbolism (cf. Jakobson & Waugh 1979:177-233); proposition and linguistic convention (e.g. presence of modal markers); and text context and sentence design (cf. Rosenberg 1977 for these and other examples of such interaction). Each sentence is understood as an interaction of form, relations, functions, and linguistic context; with certain components being foregrounded in certain sentences. It is also assumed that the content of an utterance is transmitted as much by the differentiation of signs as by the sum of signs (cf. Merleau-Ponty 1973: 31). Such an interactionist nonlinear model of language does not preclude the presence of hierarchically-organized components, e.g. in stress assignment, phonological features, and sentence and word structure. Finally, it is assumed that conventions do not constitute an arbitrary system and that the

lack of isomorphism, in the mathematical sense, between lexicon and nature, does not justify the absurd assumption of total subjectivity or randomness. (Friedrich 1975:219)

Ideally, a description of a language should describe either the user's full repertoire of language skills or those aspects of his repertoire which are language-specific and not predictable from cognitive, linguistic, discourse, or physiological universals. This particular

grammar falls far short of either goal due to the lack of a comprehensive body of linguistic and language use universals; the researcher's limitations with respect to time, knowledge of the language, and cultural-linguistic bias; and the limited data available, especially concerning free conversation and lect variance.

Hence, the grammar has been written with a modest goal in mind: It is to provide a description of Kyuquot syntactic and morphological principles and their interaction, with short excursions into semantics, discourse, lexicon, and phonology, where they elucidate the description. This goal has been adopted in full knowledge that it somewhat under-represents the richness of a Kyuquot speaker's competence and oversimplifies the nature of his powers of communication.

1.3.2. Syntax

Because both the native speaker and the linguist learn the structure of a language only by testing their linguistic hypotheses with new utterances, this work follows the transformational-generative model in beginning with a syntactic description and then working towards the phonological level. This approach necessarily emphasizes the production aspect of language.

The syntax or sentence-formation component of this grammar is non-transformational. The existence of a transformational syntactic component is controversial now (cf. Newmeyer 1980, ch.8), and proposed alternatives have included a semantic component which includes the transformations (cf. McCawley 1968, 1979) or an unordered but hierarchically-organized base structure with concatenation and ordering rules replacing transformations (cf. W. Boas 1975, Sanders 1972, Brame 1979). An alternative position, held by the lexicalist-interpretivist school (cf. Chomsky 1977, Fiengo & Lasnik 1976), assumes semantic interpretation is based on surface forms, requiring surface traces of all syntactic operations and surface structure constraints. This so limits the informative content of the transformations that they become virtually unnecessary (cf. Brame 1978). This situation has caused a shift of interest of syntax back to phrase structure (cf. Jackendoff 1977:xi). The arguments for base-generated syntax and for the increased use of surface-level constraints

on syntactic structure are particularly compelling for a language like Nootka with a loose word order and a complex morphology. It is possible that such arguments also support more syntactic variability among languages, at all linguistic levels (a view recently reaffirmed by Bach 1977:144).

Although sentence word order has been a key area of research in syntax recently, there has been a resurfacing of interest in the operational definition of parts of speech as part of a universal theory of the lexicon. First, Ross' (1973) work on syntactic rules has necessitated the recognition of the fuzziness of the constituent classes involved in such rules (at least for English), alerting one to the danger of oversimplifying the structural descriptions of syntactic rules in Kyuuqot, a language with rather ambiguous word classes.

Second, the desire to account for cross-categorial syntactic (including base structure) rules, reflected in the integration of X-bar notation into syntactic description (cf. Jackendoff 1977) and the examination of phrase structure constituency has necessitated a return to the investigation of constituent identification, one of the oldest and yet still difficult problems confronting linguistics.

- Even within the confines of one single language it is hard to find an analysis in terms of word classes which satisfies all.
- Many of our difficulties arise from the fact that not enough data are available from widely different languages, and those which are available are often hard to compare because of differences in theoretical background, descriptive style, and terminology. (Reichling et al. 1967:i-ii)

Nootka has been used as an 'obvious' example of a language without a noun-verb distinction (cf. Hockett 1957:224) since Sapir and Swadesh's (1939a) Nootka Texts first appeared. However, although the extreme degree of constituent multipurposeness of lexical entries in Nootka does suggest that it has only one lexical category, as argued by Kinkade (1977) for Salishan and by Bach (1968) for a posited universal base to be shared by all languages, there are morphological reasons for distinguishing lexical classes in Nootka (cf. section 4.11.1).

1.3.3. Morphology

In this dissertation, it is assumed (following Linell 1977:87) that

in addition to syntactic and semantic components and a lexicon, there is a morphological component which accounts for the form of the morphological means of expression. The motivation for a morphological component lies in the fact that morphology is one means of expressing semantic distinctions. It has its own kinds of structural properties which must be accounted for.

The reemergence of morphology as a distinct entity mediating between syntax and phonology is the result of constraints against derivational morphology in syntax (cf. Chomsky 1970, 1973) and abstractness in phonology (cf. Kiparsky 1968), among other things. The morphological component includes lexical insertion and word formation rules and the lexicon. It is assumed here that derivation is both root-based and stem-based, in that words may be built upon either stems (cf. Aronoff 1976) or nonstem bases, and that inflected words do not have to be stored as entries (in opposition to Venhemann 1974).

It is assumed that the morpheme is defined only by a combination of morphological and phonological information (cf. Robinson 1978) and that word formation has access to both the lexicon and phonology (cf. Carroll & Táenhaus 1975). It is also assumed that the word formation process is as functionally important, linguistically complex, cognitively creative, and theoretically interesting as the sentence formation process in any language, and perhaps especially in a language like Kyuquot Nootka.

An additional problem of Nootka morphological description is the translation of morphemes and stems. Haas (1972:88) has observed that

Nootka-Nitinat roots are highly abstract in meaning while the usual English renditions tend to be overly specific and hence reasonably adequate in one context, quite inadequate in the next. Consequently, it is difficult to arrive at the basic meaning of a stem or root on the basis of the usual translations.

She gives as an example the root *t'a-* 'object(s) on line, line with object(s) attached at end, in middle, or inside', which is found in stems with meanings as varied as 'throw out line with anchor or bait', 'a line tied in a knot', 'having an overloaded vehicle (the canoe as 'line'), or 'being pregnant (the mother as 'line')). For the sake of economy and reading ease in English, morphemes are typically glossed in this grammar by short concrete translations which constitute only part of the range

of meaning of a morpheme.

1.3.4. Phonology

Phonological description is included here only to introduce word structure constraints and morphophonological processes. The pronunciation of Kyuquot words will be described within the following model.

Phonological rules, which are language-specific, natural, and possibly controllable by the speaker, are distinguished on the one hand from phonetic processes, which are neuro-physiological (cf. Roca 1976) but probably not neurally encoded (cf. Kent & Minifie 1977), and on the other hand from morphophonological rules, which are language specific and refer to unnatural phonological or morphological environments and boundary markers (due to 'unnatural' events like rule truncation, inversion, morphologization, and paradigm regularization). It is recognized that the formal identification of these rule-types is ambiguous (cf. Hellberg 1978).

Systematic phonological alternations (as opposed to suppletive ones) are linked by one systematic underlying representation, whose shape can include features or segments from several different surface representations (cf. Kenstowicz & Kisselberth 1977:51) and can undergo a series of extrinsically-ordered processes. Rules are not expressed here in distinctive features, although their usefulness in expressing certain significant generalizations is unquestioned (cf. Rose 1976 for a distinctive feature treatment of Nootka phonological and morphophonological rules). Following Schane (1973:97), it is recognized that

- derived representations are amazingly similar to taxonomic phonemic representations, precisely because the phonological rules found in the literature map abstract underlying segments specified with binary features into less abstract surface segments also specified with binary features, segments which contrast on the 'surface'.

Thus, there appears to be room for both taxonomic and systematic phonology in a given grammar. In this grammar, it is the taxonomic phoneme which is used for surface Kyuquot forms. Underlying or systematic phonological forms are enclosed in slash brackets.

2. PHONOLOGICAL AND MORPHOLOGICAL OVERVIEW

This section discusses the phonological rules and constraints necessary for an understanding of the surface phonological structure of Kyuquot words and their posited underlying forms. This thesis does not, however, give a detailed phonology or morphophonology of Kyuquot. The intricacies of these parts of Kyuquot grammar await further research.

Following the phonological overview is a brief discussion of those aspects of morphology necessary for a description of syntax. The symbols and abbreviations used in the examples are presented in a list found subsequent to the lists of tables and figures in the introduction to this thesis.

2.1. The Phonemes

Nootka shares many of the phonological features of other languages in the Northwest Coast cultural-linguistic area: glottalized stops (ejectives), alveolar and alveopalatal, uvular, labiovelar, and lateral consonants, and the absence of voiced fricatives or r-type phonemes. In addition, Nootka has the central areal traits of pharyngeal and glottalized continuant phonemes. Kyuquot Nootka's consonant phoneme inventory is as follows.

TABLE 1: CONSONANT INVENTORY

| | Lab | Alv | Alv | Alv-pal | Lat | Vel | Lab-vel | Lab-Uvu | Lab-uvu | Phar | phar | Glot |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----|---------|-----|-----|---------|---------|---------|------|------|------|
| Stop | p | t | c | č | χ | k | kw | q | qw | | | |
| Ejective | p' | t' | c' | č' | χ' | k' | k'w | | | ? | | |
| Fricative | s | | | s | χ | x | xw | (x) | | h | hw | |
| Resonant | m | n | | y | | | w | | | | h | |
| Glottal | m' | n' | | y' | | | w' | | | | ? | |
| Resonant | | | | | | | | | | | | |

The bracketed consonant *x* is extremely rare. It is found in only one root, *gut-* 'knife' (probably a borrowing from Northern Wakashan), and one suffix, -*x* 'pejoratively'. There are no instances of -*xw* or the uvular ejectives. Historically, the pharyngeals arose from the mergers

of **q* and **qʷ* to *ʃ*, and of **χ* and **χʷ* to *h* (cf. Jacobsen 1969b). The labialized pharyngeal fricative *hʷ* is posited as a systematic phoneme (or morphophoneme) in order to account for certain surface alternations (cf. Rose 1976). It occurs phonetically due to the regular labialization of back consonants following *u*.

Phonemically, there are six vowels, *i a u i· a· u·*, plus two marginal phonemes, *ɔ·* and *e·*. These latter ones are marginal because they occur only in certain address mode words (cf. section 4.2.2). Morphophonemically, nine vowels are posited: /*i a u i· a· u· i: a: u:*/ . There appears to be no phonetic difference between long (·) and obligatorily long (:) vowels. The linguistic difference is that long vowels are short in certain contexts, whereas obligatorily long vowels are long in all surface forms (except in a word-final context). The rules influencing surface vowel length are included in the section on phonological rules (2.2).

Consonant Characteristics. In Kyuquot, and in Nootka in general, the unvoiced stops and affricates are lenis. There is optional voicing of intervocalic *p* and *t*. Labialized consonants are characterized by velarization as much as by rounding. Lips are much less rounded for consonants such as *kʷ* than they are for the glide *w* or the vowel *u*. Ejectives are characterized by a glottal closure following the consonantal closure. However, full glottal closure does not always occur. In such cases, the 'glottalization' is cued by associated laryngealization of adjacent syllables. Glottalized resonants are characterized by a glottal closure prior to the consonantal closure and/or by associated laryngealization in adjacent syllables.

Places of articulation are: labial, alveolar, alveopalatal, velar, uvular, pharyngeal, and glottal. Nonlabialized velar consonants are optionally produced with a *y* offglide preceding *a*. There is some drift of pharyngeal consonants, in that *h* is sometimes pronounced [x]. Because *χ* is so marginal as a phoneme in Kyuquot, such a drift does not result in homonymy. Otherwise, the place of articulation for consonants is relatively stable.

The Nootka pharyngeals are not characterized by associated

labialization or nasalization. The *h* is like a fricative in being composed of aperiodic noise, but is like a resonant in having large formant transitions which are perceived as offglides and onglides in adjacent vowels. The *ʕ* consists of a pharyngealized glottal closure which, like the *h*, is accompanied by a raised larynx and a retracted tongue root. *ʕ* is like a resonant in having no burst (i.e. a stop release). However, associated laryngealization, perceived as a series of 'cracks', gives the impression of a series of stop bursts. Impressionistically, the Nootka *ʕ* sounds much more stop-like and crisp than the Salish sound written with the same symbol.

In Kyuquot, the rest or unmarked position for the tongue can be one in which the tongue is low and enclosed by the teeth, with the surface of the tongue sloping from blade to tip, or one in which the tongue is enclosed by the teeth with the tip raised and resting on the alveolar ridge; these positions being common variants in English as well. For some Kyuquot speakers, the rest position can also be one in which the tongue is bunched forward, so that the sides of the blade extend out slightly between the teeth in the area of the cuspids. The tip remains within the teeth in a curled-back position behind the lower incisors. This latter position can be retained during pronunciation of virtually all consonants with the following exceptions: the tongue is narrowed to fit within the lower teeth for laterals and to a lesser degree for labialized consonants; the tongue blade is rendered trough-like in its frontmost portion for alveopalatal and back consonants; and the tongue blade (but not the tip) retracts during ejectives and glottalized resonants. Even for those speakers who do not extend the front of the tongue in this way, alveolar consonants are often produced with the blade rather than the tip..

Vowel Characteristics. Allophonic variants for Kyuquot vowels are given in the table below. In the table, the consonant symbol represents that set of consonants (stop, ejective, fricative, resonant and glottalized resonant) having the same place of articulation and degree of rounding. The allophonic variant in a given column represents the allophone occurring when adjacent to one of the set of consonants

represented by the consonant symbol.

TABLE 2: ALLOPHONIC VARIANTS OF KYUQUOT VOWELS

| Phoneme | Basic | č | k | kʷ | q | qʷ | ᷑ | ᷒ |
|---------|-------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| /i/ | I | i | i | i' | E | E | E' | I' |
| /u/ | U | U' | U' | U' | ɔ̄ | ɔ̄ | ɔ̄ | U' |
| /a/ | a~a | ɛ̄ | ɛ̄ | ʌ̄ | a | ʌ̄ | ɑ̄ | a |

In C_C environments, a non-basic allophone has dominance over a basic one; a back consonant's allophone has dominance over a high consonant's vowel allophone; a low consonant's (i.e. uvular's or pharyngeal's) vowel allophone has dominance over that of a non-low consonant; and a pharyngeal consonant's vowel allophone over that of a non-pharyngeal consonant. The interaction of rounding and dominance is not understood at present. In general, vowels are retracted when adjacent to labialized or pharyngealized consonants and are laryngealized adjacent to ejectives, glottalized resonants, ᷑ and ᷒. Laryngealization optionally occurs with vowels adjacent to uvulars as well. Laryngealized vowels sound creaky, muffled, or hollow, and are also characterized by a dip in pitch.

2.2. Morphophonological and Phonological Rules

Kyuquot has several morphophonological processes. These processes operate, for the most part, prior to the application of phonological rules in an extrinsically ordered scheme and are regressive (in that a later element influences an earlier element in a word). The Kyuquot extrinsic order of morphophonological and phonological rules appears to follow the order posited for Port Alberni Nootka (cf. Rose 1976 for an ordering of many of the rules).

Consonant Deletion. In Kyuquot, there are certain suffixes whose initial consonant (one of /č č' kʷ n q w y/) deletes following a consonant. There are other suffixes, having as initial phonème either one of the above phonemes or any other consonant phoneme (except /t t' x xʷ/, which do not occur suffix-initially), in which no such deletion occurs. Consonants which undergo deletion are enclosed in brackets, as in -(q)čs

'at a vehicle' or $-(n)a:nk$ 'bringing..'; nondeleting consonants are not bracketed, as in $-q̄ei·k$ 'going along' or $-na'kw$ 'having..'.

Backing. Certain suffix-initial alveopalatal consonants have k (or k' if the underlying consonant is ejective) as their surface form when following a high back vowel. This alternation occurs for all deleting alveopalatal consonants and for two nondeleting consonants, the \check{c} in $\check{c}i·p$ [L] '...stored up' and the c' in $\check{c}'ap$ [R] 'sore in.. (body part)'. These consonants contrast with nondeleting nonchanging suffix-initial alveopalatal consonants such as the \check{c} in $\check{c}i·t$ 'for.. days'. The underlining of the suffix-initial consonant indicates the alternation of \check{c} and k .

Other Alternations. When following a low or front vowel, a deleting \check{c} has as surface form c preceding s , k preceding \check{c} or \check{s} , \check{s} preceding t , and \check{c} elsewhere. In a strict phonemic account, this phenomenon is not an alternation but a set of constraints on suffix shape. Suffixes with variable \check{c} consonants are of the following shapes.

TABLE 3: VARIABLE \check{c} CONSONANTS

| Underlying | $\{a\}$ | $\{i\}$ | u | c |
|---|---|---|--|-----|
| $-(\check{c})V..$ | $-\check{c}V..$ | $-kV..$ | $-V..$ | |
| $-(\check{c})\check{t}V..$ | $-\check{c}\check{t}V..$ | $-k\check{t}V..$ | $-\check{t}V..$ | |
| $-(\check{c})sV..$ | $-c(s)V..$ | $-ksV..$ | $-sV..$ | |
| $-(\check{c})\{\begin{matrix} \check{c} \\ s \end{matrix}\}V..$ | $-k\{\begin{matrix} \check{c} \\ s \end{matrix}\}V..$ | $-k\{\begin{matrix} \check{c} \\ s \end{matrix}\}V..$ | $-\{\begin{matrix} \check{c} \\ s \end{matrix}\}V..$ | |
| $-(\check{c})tV..$ | $-\check{st}V..$ | $-ktV..$ | $-tV..$ | |
| $-\check{c}V..$ | $-\check{c}V..$ | $-kV..$ | $-\check{c}V..$ | |
| $-\check{c}'V..$ | $-\check{c}'V..$ | $-k'V..$ | $-\check{c}'V..$ | |

It is assumed that labialization of the k in the above sequence is the result of the regular labialization rule discussed below. In this thesis, the underlying forms of such suffixes have as their variable initial consonant the consonant which would occur following the vowels i or a ; i.e. $-(\check{c})\check{t}V..$, $-(c)sV..$, $-(k)\check{c}V..$, $-(k)\check{s}V..$, $-(s)tV..$, $-\check{c}V..$, and $-\check{c}'V..$ respectively.

In the momentaneous aspect suffix $-\check{s}i(\lambda)$, the underlined initial

element surfaces as *kʷ* following a high back vowel, *t̪* following other vowels (or nasals), and *s̪* following consonants. For this morpheme, the *s̪* is retained in the underlying form, following the pattern established for Port Alberni Nootka, because it distinguishes those morphemes in which *t̪* is deleted following a consonant from those in which the variable consonant surfaces as *s̪* following a consonant.

Final-consonant Deletion. There are certain morpheme-final *t̪* consonants which are absent if preceding a suffix which normally induces lenition or glottalization of a preceding consonant. Such a *t̪* is found in *-a-nu(t̪)* 'along leg, long, narrow object or place'.

- (1) *hita-n'u?iht*. He's at the end of the peninsula
/hit̪-a-n'u(t̪)-ihta/ there-at long thing-at nose

In eight of the eleven suffixes with final deleting *t̪*, the deletion is optional. There is also regular deletion of final *k̪* in aspectual morphemes preceding inflectional suffixes which induce glottalization. This phenomenon is signalled in underlying forms by bracketing, as in *-si(k̪)*, the momentaneous aspect morpheme.

Elsewhere Rule. Following the consonant alternation rules and prior to the lenition and glottalization rules, there is an elsewhere rule whereby variable consonants which have not already been assigned a surface form receive one.

Lenition. A very small set of suffixes, *-cit̪* 'in house; enclosure', *-is* 'at beach', and *-ci-ci(k̪)* INCEPTIVE, induce preceding nonback fricatives to surface as the nonback glide *y* and induce back labialized fricatives to surface as the back (labialized) glide *w*.

Glottalization. In Kyuquot, there are noninflectional suffixes which cause glottalization of a preceding stop, affricate, or resonant, and change a preceding fricative to the glide with equivalent feature values for the front-back and round-unround parameters. In other words, any stop, affricate or resonant surfaces as its ejective counterpart (except that *q* and *qʷ* surface as *f*, a change which can be treated systematically as one of [-glottal] → [+glottal], quite parallel to that of other stops; cf. Rose 1976); nonback fricatives surface as *y'*; and back round fricatives surface as *w'*. The alternation of *h* and *w'*

in stems such as ?i·h 'big' and ?i·w'a·? 'a big one on the rocks' supports the inclusion of the morphophoneme (or systematic phoneme) h^w in the consonant inventory. Suffixes causing the above changes in preceding consonants are identified by the diacritic '̄', as in -'a·?ā 'at the rocks'.

Inflectional suffixes which are glottalization-inducing cause only the consonant-to-ejective change and leave fricatives unaffected. Such suffixes are also identified by '̄', as in -'at PASSIVE. Inflectional suffixes have the same boundary marker as noninflectional ones but are distinguished in this thesis by having capitalized glosses. The only noninflectional affixes thus glossed are the aspectual and causative morphemes.

Because glottalization of consonants also occurs when a word-final consonant precedes a word beginning with ?, as in [wik'aya] *wik* ?aya 'not many', one might claim that inflectional suffixes are not suffixes, but are words or clitics beginning with ?. However, glottalization over word boundaries has no effect on the uvular stops; nor does an initial glottal stop cause an aspect-final ? to delete. It seems clear that phonetic glottalization should be distinguished from morphophonemic glottalization and likely that inflectional suffixes are suffixes rather than more independent morphemes.

? Epenthesis. When lenition- or glottalization-inducing suffixes follow a vowel-final morpheme, a glottal stop intervenes, as in ?'a·?as 'outside' and ?'a·?is, based on the root ?'a·- 'outside' and the affixes -'as 'outside, at ground' and -'c is 'at beach'. The epenthesis rule is treated here as part of a set of ordered rules. Hence, later-ordered rules delete ? when it occurs in third or later syllables and elide the adjacent vowels remaining.

Vowel Lengthening. A root vowel can be lengthened due to the presence of either a vowel-lengthening suffix such as -k'ʷap [L] 'liking' or of the graduative morpheme [L] (cf. section 4.4.9) or of certain reduplicative morphemes. Such lengthening is not phonologically conditioned.

Vowel Shortening. Vowel shortening is induced by one suffix in

Kyuquot, the nonreduplicative sporadic aspect allomorph $-i:\ddot{t}$ [L+S] SPOR. Words bearing this suffix must have a long vowel in the initial syllable and a short vowel in the second syllable in the surface form.

- (2) $?u\cdot naks\ddot{i}\cdot \ddot{t}$ He got it every now and then
 $/?u\cdot na\cdot k\ddot{w}\cdot \ddot{s}i(\text{x})\cdot i:\ddot{t}$ [L+S]/ it-have..-MOM-SPOR

Reduplication. Reduplication, the copying and adjoining of the copied portion to a word, is varied and common in Nootka. Reduplication can be morphemic or induced morphophonemically. Induced (parasynthetic) reduplication is of the following types: CV#CV, CV#CV·, CV· #CV, CV· #CV·, CV-c#CV·, and CV·-c#CV, abbreviated in underlying forms as [R], [R+L], [RL], [RL+L], [RcL], and [Rcl] respectively. The crosshatch (#) in the above reduplicative sequences indicates the root's leftward boundary. The length mark in the above sequences indicates which vowels are lengthened by the reduplication-inducing suffixes. If a vowel is already long, due to being either a long root vowel or a reduplicative copy of a long vowel, it remains long. It is not extra long.

Morphemic reduplication is of two types: CV# distributive reduplication and CV $\left\{\begin{smallmatrix} \lambda \\ C(C) \end{smallmatrix}\right\}\#$ iterative reduplication (the latter abbreviated as CVC#). The braced elements in the latter type of reduplication are in complementary distribution: λ is inserted when the copied root is vowel-final. In the distributive type; the morpheme-initial consonant and a short version of the syllable-initial vowel immediately adjacent to the reduplicative morpheme are prefixed to the copied morpheme, as in $?i?i\cdot h$ 'big ones (here and there)'. The reduplicative morpheme always has a short vowel, even if root-vowel lengthening morphemes are present.

By ordering induced reduplication after vowel lengthening, long reduplicative vowels are always due to copying of a long root vowel, whether that long root vowel is derived by vowel-lengthening suffixes or not. CV# reduplication is ordered before CVC# reduplication because in those words where these reduplicative morphemes are both present, the distributive reduplicative morpheme is more peripheral.

- (3) $mimi\cdot tamitx$ He was turning around here and there
 $/CV\#\text{CVC}\#\text{mitx}^w\text{-}[L]\text{-(y)a/}$ distrib-IT-turn-GRAD-REP

Because the distributive morpheme always copies a short version of the following vowel, the prior application of vowel-lengthening rules is irrelevant. Hence, distributive reduplication can be described as a rule sensitive simply to the following syllable and not necessarily to the root syllable.

Although words can include several noninflectional affixes, the inclusion of more than one reduplicative morpheme is rare, and is possible only for the distributive and iterative reduplicative morphemes. The reduplicative morphemes and the strategies for avoiding multiply-reduplicated roots are discussed in section 4.10.

Vowel Reduction. A syllable-final vowel is reduced to [ə] when it is the final phoneme in a CVCV- root or when it is preceded by a syllable-initial nasal which is not in a reduplicative or root syllable.

Thinning. The [ə] derived by vowel reduction appears to cause thinning of *a* to *i* when that vowel precedes a nasal-[ə] sequence. This rule is optional. There is also thinning of *i* to [ə] (phonemically *a*) in CV# reduplicative syllables.

- (4) *SaSíték'wkw*
/Síté-kuk [R]/ He resembled a dog
 dog-resembling..

VV Elision. The elision of vowels adjacent in the underlying form does not follow the same pattern as the elision of vowels rendered adjacent by ? deletion. This suggests that elision of vowels adjacent in the underlying form should precede the ? deletion rule. When two vowels are adjacent in the underlying form and one of them is a root vowel, the resulting elided vowel has the length of the longest underlying vowel and the quality of the root vowel. If neither adjacent vowel is a root vowel, then the vowel quality of the elided vowel is *u* if either underlying vowel is *u*, *i* if either underlying vowel is *i*, but neither is *u*, and otherwise *a* (i.e. if both are *a*). The symbols *a*, *i*, and *u* are used here to refer to underlying vowels of these qualities, irrespective of the underlying length. If the vowel resulting from elision immediately follows the initial root consonant and no underlying vowel in the VV sequence is invariably (i.e. obligatorily) long, then the

resulting vowel must be long, even if both underlying vowels are short, as in *hi·hi·ty'ik* 'afraid of snakes', based on the morphemes *hi-* 'snake' and *-ity'ik* [R] 'afraid of...'.

? Deletion. There are a number of environments in which ? deletes. This process must occur at least following reduplication, due to the deletion of ? in words such as *matma's* (/CV-t#ma-'as/ distrib-PL-dwell-at outside) 'tribes', where the ? is in a third (or later) syllable due to presence of a reduplicative syllable. There is no deletion of ? between the first and second syllables of a word, as in *ma?as* 'tribe'.

In general, ? deletes between vowels in third and later syllables. There are, however, certain third or later syllable environments in which ? deletion does not occur. First, a ? adjacent to an obligatorily long vowel is not deleted.

- (5) ?u?u'i·h
/?u-?i:h^w[R]/

He tried to get it
it-try to get..

Second, when ? is part of the definite suffix -?i· or is derived from one of the imperative morphemes beginning with /'/ by ? epenthesis, ? is not deleted. In addition, a limited number of suffixes begin with a ? (either underlying or derived from /'/ by ? epenthesis) which never deletes. These suffixes are identified by a dot placed between the boundary-marking hyphen and the phonemes, as in -?a^{gsp} 'mythical female.' or -?at 'aware of...'. Compare ?aya?at 'aware of many (ones)' with ?a·ya·tsimh 'liking many (of them)' which includes the suffix -?atsimh [L] 'liking...'.

? deletion is a rightward moving rule. In a sequence of ..v?v?v, where each ? has the potential to delete, only the leftmost one does.

- (6) ?u?a?
/?u-?a?^a/

There's something on the rocks
it-at rocks

No ..v?v?v?v sequences have been encountered.

There are also cases where ? deletion is optional. One such case is where a V?VC sequence is followed by a vowel which will delete by a later rule, as in *k'iksi?at* ~ *k'iksi?x't* 'it was broken' where the a of the final morpheme -?at PASS is deleted. A second is where ? follows

a fricative, as in *?u:s?at* ~ *?u:sət* 'aware of something'.

V?V Elision. ? deletion yields adjacent vowel sequences which must undergo vowel elision. The vowel resulting from such elision is long and has the quality of the rightmost underlying vowel.

- (7) *?i·hwa:s* Something big went outside
/?i:hʷ-wi·-as/ big-extend out-outside

There is a phonetic trace of the deleted ?, in that the derived vowel sounds long due to a dip in its pitch and a light laryngealization of the syllable in which it occurs. These features are indicated in the surface forms by a ? placed after the derived vowel, as in *Ki?sa·?x:t* 'it was broken'. These phonetic features are also characteristic of vowels which precede ejectives or the phonetically glottal consonants in surface forms.

Vowel Elision Over Glides. If the vowel resulting from vowel elision over glides were the same as that from elision over ?, a rule changing certain intervocalic glides to ? could be inserted prior to the ? deletion rule, rendering resulting elision regular. However, vowel elision over glides is irregular. It occurs only for vowel sequences deriving from certain morpheme sequences, such as *-mat-is* → *-may-is* → *-mi:s* 'moving around at the beach'.

Delabialization. Underlying rounded consonants *kʷ kʷ qʷ xʷ hʷ* are nonround preceding *u*, a nonglottal consonant, a glottal consonant beginning an inflectional suffix, or a word boundary. Consider the following words.

- (8) *t'iqu:t* There's a seating place
/t'iqʷ-u:t/ sit--place

- (9) *mitacši:* He turned
/mitacʷ-ši:(x)/ turn-MOM

- (10) *?una:k?a:qk:* He'll have it
/?u-na:kʷ-?a:qk:/ it-having..-FUT

- (11) *?una:k* He has it
/?u-na:kʷ/ it-having..

Rounding is not blocked by the presence of the morphophonemes /'/ or /c/.

- (12) *t'iqʷis* He's sitting at the beach
/t'iqʷ-cis/ sit-at beach

Nor is rounding blocked by a subsequent consonant whose adjacency is due to vowel deletion of an underlying intervening vowel.

- (13) *?u·?u·nakʷp* He has it too much (more than he should)
?u-nakʷ-apə [RL+L]/ it-having..-too

Labialization. In Kyuquot, labialization is optional for a consonant with a rounded counterpart when such a consonant is preceded and/or followed by a round vowel. Consider the following sentences.

- (14) *hayuq(w)im̥* There's ten round things
/hayu-qim̥/ ten..round objects
- (15) *yacuk(w)* He's walking
/yac-uk/ step-DUR
- (16) *?ink(w)u·z* There's a fireplace
?inkʷ-u·z/ fire-..place
- (17) *tu·k(w)u·k(w)* There's a sealion
/tu·ku·k/ sealion

By ordering delabialization before labialization, the free variation need be expressed only once, as part of labialization. The free variants (or exceptions) which are seemingly a part of the delabialization rule can all be accounted for by this ordering. The one case in which the labialization rule is obligatory is when a *u* which causes labialization of an adjacent segment is absent from surface structure by a vowel deletion rule (cf. (18) below).

Vowel Deletion. Vowel deletion is posited to follow labialization because labialized consonants which precede a consonant do not delabialize if the adjacency is due to vowel deletion.

- (18) *?u?ukʷwkw* He resembled him
?u-kʷuk [R]/ if-resembling..

- (19) *his-i-kʷsint*
/his-i-kʷ-fis-int/

He travelled along the beach
 there-go along...at beach-PAST

Vowel deletion also occurs for final short vowels, as in (20).

- (20) *?u'stag*
/?u's-taq [L]-i/

Work!

some-work on...-IMPV

Vowel deletion within words is not fully understood. It appears that the rightmost vowel is deleted if it is in a third or later syllable, is not obligatorily long, and is not already flanked by any consonant clusters.

- (21) *hayuči*
/hayu-či/

It went on for ten days
 ten-for..days

The blocking of vowel deletion does not prevent the violation of underlying phonotactic constraints. For example, there are no morpheme-final glottal consonants and no C'G or G'C sequences in underlying forms, yet vowel deletion, labialization, glottalization etc. all yield forms which have such structures (cf. (18) and (20) above).

If a vowel is blocked from deleting, then the rightmost vowel which is capable of deleting will do so.

- (22) *qa·cc'ištaqnu·č*
/qacc'a-(š)taq-anu:(č)[L]/

It was (done) for three reasons
 three..things-for..reasons.

The vowel deleted must be in a third or later syllable. Alternate syllables are then counted from the syllable of the deleted vowel and not of the vowel blocked from deleting, e.g. from /qa/ rather than from /nu:č/ in the above underlying form. There appears to be optional deletion of the vowel which is two syllables leftward of a deleted vowel, if the leftmost vowel is not in an inflectional suffix and is in a third or later syllable of the word (in its underlying form).

- (23) *?i·?i·h(i)čap*
/?i:hʷ-(č)i·č-apə [RL+L]/

He's making the biggest one

big-make..-very.

If a final vowel is deleted, this does not block deletion of the last interconsonantal vowel as long as the latter vowel is noninflectional. Such vowel deletion in adjacent syllables generally occurs only when

fricatives are available to break up stop sequences.

- (24) *ñ' u' ñ' usinkʷškʰc'* He was drying his hands at the fire
/ñ' us-in' uk [RL]-ši(ñ)-hc'i/ dry-at hand-MOM-dry at fire
[?tʃw̥tʃw̥sɪŋkʷškʰts]

Nonobligatorily long vowels in inflectional suffixes also delete. Again, deletion begins at a rightmost vowel and proceeds leftward, usually to alternate vowels in VC C{#} environments. Consider the following.

- (25) *č' ičiňcip's* Cut it for me!
/č' i-ši(ñ)-či-p'-i-s/ cut-MOM-for-IMPV-I
- (26) *č' i?akʷa?p' tint* It ended up all cut
/č' i-(?a)kʷa-'ap-'at-int/ cut-completely-CAUS-PASS-PAST
- (27) *č' ičiňcip'atkʷinti's* Mine was cut up for me
/č' i-ši(ñ)-či-p-'at-uk-int-(y)i:-s/ cut-MOM-for-PASS-POSS-PAST-INDF-I

There are instances where the above rules are inadequate. In some words, syllable-adjacent but not syllable-final vowels delete.

- (28) *pu'pu'm(a)žn'uk* His palm is itchy
/pu'maž-in'uk [RL]/ itchy-at hand

In other words, a second-syllable vowel is deleted.

- (29) *mi'xtkʷp'* He likes old people
/mixt-kʷap [L]/ old-liking..

ə Epenthesis. There are several environments for ə epenthesis (i epenthesis if adjacent to a velar consonant) with varying degrees of optionality. One of the most obligatory is CVC CV, where ə inserts interconsonantly and intersyllabically if the preceding consonant is a stop or affricate and the following consonant is a stop (including ? and !) or a nasal.

- (30) *tučna.k* [tučna.k'] He has a wife
/tuč-na.k/ woman-having..

A second obligatory environment for ə epenthesis is between a nasal and

a back stop or affricate, as in *pinkšit* [prɪŋkšít] 'wake up'. The epenthetic vowel is not included in the syllable count which determines whether or not an underlying long vowel is long in a surface form. In example (30), the vowel α^* would not be long in the surface form if it were in the third syllable.

Vowel Shortening. Word-final long vowels (whether obligatorily or variably long) are shortened.

- (31) *mata* It was flying
 /mat-(y)a*/ fly-CONT
 (32) *ñawa?i* He approached
 /ñawa-.?i:/ near-get to be at..

Vowel shortening must apply after vowel deletion because shortened final vowels do not delete.

Vowel length is neutralized prior to a non-syllable-initial nasal. In such a context, the phonemic distinction normally indicated by length is indicated by vowel quality, with 'long' vowels being tense and 'short' vowels being relatively lax and more centralized.

Vocalization. A word-final /iy/ sequence obligatorily surfaces as i^* and a word-final /ay/ sequence optionally surfaces as i^* .

- (33) *?u-ši* It was at some point in time
 /?u-š-(y)iya/ some-at..time
 (34) *?u-šsu-qstx* { i^* } He was slowly becoming angry
 /?u-šsu:qst-u(?)-aya [L]/ angry-MOM-slowly

This derived i^* is not subject to word-final shortening or loss. If the rule were written $\{i\}y \rightarrow i: / _ \#$, then the rule could follow vowel shortening and precede the vowel length assignment rule.

Vowel Length Assignment. Obligatorily long vowels surface as long vowels (except word-finally unless derived by vocalization). Long vowels are long in first or second syllables; otherwise, they surface as short vowels. Compare, for example, the surface forms of the morpheme *-na-kw* 'having...' in examples (11) and (13).

Fricative Merging. When two identical fricatives are adjacent (only possible over a morpheme boundary), the phonetic realization is one long fricative, as in **iħħtin* [ħħtħtħin] 'made of (something) red'. Merging occurs even if the first fricative is phonemically part of an affricate.

- (35) *ʔi·ħħes* [ʔħħ·ħħes·] He was asking for a dog
/ħħe-(ħħ)e [L]/ dog-ask for..

Nonfricative geminates are individually articulated, whether stops as in *miħx̥taq* 'because of his old age' or affricates as in *ħiħša·ħħa* 'begin to cry again'.

Opening. In certain environments, most commonly (C)C_C, a back stop is phonetically realized as its fricative counterpart. That is, /k k' kʷ k'ʷ q qʷ/ surface as x, x, xʷ, xʷ, x and xʷ respectively. Consider the following example, where /k'ʷ/ is realized as xʷ.

- (36) *wiwiħkk'ʷuk* [wiwiħkxʷuk] It resembles nothing
/wiħ-k'ʷuk [R]/ not-resembling..

Such opening occasionally occurs, optionally, in other environments such as preceding a consonant cluster or even intervocally. Opening also commonly occurs when /ħ(')/ precedes a consonant.

- (37) *ħiħša·ħħat* [ħiħša·ħħat] She was hit
/ħiħša(ħ)-ħħat/ hit-MOM-TEM-PASS

Breaking. The vowel u (or [ø]) is optionally realized as [iʷ] when found in a n_k(w)C environment such as *nun'ks* 'I sing'.

Nasalization. Although anticipatory nasalization of vowels is uncommon in Kyuquot, it does occasionally occur in a _nC environment and can be accompanied by nasal deletion.

- (38) *ħu·kʷa·nsh?i·p* He gave gifts to the doctor
/ħu·kʷa:a-na-sh?i:p/ doctor-give gift to..

This occurs only in rapid or casual speech.

? to h Change. Word-initial ? occasionally has the surface phonetic form of [h], as in *?aya* [ħe:yε:] 'many'.

h to *y* Change. Intervocalic *h* (which occurs only due to reduplication) is occasionally pronounced [y]. This particular phenomenon is especially associated with the locative root *hit* 'there'.

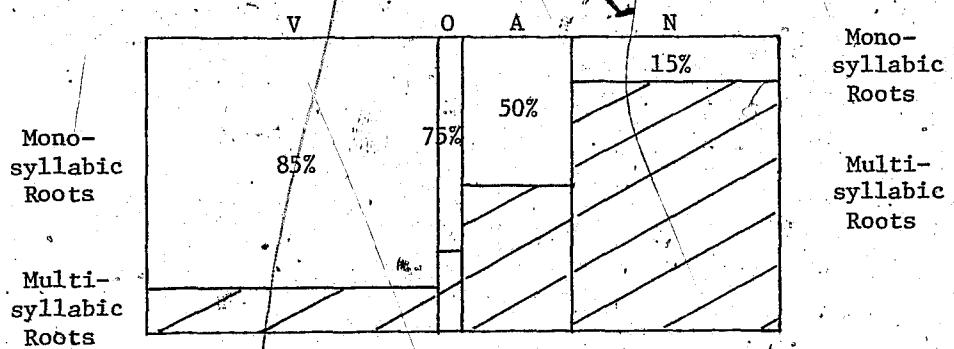
The above survey of phonological and morphophonological rules should enable the reader to understand (and possibly work out) the derivation of surface forms from the posited underlying forms which are presented in the examples found throughout this thesis.

2.3. Morpheme Structure Constraints

The shape of a Kyuquot morpheme is constrained at least by the following principles. A root begins with one consonant followed by one vowel. The most common shape of a root is CVC₀₋₃. Neither CVC₀₋₃ roots nor multisyllabic roots are distributed evenly among Kyuquot semantic classes. These semantic classes, which will be discussed and referred to many times in this thesis, are: verbal (V), nominal (N), adjectival (A), locative, quantifier, quantity, and temporal. The latter four are here amalgamated into one class, 0 ('other'), because together they constitute only three percent of all roots.

The following table shows the rough percentages of mono- and multisyllabic roots found within the classes V, N, A, and 0, each class represented by a column. Multisyllabic roots are virtually always disyllabic, although 16 trisyllabic roots are attested. The width of each column in the table indicates the proportion of roots in that class to the total number of roots in Nootka.

FIGURE 1: DISTRIBUTION OF MONO- AND MULTISYLLABIC ROOTS



The very small proportion of monosyllabic nominal roots, coupled with the dominance of the lexicon by verbal monosyllabic roots, suggests that, in many cases, nominals have been derived historically from verbal roots. Of the monosyllabic roots, the majority (two-thirds) are CVC, a quarter are CVCC, and the remainder are virtually all CV. Only four roots have been found to end in a triple consonant sequence.

All consonants occur root-initially, except for *h^w*. One consonant, *h*, occurs only initially or as a copied consonant in a reduplicative morpheme. Ejectives and other glottal consonants such as *h*, ?, and § do not occur morpheme-finally. Resonants are rare in that position. There is no morpheme ending in *y* and only one ending in *w*, namely *haw* 'eat'. The most common shape of suffixes is -C₀₋₂VC₀₋₂. There are also morphemes consisting of only one or two consonants, e.g. -(q)*h* 'in the meantime', or consisting of more than one syllable, e.g. -*kway'i'h* 'try to get...'.

Roots and suffixes (and reduplicative copy morphemes) can have final clusters. Neither consonant in a morpheme-final cluster can be an ejective or a glide. In addition, the initial consonant must be non-labialized and the final consonant must be nonresonant (and nonlabialized in suffixes). The phonological structure of the morpheme-final clusters can be summarized as follows. The consonants must have different places of articulation, where 'place' is understood as one of the following: labial, alveolar, alveopalatal, velar, and uvular-pharyngeal. With respect to these places, a labial consonant can precede one of any other place; an alveolar or alveopalatal can precede one of any other place except labial; and a back consonant can precede a nonback nonlabial consonant of the same height, where alveopalatal and velar consonants are considered high and alveolar and uvular-pharyngeal consonants are not. In this five-place system, laterals are alveolar and labiovelars and labiouvulars are velar and uvular-pharyngeal respectively.

Exceptions to this system of cluster formation are:

1. certain *cs* and *st* clusters, the acceptability of which might arise from the existence of *c* [ts] as a phoneme;
2. the *qh* sequence; and

3. the *nθ* cluster. The absence of other alveolar clusters, whether or not they include affricates (*c* or *χ*), fricatives (*s* or *ʃ*), or stops, suggests that *c*, *χ*, and *θ* should be treated as alveolar consonants.

2.4. Morphological Overview

Grammatical rules are expressed in terms of syntactic constituents (e.g. noun phrase) and grammatical word categories (e.g. noun). These terms are defined on the basis of shared morphological features, such as an inflectional pattern characteristic of all and only the words of a certain category, and on the basis of syntactic features, such as the recurrence of a certain syntactic constituent in the structural descriptions of several syntactic rules or constraints formulated for a language. In the following sections, inflectional differences are used to distinguish full words from two types of particles.

2.4.1. Noninflecting Particles

Nootka has words, that is, sound sequences which occur as units in isolation, at least in citation forms. Some words have potential for inflection. Some do not. Noninflecting words, termed *particles*, are of the following types: interjections, deictics, conjunctions, and onomatopoeic, aspectual, and modal particles.

Interjections tend to occur sentence-initially. They are treated in section 3.6.4 as part of discourse features. Deictics (including the article *ha*) are discussed in relation to noun phrase shape, simple obliques, and anaphora (cf. sections 3.2, 3.3, and 3.6.2 respectively). A very few conjunctions are noninflecting. They are discussed, along with other conjunctions, in the section on appositive sentences (3.4.6). Onomatopoeic particles are not inflected, although they can be affixed by derivational suffixes such as *-fin[R]* 'making sound of...' to yield a potentially inflectable stem. There is one aspectual particle, *?int* 'habitually', discussed in relation to other aspectual morphemes (cf. section 4.4.8), and one modal particle, *hač* 'perhaps' (cf. section 4.1.3).

2.4.2 Inflecting Particles

There are two types of particles which are marginally inflected.

That is, their inflectional characteristics are idiosyncratic. The first type are the imperative particles (cf. section 4.3), which make use of the regular first or second person imperative affixes but are obligatorily imperative. They never inflect for other moods or for third person. Imperative particles are predicates.

The second type of inflecting particle is the grammatical one ?in 'that, since, but', found clause-initially and inflected for certain persons (first and second singular and second plural), the inferential mood, and a future tense. This particle is the cognate of Port Alberni Nootka ?ana. The Port Alberni grammatical particle ?ata- 'but' has no Kyuquot equivalent. The third Port Alberni grammatical particle, hač' 'perhaps', occurs in Kyuquot but is not inflected.

2.4.3. Stems

The vast majority of Kyuquot words are inflecting. Of these, certain ones, such as *yaqʷ-* 'who, which', are obligatorily inflected. Any nonparticle which can be inflected is termed a *stem*. This usage contrasts with that of Sapir and Swadesh (1939:235) where this term designates a word-initial nonreduplicative morpheme such as *tux-* 'jump', *χ'ihʷ-* 'red', *tič-* 'alive', *čapxʷ-* 'man, male', or *nism'a* 'land' (the hyphen indicating that the item must be affixed by at least one other suffix to serve as an independent word). Such items are termed *roots* in this work.

Some roots have an identical stem form, as in the case of *nism'a* 'land' or *tič-* 'alive'. Other roots differ from their corresponding stem forms, in that either

1. the stem form is a phonologically similar form, but one not deriveable from the root by affixation, e.g. *čakup* from the root *čapxʷ-* 'man, male'; or
2. the root's stem form consists of the root plus some affix, most commonly an aspectual affix; e.g. *χ'ihuk* 'red' from the root *χ'ihʷ-* and *tuxšik* 'jump' from the root *tux-* include the aspectual allomorphs -uk DUR and -šik MOM respectively. Nominal stem-forming affixes whose gloss would be '..thing' are often assigned the abbreviatory gloss NOM, as in *sa·s-in* hummingbird-NOM.

Two additional terms are needed for a discussion of Nootka word-

internal syntax. First, an entity to which noninflectional affixes can attach is termed a *base*. A base can be

1. a root, as in *t'iqʷ-a-s'* 'sitting on it', from /t'iqʷ-a-s/ 'sit-ON';
2. a stem, as in *ti-č̥ma* 'heart', from /ti-č̥-ma/ 'alive-NOM'; or
3. a nonstem sequence of morphemes, as in *muq-mat-q'uq* 'swishing water about in the mouth', from /muq-mat-q'uq/ 'liquid foaming-move about-in mouth'. Second, the form composed of a base plus -q- COMB, which certain roots and morpheme sequences have when followed by certain non-inflectional suffixes, is termed the *combining form*. Examples are *nism'a-q-* 'land!', *ti-č̥-ma-q-* 'heart', and *sa-s-in-q-* 'hummingbird'.

| | |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| (39) <i>nism'aqnak</i> | He has land |
| /nism'a-q-na-kʷ/ | land-COMB-having.. |

Stems can be inflected for mood, tense, person, and number. Stems are thus distinguished from particles, which do not inflect, and from inflecting particles, which inflect only for one or two moods and a limited number of persons.

2.4.4. Survey of Word Structure

The Kyuquot word consists of a root which can be affixed by preceding reduplicative morphemes, by infixes (to mark plural), by non-inflectional affixes (including lexical and aspectual affixes), and by inflectional suffixes. Lexical affixes are of two types, governing and restrictive. Governing affixes, which can attach to a base which is a constituent of the object or sentential complement of that affix, are identified by the presence of dots in their glosses, e.g. -na·kʷ 'having...'. Restrictive affixes can not have as object or complement the base to which they attach and have no dots in their glosses, e.g. -n'a·q 'at the top of a height'. There are about 400 basic lexical affixes and many idiomatic lexical suffix compounds as well.

In Kyuquot, each word and each morpheme has an aspect, either explicit or implicit. Bases, whether or not they have an implicit aspect, can be affixed by one or more aspect morphemes. The aspect morphemes include the momentaneous -ši(ž), inceptive -či-či(ž), continuative -(y)a-, durative -akʷ (~ -uk'), sporadic iterative -š

($\sim i\cdot i\cdot \tilde{t}$ [L+S]), iterative CVC#, repetitive -(y)a, and graduative [L].

All aspect morphemes can occur with the graduative, and the inceptive, durative, and iterative morphemes can occur with the momentaneous.

Inflectional suffixes, which follow all noninflectional suffixes in the word, include morphemes indicating mood, tense, person, plural, possession, voice, diminutive, definite, and recurrence.

3. SYNTAX

The description of Kyuquot sentence structure is organized as follows. Simple clauses are discussed first, examining in turn ambient, one-place, and multi-place predicates, followed by the structures and roles of noun phrases, qualifiers, simple adjuncts, and obliques. The description of simple clauses ends with a subcategorization of clauses by the predicate's semantic class.

The characteristic constructions of complex sentences are introduced: complements, sentential obliques (with attention to noun phrase introducing obliques), embedded referential and relative clauses, and coordinate (and appositive) clauses. Appositive clauses are subclassified into temporally- or causally-related clauses, subordinate clauses, and nonmarked clauses. The strategies used to maintain simple one-adjunct clauses are also discussed here.

Marked sentence constructions include passive clauses, cleft constructions, contrastive (topical) predicates, and obligatory predicates (i.e. question, negative, and quantifier predicates).

Syntactic features of discourse are then presented: sentential types, ellipsis, anaphora (including pronominalization, reflexive and reciprocal pronouns, and deixis), favorite sentential styles (such as mirror sentences, VS:VO sentences, and redundancies), and the role of interjectional particles. The chapter concludes with a discussion of the implications of Kyuquot syntax for syntactic typology and a summary of areas requiring further research.

3.1. Simple Clauses and their Predicate Types

3.1.1. The Simple Clause

The Kyuquot clause has as its nucleus a predicate. A matrix predicate is inflected for the person and number of the subject. In addition, the predicate is affixed by all inflectional suffixes whose domain of reference is the whole clause rather than the entity to which they are attached. If no person affix is present, a matrix predicate is normally understood to have a third person (singular or plural) subject. There are predicates in Kyuquot which are inflected only for third

person and have no subject referent. Such predicates are termed *ambient*.

There are two types of ambient predicates: environmental and deictic. Environmental predicates indicate the occurrence of a certain meteorological or temporal state or process.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) <i>k^wisa^s</i> <i>/k^wis.-(y)a^{-a}^s/</i> | It must be snowing snow-CONT-EVID |
| (2) <i>?athša^s ?xqu^c</i> <i>/?ath-ši(n)-?x-qu:-c/</i> | It would get dark, night after night night-MOM-TEM-COND-INF |
| (3) <i>ku^wabatka</i> <i>/ku^wab-?ak-na/</i> | It was morning again morning-TEM-again |

Deictic predicates indicate the presence of some entity (a concrete nominal) in a particular place and time.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (4) <i>?i^whtu^pm^winh^c</i> <i>/?i^whtu^p-m^winh-(y)i:-c/</i> | There were a bunch of whales big..being-PL-INDF-INF |
| (5) <i>t^wan'a^sint^s</i> <i>/t^wan'a-?is-int-i^s/</i> | There was a child (in a story) child-DIM-PAST-IND |
| (6) <i>qu^wišim^sit</i> <i>/qu^wiš-in-m^wi^wt/</i> | There's Raven! raven-NOM-mythical male.. |

Simple ambient predicates can be, but are not necessarily, inflected for tense, mood, and mode. Noninflected ambient predicates tend to denote unique referents such as Raven (in (6) above). However, no ambient predicate, and in fact no predicate, can be affixed by the definite morpheme *-?i^w*. Hence, a form such as *čakup*?i** 'the man' cannot have an ambient reading (such as '*'there's the man') and can be interpreted clausally only as an elliptical fragment and not as a predicate. Deictic ambient predicates are semantically distinct from equational predicates in which an entity is asserted to be a certain type of entity. In general, ambient predicates belong to the verbal, temporal, or nominal classes.

Most Kyuquot predicates are associated with a subject, i.e. a clausal constituent coreferential to the pronominal affix found in the

predicate. A clause's subject, if represented by an independent word, is termed an *adjunct*. This term also designates an object constituent of a transitive clause. Certain predicates are associated with only a subject adjunct. Such intransitive predicates can be actions whose subjects have control over the events expressed as predicates.

- (7) *xi·hšà·?x qu·?as·i* The man paddled away
/xi·h-ši(x)-·ax qu·?as-?i·/ paddle-MOM-TEM adult-DEF
- (8) *t'icksa·?x ma·?asi* The people roared
/t' ick-ši(x)-·ax ma-·as-?i·/ thunder-MOM-TEM dwell-outside-DEF

They can be passive actions or states in which the semantic patient has no control over the event.

- (9) *qahsa·p·ax t mawič·?i* The deer was killed
/qah-sa·p- ax-·at mawič-?i·/ die-MOMCAUS-TEM-PASS deer-DEF

They can be processes in which the subject is semantically a patient or experiencer and has no control over the event.

- (10) *t'i p'itšint Joe* Joe fell down
/ti-p'it-ši(x)-int .. / fall-at edge-MOM-PAST

Finally, intransitive predicates can be states. In Kyuquot, nominal, adjectival, and deictic locative states can be intransitive predicates in simple clauses consisting of predicate and adjunct.

Examples of such sentences are given below.

- (11) *napni·th Bill* Is Bill a priest?
/napni·t·ha· .. / priest-QUE
- (12) *wikhtinckʷaſ ſ Mary* Mary must have been crazy
/wik-htin-ckʷa-·a-ſ .. / nothing-made of..-MUST-EVID
- (13) *?ah?a·xi·č m'uksy'a* A rock was there
/?ah?a-·ax-(y)i-·č m'uk-sy'a/ there-TEM-INDF-INF pound-NOM

Temporal, quantifier, and quantity predicates are typically ambient but are intransitive when they govern an (explicit or elliptical) embedded clause. Nondeictic locative predicates are typically transitive.

- Kyuquot has predicates associated with two adjuncts, a subject

and an object. In unmarked clauses, subject precedes object. Such transitive predicates are often morphologically derived, due to the presence of either a causative morpheme as in (14) and (15) or a transitive lexical affix as in (16).

- (14) *k'insa·pnah Linda ha·ma* Did Linda break the hammer?
/k'ix-sa·p-na-ha· ... / break-MOMCAUS-PAST-QUE
- (15) *ti·č·apqu Bill ɻini·xí* If only Bill could save the dog!
/ti·č·ap-qu: ... ɻini·x-i/ alive-CAUS-COND ... dog-DEF
- (16) *?u?u?i·h mamačn'i hu?i* The whites were after whales
/?u-i:h [R] ma-mač-n'i ... / it-chase.. dwell-move about-at coast ..

There are also underived transitive predicates as well. Consider the following examples.

- (17) *ñava·ñh Bill t'asi·s* Is Bill near Tahsis?
/ñava-ñh-ha· ... t'asi-s/ near-TEM-QUE .. trail-at beach
- (18) *ñutintiš tu·cma? si·čit* The woman was good to me
/ñut-int-iš-tu-cma-i· si-(č)it[L]/
 good-PAST-IND woman-DEF I-do to..
- (19) *cassa·?ñaquč ɻini·ñkʷqs mawič* My dog used to chase deer
/cas-ši(ñ)-ñak-na-qu-č ɻini·ñ-uk-qa-s ... /
 chase-MOM-TEM-PAST-COND-INF dog-POSS-SUB-I

As the above examples show, there are roots such as *cas-* 'chase' or *ñava-* 'near' as well as stems which are transitive. Transitive predicates can be verbal, locative, or adjectival. In fact, virtually all locative predicates are transitive.

Although transitive predicates with two surface adjuncts are not prohibited, they are rare in Kyuquot. Transitive clauses normally have only one surface adjunct, due to pronominalization and ellipsis of either the subject or object. Because there is no case marking, one cannot tell in the examples below whether the adjunct is subject or object. Only the subject reading is given.

- (20) *pinksə·pnah ?um?i* Did Mom wake him up?
/pink-sa·p-na-ha· ... / awaken-MOMCAUS-PAST-QUE mother

Strategies for avoiding two-adjunct clauses are discussed in section 3.5.3.1.

Although Kyuquot has a rich inflectional system, a clause, whether ambient, intransitive, or transitive, can be fully grammatical without inflection of the predicate. Such non-inflection in matrix predicates indicates either that the clause is unmarked with respect to mood and tense (i.e. is past or present) and has a third person subject, or that the clause has undergone inflection ellipsis due to its discourse context. A noninflected predicate is identified as a predicate by its position and by structural features associated with certain sentence types, e.g. a sentence with a contrastive object. Examples of non-inflected predicates have already been presented (cf. (1) through (9) and (16) above).

Before continuing with a discussion of predicate structure, it is necessary to consider the nature of the nominal phrase, a constituent normally associated with adjuncts in Kyuquot.

3.1.2. The Nominal Phrase

Any constituent of a clause, whether predicate, adjunct, or oblique, which consists of a pronoun, nominal plus modifier(s), or modifier(s) (of an elliptical nominal head) is termed a *nominal phrase* (NP). NP's can be inflected for plurality, tense, mood, and mode. In addition, non-pronominal NP's can be inflected for plurality and possession. In NP's, the inflection refers to the nominal upon which the NP is based. Other constituents (for example, verbal, locative, or adjectival predicates) can be inflected for plurality and possession, but not for definiteness. In such constituents, the referent asserted to be plural or possessor by the inflectional affix(es) is outside of (i.e. not dominated by) the constituent thus inflected. Contrast the following predicates.

- (21) *Si-ni-^ñm'inh.* There's a bunch of dogs
/Si-ni-^ñ-m'inh/ dog-PL

- (22) *Si-hsi-^ñm'inh.* A bunch of them cried
/Si-h-si(^ñ)-m'inh/ cry-MOM-PL

In (21), the plurality is a property of the constituent (NP) in which the plural morpheme is located. However, in (22), the plurality is a property of an elliptical constituent independant of the constituent in which the plural morpheme is located. As (21) démontre, a NP can be a predicate. However, in this section, it is the structure of nonpredicative NP's which is focused upon. The simplest NP is one in which only a nonderived nominal such as *qini-km'inh* 'dogs' is present. NP's are rendered more complex by the inclusion of modifiers. Modifiers of a nominal include the article, deictics proper, quantifiers, quantities, adjectivals, other nominals, and in addition, referential, relative, and appositive clauses.

3.1.2.1. The Article

The article *ha* 'the, that' is the only nominal modifier which is never inflected. This morpheme indicates that a nominal is semantically definite. One must specify that the definiteness is semantic because *ha* need not be present in a definite NP. Consider the following sentences.

- (23) *m'aw'a-?xi-č ha t'an'a-s'i* The child took it home

/m'aw'a-?ax-(y)i:-č .. t'an'a-?is-?i/
take along-TEM-INDF-INF .. child-DIM-DEF

- (24) *?uk'xi-tapin ha t'an'a-s'* We'll ask the child to make it

/?u-(č)i-t.-ap-in ... / it-make-CAUS-IP

- (25) *pinkša-?xi t'an'a-s'i* The child woke up

/pink-ši(x)-?ax .. / awaken-MOM-TEM

- (26) *?ihša-?xi-č t'an'a-s* The child cried

/?ih-ši(x)-?ax-(y)i:-č .. / cry-MOM-TEM-INDF-INF

These sentences all occurred in discourse contexts where there was only one possible referent for *t'an'a-s* 'child', either because the discourse referents included only one child or because only one child was focused on as a possible sentential participant at the time the sentence was uttered. Both these situations differ from one wherein two or more referents are focused on as participants, and one term such as *t'an'a-s* could refer to both. This is the contrastive situation,

identified in Kyuquot by special sentence structures such as cleft or topical constructions. None of the above sentences have a contrastive adjunct. For example, (23) cannot have contrastive readings such as 'THAT child took it home' or 'the CHILD took it home'. The article *ha* has a referent-designating function but neither a referent-contrasting nor a referent-distinguishing function.

The article is initial in the NP whose nominal it modifies. It precedes the nominal and any modifier.

- (27) *ha nít?i tu-cma* the beautiful woman
 /.. *nít?-i* .. / .. beautiful-DEF

- (28) *ha yaqsu-pma?q?maq miwicí* the deer he wanted to kill
 /.. *yaq?-su:-p-ma?aq?-na-q miwic?-i* /
 .. which-die-CAUS-want-to...-PAST-REL deer-DEF

It also occurs with and precedes deictic modifiers as well, but such cooccurrence is found only in NP's with an anaphoric deictic head.

- (29) *ha ?ahku* this, one

~~3.1.2.2. Deictics~~

Deictics, like articles, are distinguished from other nonrelative constituents of a NP because they are never affixed by the NP-level inflectional morphology. Nor are they affixed by derivational morphemes. Deictics are not, however, particles because they do serve as predicates and, as predicates, can be affixed by the clause-level inflectional morphemes (as in (13)). Because of structural and functional similarities, deictics are classed with the article, the third person stem *?uh*, and the deictic-like locative stems. Together, these entities constitute the set of Kyuquot determiners. Kyuquot determiners signal the spatial relation between an entity and the speaker referring to the entity and/or the listener(s) attending to the speaker, the degree of distance between an entity and conversation participants, and the presence or absence of contrastive emphasis of the entity.

The following table summarizes the set of determiners in Kyuquot, omitting the article.

TABLE 4: KYUQUOT DETERMINERS

| Type of Relation | Deictic Nom/Loc | Deictic Pro Loc/Conv | Pro | Locative Stem |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|-------|---------------|
| unmarked | ?ah | ?ah | ?uh | hit |
| near speaker | ?ahku | ?ahku | | |
| away from speaker | ?ah?a ha*y'a(h) ha?a(h) | ?ah?a | ?uh?a | ha*t ya*t |
| near listener not speaker | ?ahn'i | ?ahn'i | | |
| very far | hu*(?a(h)) | | | hu*(t) |
| contrastive | hiy'a(h) | hit | | hit |

The deictics in the leftmost column are used either as non-anaphoric modifiers (e.g. 'this' or 'that') within a NP or as adverbial-type oblique locative constituents (e.g. 'here' or 'there'). The parenthetical elements in the above table are optional, although it appears that *h* is more common as part of a NP modifier than a locative oblique. Examples of these locative deictics are found in the following phrases: ?ah?a· maht'i· 'that house over there', hu* c'ušuk t'atí 'that new trail way over there (at least five feet away)', ka*?ak ?ahn'i puk 'give (me) that book (near listener)!'.

The morphological structure of the locative deictics is unique in Kyuquot because there is a stem, ?ah 'that', which appears to occur as a compounded element in other deictic words such as hu?ah, and possibly ha*y'ah, ha?a and hiy'ah as well, if one posits that ?ah has two compounding allomorphs -?ah and -'ah. Due to the very small number of elements in the deictic class, and especially due to the nonproductivity of -?ah or -'ah (or -ku or -n'i for that matter) as word-formation elements, the deictics are not analyzed here as being composed of two normal morphemes.

The deictics in the second column of Table 4 are, for the most part, a subset of the locative deictics. However, those in the second column have a different function. They are pronominal or anaphoric deictics, designating a location or an entity in an elliptical NP. In other words, the pronominal deictics stand as heads of NP's and can be

glossed as 'this (that) one, place'. In addition, pronominal deictics are used to refer to designated participants in discourse, i.e. 'this (that) one that has been the conversational topic'. In such usage, the entity referred to is not being spatially-located but only conversationally integrated. A pronominal deictic can be modified by the article (cf. example (29)), by one deictic, or by other NP modifiers. Examples of sentences containing pronominal deictics are given below.

- (30) *qu-i-s hiy'ah ?ahku* THIS one is a slave
/qu-i-s .../ slave-IND THIS this
- (31) *wabša-?ñka-?ah'a*. That guy went home again
/wab-ši(?)-añ-ka-.../ go home-MOM-TEM-again that
- (32) *pussa-?ñkintiš hit* HE got tired
/pus-ši(?)-añ-int-?i-s .../ tired-MOM-TEM-PAST-IND HE

The deictic-like stem *?uh* is included as a determiner because it can either modify a nominal or anaphoric head within a NP or serve as a modifiable anaphoric head itself.

- (33) *qʷahta-?ñ qí- ha ?uh qaqmít* But ALDER (burns) for a long time
/qʷahta-?ñ ... ?u-h qaq-mít/ but-TEM long the it-ABS alder-NOM
- (34) *?a-qinaphč ?ahn'i ?uh* What's that one doing (near you)?
/?aqi-n. [L]-ap-ha-č .. ?u-h/ what?-do..-CAUS-QUE-INF that it-ABS

The locative stems are morphologically normal, being capable of affixation by noninflectional suffixes. Locative stems are not deictics (in the Kyuquot sense).

3.1.2.3. NP Inflection

The nondeictic modifiers of a NP have a structure largely equivalent to that of a third person absolute predicate with the modified nominal as subject. The main difference is that nonrelative nominal-modifying elements can be affixed by *-?i-* DEF, the definite marker. This affix attaches to predicative elements only if they are embedded in NP's. For example, *?acšiñ'i čakup* can mean only 'the man out fishing' and not *'the man went fishing'.

There is a second difference between the structure of clause-level predicative constituents and ones embedded in NP's. In the first type, clause-level inflection is always located in the predicate and not in adjuncts. Consider the following sentence.

- (35) *his̥siðmaqñintiš čakup* A man wanted to hit it
/his-ši(?)-maqñ-int-?i-š .../ hit-MOM-want to...-PAST-IND

It would be ungrammatical to say **his̥siðmaqñ čakupintiš*. This restriction does not apply in Kyuquot NP's, where NP-level inflectional morphemes attach to either the modifier (equivalent to the clause-level predicate) or the nominal head, although the more common structure is MOD-INFL NOM (i.e. modifier-inflection nominal).

- (36) *tupkakm'inhisi mamaht'* a bunch of little black houses
/tupk-akʷ-m'inh-?is-?i CV#maht' i/
 black-DUR-PL-DIM-DEF distrib-house

Examples of grammatical NP's with the structure NOM-INFL MOD follow.

- (37) *č'apici x̥aʔu* the other canoe
/č'apic-?i- x̥aʔu/ canoe-DEF other
- (38) *ha qawint'i ?aya* the many berries (since destroyed)
/... qawi-int-?i- ?aya/ the berry-PAST-DEF many
- (39) *čakup'i x̥ut* the handsome man
/čakup-?i- x̥ut/ male-DEF good

Such NP structures are not restricted to some unique sentential frame. They are a stylistic variant found in unelicited monologue and dialogue. If such phrases are presented out of context, native speakers judge them to be anomalous and offer, in their place, ones in which the modifier, affixed by the NP-level inflectional morphemes, precedes the nominal.

If the inflectional affixes were always part of the first non-deictic word of the NP, as in the above examples, this would be evidence that those affixes constituted a block of clitics with an obligatory constituent position. However, inflection is not obligatorily linked to the first nondeictic stem. Consider the following sets of NP's. The

first set consists of NP's of the shape MOD NOM-INFL, such as *haʔu čapici* 'the other canoe' or *niččekup'i* 'the handsome man' (or (40) below).

- (40) *?aya č' aškakm' inh* many fast ones
/ .. č' ašk-akʷ-m' inh/ many fast-DUR-PL

The second set consists of NP's with the shape NOM MOD-INFL.

- (41) *haʔa sini-x tana-kat* their huge dog
/... tani-ʔak-ʔa-t/ that dog really-POSS-PL
 (42) *?inksy'a ?ayaqu* (possibly) a lot of wood
/?inkʷ-sy'a, ?aya-qu:/ fire-NOM many-COND
 (43) *quʔas taʔitm' inh* the sick people
/.. ta-čit-m' inh-i/ adult drift-in house-PL DEF

There is clearly no prohibition against NP's in which inflection is linked to a noninitial stem. In fact, given that deictics are stems which can inflect as (matrix) predicates but not as nonpredicative NP modifiers, there are NP's in which the NP-level inflection must not occur following the first stem.

In addition, there are instances of inflectional morphology being distributed over the constituents of a NP:

- (44) *tupkaki maht' im' inh* the black houses
/tupk-akʷ-ʔi· maht' i-m' inh/ black-DUR-DEF house-PL

Clearly, such a construction cannot be accounted for by a clitic placement rule plus a constituent movement rule.

These marked NP structures are all relatively uncommon but are not ungrammatical. They are volunteered by native speakers. Presented in context, no speaker finds them deviant. However, due to their rarity, the preference for MOD-INFL NOM order, and incorporation phenomena (cf. section 4.7.1), the MOD NOM order is assumed to be basic or unmarked and inflectional affixes are assumed to normally follow the first nondeictic stem of the NP.

3.1.2.4 Qualifiers

The examination of NP modifiers begins with a discussion of qualifiers, words which qualify other words. Each semantic class is associated with possible qualifiers. Within the NP, two qualifiers occur. The first, *?i·h* 'really', qualifies an adjectival or locative modifier.

- (45) *ha ?i·h?i xub bu·ama* the really beautiful woman

- (46) *?i·h saya nism'a* a really distant land

The second, *tani* 'really, such, very', qualifies an adjectival, locative, or quantity modifier, a nominal (as in (41)), or a pronominal. It usually follows the constituent so qualified.

- (47) *xub tani čakup* a really handsome man

- (48) *?u·wix?aya tani wa·sit* He found a whole bunch of frogs
/?u-a-wi(?) [L] / it-find.. many really frog

Tani also serves as the head in an elliptical NP, as in *ha tani*, 'the big/terrible/fine/famous one'. Like other modifiers, qualifiers can optionally take the NP-level inflectional affixes. For example, contrast example (41) with the following.

- (49) *?ini·ñkʷqs tani* my old (wonderful) dog
/?ini·ñ-uk-qa-s ... / dog-POSS-SUB-I

When a qualified modifier occurs following the NP head, the qualifier must also follow the head.

- (50) *?una·k' ?ini·ñ ?i·h tani* He has a really big dog
/?u-na·k' / it-having.. dog big really

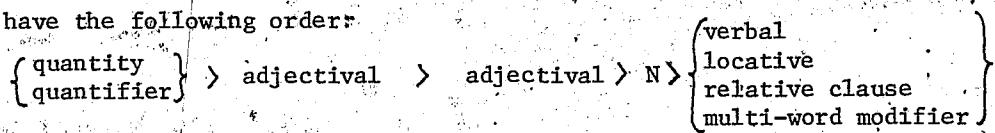
Because *tani* always follows the constituent it qualifies and yet can be affixed by the NP-level inflection, NP-level inflection cannot be assumed to obligatorily follow the first stem of the NP. There are occasionally phrases in which *?i·h* follows its qualified element, such as *čakup xub ?i·h* 'a really handsome man'.

In summary, within the nonpredicative NP, qualifiers occur with adjectival, quantity, or locative modifiers, or the nominal or pronominal

head itself? *?ih* precedes or occasionally follows the modifier it qualifies; *tani* follows the constituent (modifier or head) which it qualifies. There is qualification of neither quantifier nor verbal constituents, or of relative or referential clause predicates, within a NP.

3.1.2.5. Modifiers

NP modifiers are of the following semantic types: verbal, nominal, adjectival, locative, quantifier, and quantity. All one-word modifiers can either precede or follow the NP head, regardless of semantic class. If a NP contains two modifiers, they will generally have the following order:



In multiply-modified NP's, the inflection is found in either the left-most nondeictic word (as in (51) below) or the NP head.

- (51) *xa'u?* *x'ihimb* *c'apic* the other red canoe
/xa'u? *i-* *x'ihw-(q)imb* ... / other-DEF red-at bulky thing canoe

Quantity and quantifier modifiers can not coexist within one NP in surface structure. If both notions are to be expressed in a clause, one of the modifiers will be a topical predicate or part of one (cf. section 3.3.2.2). Quantity and quantifier modifiers precede other modifiers, as in (51) and (52).

- (52) *mu-niti n'ic?is* *c'itat* four little boards
/mu-nit-i- n'ic?-is ... / four-PAST-DEF little-DIM board

Even if a quantity modifier is a phrase composed of conjoined constituents (i.e. a number higher than ten but not simply a multiple of twenty) such as *hayu?uh?is suč'a* 'fifteen (ten and five)', it can precede the NP head and an adjectival modifier as well.

When a NP contains two adjectival modifiers, the head generally follows both unless one is phrasal. In that case, the phrasal one follows.

- (53) *x'ihimb* *c'apic* *kama* *x'a-q* a red canoe full of fat
/x'ihw-(q)imb / red-at bulky object canoe full fat

Occasionally, a pair of nonphrasal adjectival modifiers will flank a nominal, as in *c'a*xuk* *č'apic* *č'ihimt* 'a fast red canoe'. However, this construction is much rarer than the MOD MOD NOM construction. When two adjectival modifiers follow the nominal, a situation which can occur only when these are the sentence-final constituents, the latter adjectival is interpreted as an appositive clause by the native speaker.

Regardless of whether the modifiers precede or flank the nominal, the ordering of adjectival modifiers must conform to the following plan.

TABLE 5: ORDER OF ADJECTIVAL MODIFIERS

| Value | Size | Speed/Shape | Age/Colour |
|-------|--------|-------------|------------|
| odd | big | fast | old |
| nice | little | slow | new |
| bad | heavy | patched | red |
| | tall | fat | black |
| ... | ... | round | ... |

Examples of these orders are *čut* *?i·h* *č'ahaqs* 'nice big box', *?i·h* *c'a*xuk wi·na* 'big fast war-canoe', *?i·hp'it* *č'ac qu'as* 'big fat man'; *c'a*xuk mahak* *č'apic* 'fast old canoe', *kwishin* *č'ihimt* *t'asi* 'odd-shaped red door', and *c'a*xuk tupkak pinu'at* 'fast black family-canoe'.

The speed/shape and age/colour categories cannot be further subcategorized because no NP's have been attested in which speed and shape, or age and colour, modifiers cooccur. When English modifier sequences of these types are presented, the native speaker structures his Kyuquot version as a topicalized modifier plus a relative clause. For example, the English sentence 'I found an old red canoe' is translated as:

- (54) *mahakiš ya·qa·wmaqs* *č'ihimt* *č'apic*
/mah-ak-w-?i-s yaq-w-a-wi(x) [E]-na-qa-s... .../
 collapsed-DUR-IND which-find..-PAST-REL-I. red canoe

A more literal English version of (54) would be 'The red canoe which I found is old'. NP's including two adjectival modifiers are very rare in Kyuquot.

Locative modifiers can consist of a locative deictic, a clause with locative stem as predicate, or a referential or relative locative

clause. All but the deictics are usually affixed by one or more restrictive locative lexical suffixes. Locative stems include those given in Table 5, plus roots such as *saya-* 'far (from)' or *čawa-* 'close (to)' and stems whose rightmost suffix is a governing locative suffix. One-word locative modifiers can precede the NP head if there is no other non-deictic modifier.

- (55) *ha ha-yit qu?*as
/... *ha-t-*cit .../
that man over there (in the house)
the there-in'house adult
- (56) *hu?*a *saya ma?*as
/... ... *ma?*as/
that distant tribe
over there far dwell-outside

All locative modifiers, including deictic locatives, can follow the NP head.

- (57) *ma?*as *hu?*a
the band over there
- (58) *ču q?*i?aki ?uh ?ah?a
/... *q?*i?-ak-(y)i:/
I wonder what that is
well! what^{TEM-INDF} it there
- (59) *tu?ema hi's hitings*
/... *hit-*cis .../
a woman at the beach
woman there-at beach beach

Like locative modifiers, one-word verbal modifiers can precede or follow the NP head.

- (60) *ha citka?* č'a?ak
/... *citk-(y)a?-?i č'a-akw/* the flowing water
the flow-CONT-DEF water-DUR
- (61) ?ah *tu?ema qah?as*
/... ... *qah?-as/*
that woman dead (on the ground)
that woman dead-on ground
- (62) *pi?šuk?int k'ac'is*
/... *pi?šuk-int k'ac'-as/*
their barbecued fish (already eaten)
fish-POSS-PAST pinch-outside

Phrasal verbal modifiers, or one-word verbal modifiers occurring with some other modifier, follow the NP head.

- (63) *ha mixtuk?i tu?ema č'i?ta* the old woman digging clams
/... *mixt-uk?-i ... č'i?t-(y)a/* the old-DUR-DEF woman clamdig-CONT

Nominally-bound referential and relative clauses are either headless, as

in (64), or follow the head, as in (65).

- (64) *ha [ya[·]qhw[·]atnaq Bill] xuta[·]y]* the knife which Bill used
 /... yaq^w-hw[·]at [L]-na-q[·] xut-a[·]y/ the which-use..-PAST-REL knife-NOM

- (65) *ha xuta[·]y [ya[·]qhw[·]atnaq Bill]* the knife which Bill used

There are NP's composed of two nominals, where one appears to be a modifier of the other. There are, first of all, NP's without an internal possessive relation. In the majority of cases, the nominals are coreferential and one can be identified as the NP head. The other is termed an *epithetic nominal*. Like other one-word modifiers, one-word epithetic nominals can precede or follow the NP head. Epithetic nominals (underlined in the following examples) identify the NP head's geographical, ecological or societal (e.g. age, sex, species, etc.) niche.

Examples include *t'asi[·]s c'a[?]ak* 'the Tahsis river', *ha kum[?]i ki cuq^w-aqsp* 'the Kwakiutl princess', *Sahu-saqsp ha kwa[·]xi* 'the Ahousat girl', *n'i[·]ksuk ha sanis[?]i* 'Blue Heron, that crane', *na[·]ni tu[·]cma* 'a female grizzlybear', *m'a[?]ahsy[·]iqs Mary* '(her) sister Mary', and *Mary mixtuk[?]i ti[·]ca* 'Mary, the old teacher'.

There are other epithetic types as well. Some, such as *haw[?]it hasa[·]mc* 'king crab' and *kaka[·]n hu[·]qum* 'toy mask', appear to be loan translations because there are affixes to signal notions such as 'big' (-*q*)aq 'really (big)' and 'toy' (-*k*win [R]). Occasionally, a sentence with two adjacent nominals is appropriate for both the NP NP and the epithetic NP readings.

- (66) *°qahsa[·]p cakup muvič* A guy killed a deer/ He killed a buck
 /qah-sa[·]p/ die-MOMCAUS male deer

There are also NP's composed of two nominals where one nominal is not coreferential with the NP head. Usually, these nominals are in a possessive relation (cf. section 4.3.5), signalled by the suffix -uk POSS which is attached to the stem indicating the possessee.

- (67) *čim[?]itk^w t'an'a[·]s* a baby's bed (i.e. a crib)
 /čim[?]-it-uk t'an'a[·]?is/ comfortable-in house-POSS child-DIM

- (68) *ha ſini[·]ñ m'uč' ičp'at'k^w* the dog's clothes
 /... m'uč' ič-p'at' a-uk/ the dog dressed-NOM-POSS

There are also occasionally NP's composed of two nominals which are in neither a possessive nor an epithetic relation.

- (69) *t'ayu·simm·inh č'apic* canoe anchors
/t'a-yu-·sim-m'inh .../ sphere on line-·-ed-NOM-PL canoe

They may also be the result of borrowing from English.

3.1.2.6. Transitive NP's

As we have seen, a NP head can be modified by an embedded clause. The NP head can be subject, object, or agent oblique of such a clause. Normally, the NP head is intransitive itself; hence, no object of the NP head occurs in the NP. However, there are nominals which are transitive. For example, there are derivational affixes such as *-y'ikʷ* 'thing used for..', *-sa'ca* 'vessel for..', and *-mis* 'thing, business concerning..', which can be affixed to a transitive base, resulting in a nominal transitive stem. Consider the following:

- (70) **aphy'ik ma'ckʷin* a fly swatter
/aph-y'ikʷ ma'ckʷ-in/ slap-thing·used for.. fly-NOM
- (71) *?uč'ikinti· su'p hamu·t* a bone used for soup
/?uč'ik-int-i: .../ it-thing used for..-PAST-DEF soup bone

In (70), the NP head is **aphy'ik* 'slapping thing' and *ma'ckʷin* is its object; in (71), the NP head is *hamu·t* 'bone', which is modified by a referential nominal clause whose head is *?uč'ikinti* 'the thing it's used for' and whose object is *su'p*. It would appear that either the NP head can itself dominate a clause or the NP can be composed of two nominals in a compound relationship with one being related as object to the other. This latter analysis is adopted here because the structural possibilities of such object compounds are severely limited and because other compound NP structures exist in the language.

3.1.2.7. Coordinate NP's

This final section on NP structure describes nominal phrases in which two or more noncoreferential NP heads occur. The most common structure for two or more noncoreferential heads is one in which the coordinate NP's are listed sequentially without a conjunction.

- (72) *?ina'k ūfūfū mu'smus* They have chickens and cows
/?u-na'kʷ ... / it-having.. chicken cow

- (73) *k'ama ūam-i hupis'i y'a?is* It's full of horseclams, cockles,
/k'am-(y)a? ... hup-cis-i?i ... / and butterclams
 full-CONT horseclam round-at beach-DEF butterclam

Unmarked coordinate NP's are characterized by the membership of coordinate NP's in a clearly defined class such as animals, shellfish, berries, inhabitants of places, or landmarks (e.g. 'river, land, hill'). In a coordinate NP, modification of the first nominal can indicate modification of all the coordinate nominals, as in (74).

- (74) *tut c'a?ak tani nism'a* nice river and land
/... c'a-akʷ ... / nice flow-DUR really land

The most common marked structure found in coordinate NP's consists of NP's separated by the particle *?uh?is* 'and'.

- (75) *mih-ši q'is-a?k ?uh?is q'issa?ckʷ* She put away her tobacco and pipe
/mih-ši(y) q'is-(y)a? -?ak .. q'is-sa-ca-uk/
 put away-MOM smoke-CONT-POSS and smoke-..container-POSS

- (76) *c'ay'ix na-ni ?uh?is čims* A grizzly and a brown bear picked
 berries
 berry-pick grizzly and brown bear

Normally, coordinate NP's of three or more constituents are unmarked for coordination. Occasionally, *?uh?is* is present between either pair of a set of three constituents.

- (77) *y'a?is ?uh?is k'uč'im t'uc'up* butterclams, blue mussels, and sea
/... . . . k'uč-im t'uc-up/ urchins
 butterclam and mussel-NOM sea urchin-NOM

There is a second type of NP coordination. The particle *wa(y)* is inserted between constituents when only one of them is appropriate ('or') or where one is surprisingly associated with the other(s) ('even, 'and also'). The first meaning is illustrated by a sentence such as *c'ay'ix Mary way Linda* 'Either Mary or Linda picked berries'. The second meaning is illustrated by the following example.

- (78) *?u?ugosit x'a'q c'isqmis wa x'a'qmis*
/CV#?u-qs-^cit .. c'isq-mis .. x'a'q-mis/
 distrib-it-in vessel-in house fat meat-NOM and fat-NOM
 There was fat, meat, and even oil in containers in the house

Marked coordinate NP structures, and in fact coordinate NP's in general, are avoided (cf. section 3.5.3).

3.1.3. Qualifiers

We return now to the nature of the predicate. The predicate can be a phrase consisting of a predicative head plus a qualifier. All predicative qualifiers precede clausal adjuncts. Some precede the predicate, some follow; others occur in either position. Most can be affixed by clause-level inflectional suffixes. Qualifiers are underlined in the following examples.

- (79) *hawi?axi^c hi-kwət maht'i*
/hawi-'ax-(y)i:-č ... / The house is almost finished
 finish-TEM-INDF-INF almost house
- (80) *hi-kwət hitahti^c*
... hita-ht-(y)i:-č/ It almost separated into two parts
 almost there(MOM)-apart-INDF-INF
- (81) *čamahta?naħč hu-xʷs?at Bill*
/čaħa-hta-^cax-na-ha^c-č ... / Did Bill really rest?
 right-do to...-TEM-PAST-QUE-INF rest
- (82) *tuxsikis čamaht Bill*
/tux-si(ħ)-?iš ... / Bill really jumped
 jump-MOM-IND really Bill

Qualifiers are therefore distinct from both adjuncts and obliques and also from higher predicates. In contrast to qualifiers, higher predicates do not occur between the predicate and adjunct of the lower or subordinate clause.

Of stems serving as qualifier, some serve as predicates, adjuncts, and obliques in other contexts. Others serve in only some of these roles. The following table indicates predicative glosses of qualifiers, along with their distribution, meaning and structural behavior (INFL meaning 'bears clause-level inflectional affixes'). The semantic classes of predicates which a given qualifier can modify are abbreviated as V, N, A, Qr, Qy, L, and T (cf. p.x).

TABLE 6: QUALIFIERS

| Qualifier | Gloss | Precedes | Pred. | Follows | Predicates | Predicate | |
|-----------|----------------------|----------|-------|---------|------------|-----------------------|-------|
| | | +INFL | -INFL | +INFL | -INFL | Qualified | Gloss |
| tani | really such, very | + | | + | | VANLTQy | |
| ?i·h | really | + | | + | VALT | big | |
| ?inhi | only | + | | + | VALQy | but | |
| yu·qʷa | also | + | | + | VALNQy | also | |
| ?i·qhi | still | + | + | + | VANQyT | still | |
| ?a·ni | truly | + | | + | VAN | true | |
| čamaht | really | + | | + | VN. | well-made | |
| qʷa· | thus | | | + | VA | like that | |
| hi·kʷat | almost | + | | + | V | at edge of surface | |
| kaw·it | barely | | | + | V | just manage | |
| ta·kšik | please | | | + | V | beg | |
| ?u·pink | most | + | | | A | get to be first | |

As the chart shows, qualifiers tend to occur with verbal predicates. Examples of qualified verbs include (79) to (82) and (83) also.

- (83) *haʔukša?* *kuw·it* Mary Mary barely ate
/haʔuk-ši(?)-³at ... / eat(DUR)-MOM-TEM barely Mary

Qualifiers are also generally common for adjectival predicates.

- (84) *čimq̥ha³ t³atn'a³si* Are the kids happy like that?
/čim-³aq³-ha³-?a³t³ ... t³an'a³-t³is-?i
 comfortable-inside-QUE-PL thus child-PL-DIM-DEF

Predicates of other semantic classes are less commonly qualified. However, whereas nominals in adjuncts are qualified only by *tani*, nominals serving as predicates can be qualified by at least *tani*, *yu·qʷa*, *?a·ni*, *?i·qhi*, and *čamaht*.

- (85) *?a·nahč napni³t Bill* Is Bill truly a priest?
/?a·ni-ha³-č ... / truly-QUE-INF priest Bill

- (86) *?i·ghi xu·kʷa·na³s John* John is evidently still a doctor
/... xu·kʷa·na-a³s ... / still doctor-EVID John

Locative, quantity, and temporal predicates are qualified only by *tani*, *?i·h*, *?inhi*, *yu·qʷa*, or *?i·qhi*.

- (87) *?i·hakís* *saya* *Sini·xi* The dog is really far away
/?i·hʷ-ač-?i·š .. Sini-xi-i/ really-TEM-IND far dog-DEF
- (88) *qi·?ač* *tani* It really took a long time
/qi-?ač .. / long time-TEM really

There are no instances of qualified quantifiers nor are there any instances of doubly-qualified constituents.

3.1.4. NP Predicates

Predicates normally consist of one word (optionally associated with a qualifier). However, there are predicates consisting of a nominal plus modifiers. These are termed *NP predicates*. Consider the following sentences.

- (89) *Aut?i·š Bill* Bill is good
/Aut-?i·š .. / good-IND Bill
- (90) *Aut?i·š haw'it Bill* Bill is a good chief
/Aut-?i·š .. . / good-IND chief Bill

The second, example (90), asserts that 'Bill is a good chief', not that *(a) chief Bill is good'. It is assumed in such cases that the whole NP is predicative.

This, then, allows sentences such as (91) and (92) to consist of ambient phrasal predicates.

- (91) *?i·ha·ſš cims* There's a big bear!
/?i·hʷ-a·ſš .. / big-EVID brown-bear
- (92) *ňupa·ſš n'a·s* It's a hot day
/ňup-a·ſš .. / hot-EVID day

In addition to NP predicates with adjectival modifiers, there are NP predicates with other types of modifiers; namely, quantity or quantifier.

- (93) *?ayinh kʷis?ath* Were there many strangers?
/?aya-na-ha kʷis.-?ath/ many-PAST-QUE different-inhabitant..

- (94) *ka?u·ka ti·ča*
/ka?u·-ka · · / ~

There's another teacher
 other-again teacher

There are also NP predicates with elliptical nominal heads (as in (95)) and with coordinate nominals (as in (96)).

- (95) *?aya·?s kutm'inh*
/?aya-a·?s kut-m'inh/

There's many nice ones
 many-EVID nice-PL

- (96) *mamat'iš mapi's*
/CV#mat-?i·š map-i·s/

There are birds and bats
 distrib-fly-IND bat-NOM

However, NP phrasal predicates must consist of an adjectival modifier plus a nominal to be nonambient as in (97).

- (97) *?u·štiniš u·as*
/?u·š-tin-?i·š · · /

He's a smart man
 some-made of..-IND adult

Such a sentence has, of course, an ambient reading as well: 'There's a smart man!'.

Predicative NP's differ from other types in the following ways.

1. The word order appears to be fixed with respect to modifier and nominal as follows: deictic {^{Oy}_{Or}} A N. This order is retained even if the modifier is old information and the nominal is focused.

- (98) *?i·h?i·š iu·cma*
/?i:h-w-?i·š · · /

It's a big WOMAN (not a man)
 big-IND woman

2. Any clause-level inflection must attach to the first word of the NP predicate unless it affixes to a noninitial qualifier (e.g. *tani*) or a constituent following a noninflected qualifier (e.g. *?i·qhi*) instead.

3. The entity affixed by clause-level inflection cannot also be affixed by *-?i·* DEF. This parallels the general constraint against *-?i·* in the predicate. However, *-?i·* does attach to a nominal in a phrasal NP predicate where that nominal is not inflected for the clause-level morphemes.

- (99) *ka?u·ka čakupi*
/ka?u·-ka · čakup-?i·/

There's the other man!
 other-again male-DEF

This suggests that inflectional morphemes are attached to the NP predi-

cate at either the predicate level or at the NP level. If a NP predicate consists of only one word, it cannot be affixed by *-ʔi*.

One-word predicative NP's consist of a nominal or pronominal, and can be coreferential to first, second, or third person.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| (100) <i>hawit̪is Bill</i> <i>/haw'it̪-ʔi-s .../</i> | Bill is a chief chief-IND Bill |
| (101) <i>suw̪a*qk Rosy</i> <i>/suw̪a*q-k .../</i> | Are you Rosy? you(s)-II(QUB) Rosy |

3.1.5. Summary

This section has proposed that the Kyuquot clause is composed of predicate, adjuncts, and obliques. The predicate consists of either a single stem, a stem plus qualifier, or a NP. A predicate can be accompanied by adjuncts, which stand in subject or object relation to the predicate. Adjuncts sometimes precede the predicate, but normally follow the predicate and its qualifier and precede the obliques.

Adjuncts are typically NP's. NP's are constituents which consist of a nominal or a modifier of an elliptical nominal and may optionally include other modifiers such as an article, deictics, or embedded clauses. The constituent order within a nonpredicative NP is relatively fixed, whereas that within a predicative NP is absolutely fixed.

3.2. Obliques

3.2.1. Introduction

An *oblique* is a constituent which cannot precede the predicate with which it associates. Nor does it normally precede the adjuncts with which it associates. Obliques introduce a constituent (either NP or S) subordinate to and not coordinate with the matrix clause. Consider first obliques dominating NP. NP obliques can be in a variety of semantic case relations to the predicate: agent, patient, experiencer, recipient, benefactee, etc.

These semantic relations are defined here as follows. A *patient* undergoes a process, or is in a state, as in 'Bill fell' or 'Bill is old' or 'Bill is chief'. An *agent* performs an action and controls the occur-

rence of a process or state, as in 'Bill felled a tree' or 'Bill walked home'. An agent can also control an action and its participating agent, as in 'Bill made Harry walk home'. An *experiencer* experiences rather than controls a state or process (which can also involve a patient), as in 'Bill wants a drink'. A *recipient* comes into possession as the result of an agent's action, as in 'Mary gave it to Bill'. Finally, a *benefactee* is effected beneficially or adversely by a state, action, or process. An event or state can occur for, at the request or order of, in honour of, or to the detriment of a benefactee. Also, one participant in an event or state can be taking the place of a benefactee. For example, in 'Mary sang for Bill', the agent could be acting at the request of, in place of, or for the benefit of the benefactee.

Oblique agents occur in passive clauses, where the semantic benefactee, patient, or recipient is the grammatical subject and is coreferential to the pronominal suffix attached to the predicate or its qualifier. In such a clause, the semantic agent is oblique.

- (102) *qaḥsa-p'ak̚ t mawič Bill* The deer was killed by Bill
/qah-sa-p'-ak-ət ... / die-MOMCAUS-TEM-PASS deer Bill

- (103) *?uya-?tinti-s ?um?i* It was given to me by Mom
/?u-ayi-ət-int-(y)i:-s ... / it-give...-PASS-PAST-INDF-I mother

Oblique patients can occur where some nonpatient NP is treated as the grammatical object. There are a number of Kyuquot stems which are associated with a semantic patient and a semantic benefactee or recipient, such as *?uyi* 'give' and *ku-w'it* 'steal (from)'.

- (104) *?uyintiš Bill puk (?u-kw̚) nani* Bill gave a book to Granny
/?u-ayi-int-iš ... ?u-(c)it [L]... / it-give...-PAST-IND Bill book it-do to... grandmother

- (105) *ku-w'it Joe puk ?u-kw̚ ti-ča* Joe stole a book from the teacher
/... ... ?u-(c)it [L]... / steal Jóe book it-do to... teacher

In addition, there is a benefactive suffix, *-či-p'* for', which, if affixed to a verbal predicative base, allows the resulting stem to govern a semantic benefactive. If a verbal predicate is transitive,

-či·p allows the predicate to govern both patient and a benefactee.

- (106) č'ičirčp Joe pi·š ?u·kw̩t Mary Joe cut up the fish for Mary
 /č'i-či(x)-či·p / cut-MOM-for Joe fish for Mary

In such cases as (104) to (106), only one nominal can be grammatical object in the active sentence. The remaining semantic relation is grammatically an oblique. In the above sentences, it is the patient which is object and the nonpatient which is the oblique.

There are also sentences in which the patient follows a focused benefactee or recipient.

- (107) ?uyintiš Bill (?u·kw̩t) nani puk Bill gave a book to GRANNY

- (108) ku·w̩it Joe ?u·kw̩t ti·ča. puk Joe stole a book from the TEACHER

It is proposed that in such sentences, the patient is oblique and the focused participant (typically part of an ?u·kw̩t NP clause) is adjunct. An ?u·kw̩t NP clause also occurs as object adjunct in sentences with a contrastive patient, as in (109).

- (109) ku·w̩it Bill ?u·kw̩t puk Bill stole THAT book

(Focusing is discussed in section 3.5.2)

To sum up, ?u·kw̩t NP clauses can be either adjuncts as in (107) to (108) or obliques as in (104) to (106). The fact that the ?u·kw̩t NP clauses cannot precede the predicate (whereas some sentential NP's such as relative clauses can) suggests that contrastive ?u·kw̩t NP clauses are dominated by S whereas relative clauses are dominated by NP. It further suggests that only NP adjuncts can precede the predicate. As a result of the above analysis, a passive subject (whether patient, recipient, or benefactee) is always coreferential to an active (object) adjunct. For example, the following examples contain passive subjects which are coreferential to the patient and recipient adjuncts in sentences (104) and (107) respectively.

- (109) ?uya·?tintiš puk (?u·kw̩t) nani The book was given to Granny
 /?u-ayi-·at-int-?i·š / it-give..-PASS-PAST-IND book to

- (110) ?uya·?tintiš nani puk Granny was given the book

Further, one can then claim that the passive subject is coreferential to only one NP in a given clause, either the patient, benefactee, or recipient.

It has been posited that, when the semantic recipient or benefactee is the adjunct object, the semantic patient must be oblique. This seems to be verified because active sentences with focused nonpatient (i.e. benefactee or recipient) adjuncts cannot have their patients, even one-word patients, preceding the predicate. This is to be expected if such patients are grammatically oblique.

- (111) **puk ?uyintiš Bill ?u·kw̩t nani*

This analysis also offers a way to explain why a clause such as that in (112) has as its passive counterpart (113) but not (114).

- (112) *nišsa·p ?u·kw̩t čixčin ?u·kw̩t čučma* He made Chihchin visit Chuchma
/niš-sa·p :. / visit-MOMCAUS to
(113) *nišsa·p't čixčin ?u·kw̩t čučma* Chihchin was made to visit
Chuchma
(114) *nišsa·p't čučma ?u·kw̩t čixčin* *Chuchma was made to be visited
by Chihchin

Instead, (114) must mean 'Chuchma was made to visit Chihchin', which is clearly not a paraphrase of (112). Although both Chihchin and Chuchma are patients in (112), only Chihchin can be a passive subject in a paraphrase. This is explainable if, in (112), *?u·kw̩t čixčin* is an (object) adjunct, whereas *?u·kw̩t čučma* is an oblique. Then the passive paraphrase's subject will have to be coreferential to *?u·kw̩t čixčin* because it, and not *?u·kw̩t čučma*, is an adjunct.

Oblique patients also occur when the main predicate is composed of two (or possibly three) transitive morphemes or is a causativized transitive (cf. also section 4.7.1 and 4.7.2).

- (115) *hisim̩sap Mary ·kat?u ti·pini* Mary moved the cat around the
/his-mat-as.-·ap ti·pin-i·/ table
there-move about-on-CAUS Mary cat table-DEF

- (116) *casp'aq Bill fini·x ča·čisti* Bill chased the dog all over
/cas-p'aq ča-ačist-i·/ the island
chase-on top Bill dog flow-on sea-DEF

The oblique constituent (even if semantically patient) cannot precede the predicate. Sentences such as (115) and (116) are a result of elicitation. They seem to represent, however, a logical extension of the Kyuquot system of relating NP's to a predicate.

There are also oblique NP's which have a locative or temporal relation to the matrix predicate.

- (117) *ñ'a·ñasi t'asi*
/ñ'a-ñas-(y)i: .../

He was outside at the door
 outside-outside-INDE door

- (118) *?acsa?ñ'a ña?u·nti n'a·s*
/?ac-ši(ñ)-ñat ña?u-int-i.../

He went fishing the other day
 go out-MOM-TEM other-PAST-DEF day

Aside from the above types of NP obliques, most obliques are clausal. One of the common types is the adverbial. Typically, adverbial obliques have locative or temporal predicates and a deleted (absent) subject coreferential to the matrix subject. Locative predicates consists of deictic, referential, or nonreferential stems.

- (119) *qu?asnah hit*
/qu?as-na-ha.../

Were there people there?
 adult-PAST-QUE there

- (120) *nawa·ys ñ'a·ñas*
/nawa·s-ñis ñ'a-ñas/

He was lounging out at the beach
 lounge-at beach outside-outside

Locative predicates are typically transitive and can govern an object, even when the locative phrase is an oblique constituent.

- (121) *wa?ič hitas čim?iti*
... hit-as čim.-čit-.../

He slept on the bed
 sleep there-on right-in house-DEF

Temporal obliques are virtually always composed of a temporal predicate which can denote a time of day or year, e.g. *ku?at* 'morning' or *ñ'up'ič* 'summer', a time in reference to the speaker's or his discourse's present, e.g. *ča·ni* 'soon', *ña?u·kwz* 'the other day', or *k'isq'ič* 'last year', or a duration of time, e.g. *takšik* 'always' or *?i·qhi* 'still'. There are also a few temporal phrasal oblique constructions in which the predicate is the temporal referential *?uya* 'at that time' as in *?uya ?am'i* 'yesterday (at that time)' or in which the predicate is a quantity, e.g. either *qum'a* 'every, that many' as in *qum'a*

n'a:ssik 'every morning' or a numeral as in *c'awa:k*. *hup'at* 'for one month'.

Locative and temporal obliques can cooccur.

- (122) *wi-na?*q_k . *ca-ni* his He'll be invading HERE soon
*/wi-na?*a:q_k / invade-FUT soon here(contrastive)

Sentences with locative and temporal obliques have paraphrases in which the main predicate is the same as that of the oblique constituent in the above sentences. In fact, temporal (and manner adverbial) notions are usually expressed as matrix predicates rather than as obliques (cf. section 3.3.2.1).

3.2.2. NP-Relating Obliques

A second function of Kyuquot obliques is to introduce additional nominal constituents into the clause. While certain such oblique clauses resemble case-marked NP's, it appears that such obliques are in fact clauses and are part of a larger set of NP-relating clauses which cannot be identified simply as case-related NP's.

NP-relating clauses (NRC's) are signalled by the nominal referential root *?u-* 'it, he, she' which occurs initially in the predicate stem. The subject of the oblique predicate is normally coreferential to that of the matrix predicate, although no subject marking (by word or pronominal suffix) occurs in NRC's. Consider first the NP-relating clauses most parallel to case-marked NP's. The following sentences each contain an oblique NRC (underlined).

- (123) *?uyi-nti*'s *puk ?u-kw?* Mary I gave a book to Mary
/?u-ayi-int-(y)i:-s... ... / it-give.. -PAST-INDF-I

- (124) *c'ičik?*a:q_k *?u-kw?*at *xtutay* He'll cut it with a knife
/c'i-či(k)-a:q_k ?u-kw?at [L]... / cut-MOM-FUT it-use.. knife

- (125) *numu-kwinti*'s *?u-chin* Mary I sang for Mary
/CV#nu-akw-int-(y)i:-s ?u-chin [L]... /
 distrib-sing-DUR-PAST-INDF-I it-do for.. Mary

- (126) *?ukw'i-tnak* *?u?*atp Mary Did you make it (to be) for Mary?
/?u-(č)i-t-na-k ?u-a?atip ... / it-make.. -PAST-II(QUE) it-destine for..

- (127) *č'icikcpintin ?u'kʷt Mary* We cut it for Mary
/č'i-či(č)-či-p-int-in .../ cut-MOM-for-PAST-IP
- (128) *yacša?x ?u'kwink Mary* He went out-with Mary
/yac-či(č)-'atx ?u-(č)inkw[L].../ step-MOM-TEM it-with..
- (129) *qahsa·p·tint ?uh'at Mary* He was killed by Mary
/qah-sa·p-·at-int ?u-h-(q)h-·at .../
die-MOMCAUS-PASS-PAST it-ABS-SIM-PASS

The first evidence for a non-case analysis, i.e. is one in which the NP-relating words are identified as lower predicates, is that the NP-relating words behave like normal predicates. They serve as matrix predicates with clause-level inflection, including subject pronominal suffixes, and the full range of moods and modes.

- (130) *?u'hw'atnah* Did he use it?
/?u-hw'-at [L]-na-ha'/ it-use..-PAST-QUE
- (131) *?u'chinī* Do it for him!
/?u-chin [L]-'i:/ it-do for..-IMPV
- (132) *?u'kʷčimmatkint Bill* He must have referred to Bill
/?u-(č)it [L]-cim-matak-int .../ it-refer to..-MUST-POSB-PAST
- (133) *?uh'atinti·su* It was him (who) did it to you all
/?u-h-(q)h-·at-int-(y)i:-su:/ it-ABS-SIM-PASS-PAST-INDF-IIp

NP-relating suffixes can occur in predicates in association with two pronominal suffixes as in (134) and can occur with a root-sited pronominal object as in (135).

- (134) *?u'chin?atinti·s'at* I did it for them
/?u-chin [L]-'at-int-(y)i:-s-?a-t/ it-do for..-TEM-PAST-INDF-I-PL
- (135) *suta?atpmatk?a·q̥ki·s* Maybe I'll do it for you
/sut-a?atip-matak-?a:q̥k-(y)i:-s/ you-destine for..-POSB-FUT-INDF-I

NP-relating suffixes serving in matrix predicates can govern a range of possible adjuncts: subject (patient, agent, or benefactee) or object (patient or benefactee).

- (136) *?u'hw'atnah Bill xuta'y* Did Bill use a knife?
/?u-hw'-at [L]-na-ha' .../ it-use..-PAST-QUE Bill knife

- (137) ?u·?atip't It was done for Dad
 /?u-a?atip'-at/
 (138) ?u·kʷitatiñti's Roger I was referred to by Roger
 /?u-(č)it [L]-at-int-(y)i:-s.../ it-do to...-PASS-PAST-INDF-I

They can also be associated with contrastive adjuncts as in (139) or with obliques, including the adverbial and NP-relating types,

- (139) ?u·chin'ahint ?u·kʷt Bill He would have done it for BILL
 /?u-chin[L]-'ah-int ... / it-do for..-IRR-PAST
 (140) ?u·hw'ati ?u·chin ?um'i Use it for Mon!
 /?u-hw'at[L]-'i ·?u-chin[L].../ it-use..-IMPV it-do for.. mother
 (141) ?u·kʷinkqu's nah n'a·s'i If only I were with her today!
 /?u-(č)ink[L]-qu:-s ... n'a·s-?i/ it-with..-COND-I now day-DEF

NPR's occur as oblique predicates in sentences with topical agent predicates.

- (142) .?uhint čakupi ?u·chin Joe It was THAT man who did it to Joe
 /?u-h-int čakup-i?i ·?u-chin[L]/ it-ABS-PAST man-DEF it-do for..
 (143) siy'a·qinti's su·tip It was ME that did it to you
 /siy'a·q-int-(y)i:-s sut-(č)it[L]/ I-PAST-INDF-I you-do to..

Finally, NPR's can also occur within bases that are affixed by other noninflectional suffixes.

- (144) ?u·chin?apinti's I had her do it for him
 /?u-chin[L]-'ap-int-(y)i:-s/ it-do for..-CAUS-PAST-INDF-I

The second argument for a non-case analysis is that NP-relating constituents can be associated with neither semantic case nor surface case. One morpheme, -či·p, can associate with different semantic cases, i.e. recipient (123), benefactee (127), or patient (139), even in the same surface clause (as in (145)), or when preceded by the same lexical item used in different contexts (as in (146)).

- (145) qaci·p ?u·kʷt John ?u·kʷt Bill He made John give it to Bill
 /qaci-'ap / give-CAUS to John to Bill
 (146) .nub'i-s ?u·kʷt Bill {It} is good {for} Bill
 {He} to

Recall that the NP which is object of a NP-relating predicate can be subject of the passivized version of that predicate, as in (137) and (138), and that phrases composed of $?u \cdot k^w \cdot$ NP can be either object or oblique constituents. Hence, NPR's cannot be associated with a grammatical category such as oblique or adjunct or a surface case category such as object and, therefore, do not neatly identify either deep semantic or surface grammatical relations (cf. also section 3.5.2 for a discussion of other functions of $?u \cdot k^w \cdot$).

In addition, NP-relating predicates are not obligatory. Objects occur without $?u \cdot k^w \cdot$ as in (106) and oblique agents occur without $?u \cdot k^w \cdot$ as in (102) and (103). Nor must NP-relating predicates always occur in the company of a NP object. Consider the following.

- (147) $\check{c} \cdot i \check{c} i k i n t \ ?u \cdot k w \cdot a \check{t}$ He cut it with it.
 $/\check{c} \cdot i \cdot \check{s} i (\check{x}) \cdot i n t \ ?u \cdot k w \cdot a \check{t} [L]/$ cut-MOM-PAST it-use..

In discourse and unelicited material, associated nominals are typically introduced in coordinate or independent clauses, with only ten percent of all sentences using a NP-relating predicate. Of this ten percent, $?u \cdot k^w \cdot$ accounts for ninety percent (i.e. nine percent of all the sentences in the corpus), with the NP thus identified usually in a contrastive object patient relation.

NPR suffixes, then, are like other governing lexical suffixes. They are used to build bases to which other affixes can be added to derive new bases, as in (148) or (148) and (149) below.

- (148) $?u \cdot k^w i n k m a f q \check{x}$ He wants to be with him
 $/?u \cdot (\check{c}) i n k^w [L] \cdot m a f q \check{x}/$ it-with..-want to..
- (149) $?u \cdot k^w i \check{t} \check{x}$ He started to refer to it
 $/?u \cdot (\check{c}) i \check{t} [L] \cdot \check{s} i (\check{x})/$ it-do to..-MOM

Secondly, NPR's behave like governing suffixes in that, in relative clauses bound to their object, the relative root must be affixed by a governing morpheme of either NPR or non-NPR type (cf. section 4.7.1).

Thirdly, NPR's are used in referential predicates to associate a NP with the matrix predicate. This structure, illustrated above in (123) to (129), seems parallel to that found in sentences such as (150).

- (150) ?im̥-a-p. ?uksnařt ?ini-x
 /.. ?u-(c)snařt ../
 He played with the dog
 play it-handle.. dog

In such a sentence, the oblique is a clause whose subject is coreferential to the matrix predicate's subject. Such clauses are dependent on the matrix clause. Although the syntactic shape of such clausal obliques (including the NPR's obliques) is parallel to that of matrix clauses (except that subject is not marked in the former), it is problematic to treat them as matrix or coordinate sentences. The meaning of (150) is greater than the sum of the parts. That is, the meaning is somewhat idiosyncratic. In some respects, such sentences suggest that many oblique predicates play a role quite parallel to prepositions in English.

The situation in Kyuquot is complicated by the presence of a large number of lexical suffixes which can combine with referential or locative roots to produce an indeterminate number of preposition-like (and case-marking-like) words. Consider the following sentences.

- (151) matša-?x mamař histaqšx suč-isi ?uci-čx maht'i
 /mat-ši(x)-ak .. his-taq-ši(x) suč-is-i-?i-?u-c-.?i:-ši(x) .../
 fly-MOM-TEM bird there-go from..-MOM tree-DEF it-at-go to..-MOM
 The bird flew from the tree to the house
- (152) mamu-k ?u-taq tihat She worked on the mat
 /mamu-ak? ?u-taq [L].../ work-DUR it-work on.. mat

Such oblique clauses appear to have a causal or resultative relation to the higher predicate. Such a relation will be considered characteristic of unmarked complement obliques (cf. section 3.2.5.1). This, then, leaves NPR's of the narrow kind, the ones illustrated in sentences (123) to (129), as a set of noncomplement obliques. It is not clear whether these NPR's should be subsumed under adverbial obliques. Further research is needed to determine whether syntactic similarities or dissimilarities predominate.

It is certain, however, that no clear distinction can be drawn between some narrow set of NPR's and some broader set. Between the NPR suffixes illustrated in sentences (123) to (129), whose glosses seem very abstract and case-like, and one such as -(c)snařt 'handle..', which

seems quite predicative, there is a gradual transition of semantic range and grammatical function. Many other suffixes which could be attached to ?u- 'it' can serve as oblique predicates whose object could be assigned a case-type semantic relation with the matrix predicate. These will be pointed out below in the survey of semantic relations (section 3.2.3).

In summary, NPR predicates are composed of a nominal referential root and a subset of governing or lexical suffixes (i.e. the suffixes which can attach to their objects). Such NP-relating obliques and the NP obliques discussed earlier can cooccur within the same sentence. The ordering of these oblique constituents is governed in unmarked clauses by three principles. Syntactically, adjuncts precede obliques. Grammatically, subject precedes object. Semantically, the ordering of obliques appears to follow the following sequence:

agent > patient > recipient > benefactee > {location
time
instrument}

The last three are parenthesized as a set because location and time obliques cooccur in either sequence and because no instrumental oblique has been found to occur with a location or time oblique.

3.2.3. Surface Expression of Semantic Relations

This section summarizes how semantic relations between NP's and predicates are expressed in the Nootka sentence. The agent can be the simple subject of a transitive active predicate or can be an oblique, which in passives is either simple (non-clausal) or is identified by the oblique predicate ?u?st. Intransitive or transitive active predicates can also be associated with an oblique indirect agent.

- (153) qahšik ?u·ktaq Bill He died on account of Bill
 /qah-ši(?) ?u-(s)taq [L].../ die-MOM it-on account of..

Typically -(s)taq [L] is associated with intransitive predicates whereas -fast '(be) done by...' is associated with transitive predicates. However, -fast tends to occur within a matrix predicate. The agent it identifies is coreferential to the agent of a sentence nearby in discourse or presupposed although not uttered.

Instrumentals surface as the adjunct of the predicate 'use' which can serve as a matrix predicate as in (150), or as an oblique constituent of a transitive matrix predicate as in (124). If, however, the matrix predicate is intransitive, and optionally if the matrix is passive, the instrumental NP is object of the oblique predicate 'on account of'.

- (154) *k'iñšik ?u·ktaq ha·ma* It broke because of the hammer
/k'iñ-ši(ñ) ?u-(s)taq [L] ../ break-MOM it-on account of.. hammer

- (155) *k'iñsa·p't {?u·hw'at} ?u·ktaq ha·ma* It was broken by means of a hammer

Generally, instrumentals may not serve as active subjects or passive agent obliques. However, NP's denoting a moving entity, even if inanimate, can serve as instrumental agents, e.g. the wind or a moving boat (which crashed into a float, thereby destroying it).

- (156) *muš?itp yu?i* The wind closed it
/muš?-atu- ap yu-i/ close-down-CAUS blow-NOM

Recipients are normally surface objects of *?u·kw'* in an oblique clause or in an object adjunct clause. This latter structure is held to be a paraphrase of the passive version, wherein a recipient can be subject. Recipients can also be surface object of predicates other than *?u·kw'*, such as *?u·yi* 'give (to)', *?uwiqš* 'invite', and *?usah?i·p* 'give gifts to'.

Benefactees, those effected by an event but not patients nor necessarily recipients, can serve as the surface object of *?u·kw'* in an oblique or object adjunct clause when the matrix predicate is marked by *-či·p* 'for', as the subject of passive predicates marked by *-či·p*, and as surface objects of the predicates *?u·chin* 'do for, for the benefit of', *?u·?atp* 'destine (it) to be at, for' (used when the benefactee receives a concrete item), *?u·inmš* 'in place of', *?uc'im?ak* 'do in honour of', and *?u·ktaq* 'do on account of'. Such predicates can be matrix or oblique. If oblique, the benefactive relation can be embedded within a clause whose predicate either gives no signal of such a relation or indicates it by the *-či·p* affix as in (157).

- (157) *č'icik̚ep ?u·?atp Mary* He cut it up for Mary
/č'i-si(?)-či-p ?u-a?atip.../ cut-MOM-for it-destine for..

Patients are represented as transitive object adjuncts or as obliques. As obliques, they are either NP obliques, if a benefactee or recipient has the matrix sentence's object role, or sentential obliques, if the patient is object of an oblique predicate such as *?uhta* 'do to'. A patient can be subject of an intransitive or passive transitive predicate. Contrastive patients can be identified by framing the patient within a clause with *?u·kw̚t* 'do to, refer to' as predicate.

Note that aside from agents only NP's whose semantic roles can be framed within *?u·kw̚t* clauses serve as passive subjects: patient, recipient, and benefactee. Only *?u·kw̚t* clauses (or relative clauses) seem able to occur in the object position. However, this does not mean *?u·kw̚t* can be called an object marker.

Comitative NP's occur as objects of active predicates such as *?u·kʷink* 'do, be with' or of predicates affixed by *-u·[R]* 'do.. with others'.

3.2.4. Comparative Structures

Comparative structures are considered here because the 'standard' of comparison can be a NP within an oblique clause. Although comparative constructions are not syntactically distinctive in Kyuquot, they are included for purposes of typological comparison (cf. Lehmann 1980). Where two nominals are compared with respect to an adjectival, locative, or quantity, the nonstandard is subject and the standard is framed in an oblique clause with *?u·kw̚t* as the oblique predicate.

- (158) *kut'i·š John ?u·kw̚t Mary* John is nicer than Mary

- (159) *?ayi·pi·s ?u·kw̚t qʷi·y'ipi·s kwisq'i·čh*
/?aya-i:p-(y)i:-s .. qʷi-i·y'ip-(y)i:-s kwis.-q'i·čh/
 many-get..-INDEF-I .. which-get..-INDEF-I different-in..year
 I got a lot more than I got last year

There is no passivization of such sentences. Hence, the *?u·kw̚t* type object of comparison cannot serve in the subject role, although

?u·kw̩-marked benefactees and recipients can.

- (160) *ñut'atiš Mary ?uh'at John* Mary was (treated) nicely by John
 *Mary was who John was nicer than
/ñut'-at-?i·š / nice-PASS-IND Mary by John

There is no unique morphological mark for comparative or superlative. However, the predicate can be affixed by -t'i:na 'slightly' or -apa ([RL+L]) 'too, very' (cf. section 4.8.2) or can be qualified by ?i·h 'very, really' or ?u·pa 'too'.

Where two nominals are identified as equivalent with respect to something, the following structures occur. Quantity equivalents surface in referential or relative sequences such as that in (161).

- (161) *?unahp'it'ak ?unahp'itk'itq ?um'i* She's as tall as her mother is
/?una-h-p'it'-ak ?una-h-p'it-uk-?i·tq ... /
 as much--quantity-at edge-TEM as much--quantity-at edge-POSS-REL

Adjectival, nominal, or verbal equivalents can surface with *mithi* 'same' as predicate, the nonstandard nominal as subject and the standard as a constituent within an oblique introduced by *qʷa* 'as, whether, thus, like', ?u·kw̩, or ?u·kw̩ *qʷa*.

- (162) *mithi ?u·kw̩ (qʷa·?i·tq) plane* It's the same as a plane is
/mit-hi· ... qʷa·-?i·tq ... / same-DUR .. as-REL

- (163) *mithi qʷa·?i·tq pie ?u·kw̩i·t̩anqu*
/mit-hi· qʷa·-?i·tq ... ?u-(č)i·t̩-ak-qu:/
 same-DUR as-REL .. it-make..-TEM-COND

It's the same (way of doing) as for making a pie

Similarity is also asserted by framing the standard within an independent *qʷa* clause.

- (164) *ñut'i·š ha·kw̩a;ni* The girl is pretty
qʷa· hupat̩qu
... hup-pat̩-qu:/ She is like the sun can be
 as round-on flat surface-COND

3.2.5. Complement Obliques

Constituents identified as complements are syntactically similar to comparative obliques (but unlike adverbial or NP-relating ones), in that they cannot also serve as topical matrix predicates. Complement obliques cannot be adjuncts because the constructions in which they occur, such as (165), have no passive paraphrase in which the complement is subject and no cleft version in which the matrix predicate is preceded by the complement. Cleft and passive variants of constructions in which a matrix predicate governs an object (adjunct), such as (166), do exist.

- (165) *ka·pap nunu·k* He likes to sing

- (166) *ka·pap Bill* He likes Bill

The first type of complement to be considered is one whose subject is obligatorily coreferential to the matrix clause subject and whose predicate is not marked by mood or particle. This is the coreferential unmarked complement construction. It is associated with sentential modifiers, focus predicates, or simple matrix predicates.

Sentential modifiers can be locative, temporal, or verbal matrix predicates.

- (167) *takšiki·s č'iya pi·s* I always cut up the fish
/tak-ši(ə)-y-i:-s č'i-(y)a .../ each-MOM-INDF-I cut-CONT fish

- (168) *?akp'itiš John watšik* John went home twice
/?ak-p'-it-?i·s ... wat-ši(ə)/ two-.times-IND .. go home-MOM

Locative predicates include all the predicates occurring as locative oblique predicates. Temporal predicates include, in addition to the oblique temporals such as *?i·qhe* 'still', *čah* 'now', and *?uya* 'at that time', other temporals such as *?umac'q* 'every now and then' and *?u·ši* 'sometimes'. Derived predicates which are not temporal in terms of semantic class but contribute a temporal notion to a sentence include *?u·č?u·ši* 'sometimes' and *či·čik* 'take, do for a long time'. Sentential modifiers (SM) serve as predicates in clauses having a paraphrase in which the modifier predicate is an oblique of a matrix clause, i.e.

$$[\text{SM} \quad \text{Su} \quad \text{Obl} \quad [\text{Pred}_2 \quad \text{Obj} \ldots]] = [\text{Pred}_2 \quad \text{Su} \quad \text{Obj} \quad \text{Obl} \quad [\text{SM}]]. \quad \text{The coreferential}$$

subject, if a pronominal suffix, is associated obligatorily with the matrix predicate; however, adjunct subjects occur in either the matrix or the complement clause.

Focus predicates include elements such as quantifiers (including negative elements), topical NP's, and question and relative predicates. Clauses consisting of focus predicates and complement oblique 'lower clauses' do not have a paraphrase in which the topical element is an oblique sited within a matrix clause. Focus predicates are discussed further in the section on marked sentences (3.3.2 and 3.3.3).

Simple matrix predicates are unlike sentential modifiers in that there is no oblique paraphrase and unlike focus predicates in that the simple matrix predicate cannot be more closely associated semantically with some constituent inside its oblique sister (and hence, in some analyses, raised out of the ultimately lower clause).

3.2.5.1. Unmarked Complements

Simple matrix predicates associated with coreferential upmarked complements can be adjectival or verbal, intransitive or transitive. The sets of predicates of these types are given below.

1. Intransitive verbal: *?ana-sit* 'have nothing to do but', *?ayaq-šk* 'exert all energy to, have difficulty in', *?uq̚tip* 'think of', *cimčik* 'do with pleasure', *haw̚k* 'finish', *hiyux-šk* 'do accidentally', *kaw̚it* 'manage', *ku-č-* 'do slowly', *nasik* 'try but fail to', *n'amat-šk* 'try', *mu-šhmu-šk* 'do carelessly', *paks-šik* 'do suddenly', *yu-kyu-ši* 'hurry to!', *yusuk-č* 'hurry to', *fac* 'is', 'persist in'.

- (169) *nasikints* [?acšik] I tried to go out (to sea)
/nas-i-n-int-s ?ac-ši(x)/ try-MOM-PAST-I go out-MOM

Intransitive verbal predicates also include the passive version of causativized states, e.g. *?apa-k'ap't* 'allowed to', *wiwig'k'ap't* 'not allowed to', 'supposed to'.

2. Intransitive adjectival: *?u?umk* 'can, able to', *?umañqk* 'want to', *cimqk* 'happy to', *čut* 'good (of one) to', *čapuk* 'agree to', *hi-k'qč* 'almost', *pusak* 'tired of', *ta-qak* 'willing to', *wic'ik* 'not know how to', *wimañqk* 'not want to', *wiwig'k* 'not want to', *fac'ik* 'expert at',

and *Sapa^k* 'willing to'.

- (170) *wimaqdin* [hupa[?]t]
/wi-maqd-in hupi[?]at/

We don't want to be helped
not-want to..-Ip help-PASS

3. Transitive verbal: ?u[?]taq 'work on, at', ?uya[?]inh 'put off', hissi^{*}k 'finish', huhtik 'know (how to)', ka[?]pap 'like to', taci[?]k 'let go, stop, give up', wikanck 'forget to'.

- (171) *huhtikk* [?uk[?]i[?]t tihat]
/huhtik-k ?u-(c)i[?]t .. /

Do you know how to make mats?
know how-II(QUE) it-make.. mat

4. Transitive adjectival: *tuhuk-k* 'afraid to'.

Finally, there are several structurally-transitive nominal predicates which when affixed by the possessive -uk govern a coreferential unmarked complement: k[?]a[?]simsk^w 'easy to', hix^watmisk^w 'hard to', wi[?]qmisk^w 'impossible to', ?u[?]qmisk^w 'interesting to'. The subject is the one (the semantic experiencer) who finds the event easy, difficult, etc.

- (172) *k[?]a[?]simisk^w.Bill* [?u[?]Kink] It's easy for Bill to meet her.
/k[?]a[?]si-mis-uk .. ?u-(c)ink^w [L]/ easy-NOM-POSS.. it-with..

In addition to the above types of predicates associated with coreferential unmarked complements, there is a more generalized type of predicate. Namely, any verbal predicate involving a movement or other event other than the subject (agent) has some control can be associated with a complement which identifies the purpose or result of the event expressed in the matrix predicate.

- (173) *c[?]aci[?]h* [?un'a[?]h pi[?]s]
/c[?]aci[?]h(n) ?u-n'a[?]h ... /

He speared for fish

spear-MOM it-seek.. fish

There are also matrix predicates with unmarked complements whose subjects are not necessarily coreferential. These are subcategorized as follows (with 'matrix' abbreviated as Mx and 'complement' as Co):

1. matrix object equals complement subject (MxPa=CoSu): ?uc[?]inh 'ask X to', ?uksa[?]p 'coax X to', c[?]dc[?]ixs 'persuade X to', na[?]a[?] 'hear X ..-ing', and n[?]aci[?]ck 'see X ..-ing';

2. coreferential or non-coreferential ($MxPa=CoSu$ if subjects not coreferential); *pusa^k* 'tired of (X) ...ing', *wa[.]* 'say, tell X to';
 3. coreferential or non-coreferential ($MxPa\neq CoSu$): *?u^c t̄im'aqst* 'be responsible that X', *?uqhtip* 'think of, think X (is..)'. When $MxPa\neq CoSu$, the complement subject is present in the complement and there is no coreferential matrix NP.

(174) *?uqhtipat* [hinin'a:qñha Bill] They think Bill will come again
/?uqhtip-?a:t hin-in-a:qñ-na ... think-PL there(MOM)-come-FUT-again

3.2.5.2. Marked Complements

Many complements are marked. One type is marked by having as predicate *q^wa[.]* in the sense of 'whether'. Following matrix predicates *?a^at^u* 'ask, wonder', *hayim^h* 'don't know', *t^at^ap^dit* 'think about', negative forms such as *wiktⁱm hasi^st* 'never hear', *wik huhtik* 'don't know', and question predicates such as *huhtik-h* 'does he know?', *?u's-ma^p-h* 'does he notice?', the complement is headed by the predicate *q^wa[.]* and inflected in the indefinite relative mood and affixed by the pronominal morpheme appropriate for the complement subject. The complement subject (other than third person) must be indicated by affix in this case. It is assumed here that *q^wa[.]* itself governs an oblique sentential complement.

(175) *huhtikk* [*q^wa[.]yi n^odoi^č si^čit*] Do you know whether he saw me?
/huhtik-k q^wa[.]-(yli: n^oac^či^či(n) si-(č)it [l]/
 know-LI(QUE) whether-INDEE see-INC I-do-to..

Some complements begin with the inflecting particle *?in*. Matrix predicates associated with *?in*-marked complements include the following:

1. coreferential Subjects ($MxSu=CoSu$): *?inha^k* 'but, nevertheless', *?unu^k* 'because', *hawi^č* 'finish', *kuaⁱt^h* 'might as well', *sa^cis* 'persist';
2. noncoreferential subjects:
 - a. ambient matrix predicate: *c^čishi* 'bad', *c^čiha-* 'strange', *hi* 'good', *hi^cin-* 'too bad';
 - b. $MxPa=CoSu$: *?uwa^s* 'invite X to', *k^čita^h* 'criticize X for';

c. MxPa \neq CoSu: $n'aci\cdot ck$ 'see', $?u?i\cdot ck$ 'hear';

3. coreferential or noncoreferential subjects (MxPa=CoSu if subjects not coreferential): $?i\cdot qhuk$ 'tell (someone)', $?u\cdot ?atp$, 'do in order to', $?uqhtip$ 'think', $?u\cdot \check{si}\cdot$ 'sometimes', $?uwa \sim wa\cdot$ 'say', \check{cimqk} 'happy', $hayimh$ 'not know', $huhlik$ 'know', $him\cdot \check{cik}$ 'show someone that', $k'usu\cdot qk$ 'fear', $k''aqmih$ 'resent', $mick'a\cdot -$ 'surprised', $na?a\cdot -$ 'hear', $pih\cdot \check{sik}$ 'figure out', $tuhuk$ 'fear', $wik?at$ 'not notice', and $\check{a}\cdot q\cdot a\cdot q$ 'scream'.

(176) $k'usu\cdot qkintin$ [?ink $n'amak? a\cdot qk$ su \cdot]

/k'usu\cdot qk-int-in $?in-k$ $n'amak\cdot \check{si}(x)-?a\cdot qk$.../
fear-PAST-IP that-II try-MOM-FUT hold

We were afraid that you would try to hold it

(177) $wa\cdot ?aknah$ [?in napni $\cdot t$] Did he say he was a priest?

/wa\cdot -'ak-na-ha\cdot ... / say-TEM-PAST-QUE that priest

Two moods may mark an oblique complement. The less common is the subordinate mood $-qa\cdot$ which is associated with certain clauses which are irrealis in some way. Either the clausal content of the complement is counterfactual at the time of utterance, as in $?uqhtip$ 'thought that... (but was mistaken)', or is unknown or unexpected (by the speaker) at the time of utterance, as in $mick'a\cdot$ 'surprised that... (but it was a fact)', or $hayimh$ 'didn't know that... (but do now)', or is not necessarily under the control of the associated subject, as in $\check{sapa}\cdot k$ 'agreed to...' (when the complement predicate is passive).

(178) $?uqhtip$ su $\cdot ha\cdot q$ He thought it was a salmon

/.. su $\cdot ha\cdot -qa\cdot$ / think spring salmon-DUB

(179) $\check{sapa}\cdot k$ t'an'a $\cdot si$ hat'i $\cdot sap\cdot tq$ The child agreed to be washed

/.. t'an'a-?i \cdot -?i \cdot hat'i $\cdot s\cdot ap\cdot -at-q\cdot a\cdot$ /

agree child-DIM-DEF bathe-CAUS-PASS-SUB

The more common mood used to signal complements is $-qu\cdot$ 'when, if, would' (COND). In general, it occurs when the complement is in some sense irrealis. There are some matrix predicates which obligatorily associate with a $-qu\cdot$ -marked complement:

1. ambient matrix predicate: $?u\cdot ssith$ 'dangerous';

2. MxSu=CoSu: $?a?amac$ 'can't decide whether to';

3. MxPa=CoSu: *?u?inh* 'wait for X to', *?umahs* 'wish X would', *habi* 'invite X to', *nawah* 'wait for X to', *taqik* 'believe X did..', *sitak* 'disbelieve X did..';
4. MxSu or MxO=CoSa: *wiwiksim* 'don't want (X) to'.

(180) *habi·nah sutib ?acšidqu·k* Did he invite you to go fishing?

/habi·b-na-ha· sut-(č)ib [L] ?ac-ši(x)-qu:-k/
invite-PAST-QUE. you-do to... go out-MOM-COND-II

However, there are a number of predicates which may take unmarked or *?in*-marked realis complements but -*qu*:-marked irrealis ones. An irrealis event is one without factuality; it may be possible or impossible, due to negation, request, command, or emotional response present in the matrix clause. Matrix predicates associated with -*qu*:-marked irrealis complements include: *?u·?atp* 'destine to be for someone that', *?a?a·tu* 'ask X to', *?uc^činh* 'order X to', *?uksa·p* 'coax X to', *?uk^čup* 'want', *t'aqa·k* 'agreed', *wa·* 'tell X to', *wikt^čim* 'never', *wima^čqx* 'not want', *wiwi^čk^čp* 'not want'.

(181) *?wipik^čp Ben napni·tqu Bill* Ben didn't want Bill to be a priest
/?wipik^č-ap .. napni^čt-qu: .../ not want-CAUS-Ben priest-COND Bill

In such predicates, the -*qu*:- is optional if associated with a nonpast matrix predicate.

In addition, predicates normally associated with a nonirrealis complement may require a -*qu*:-marked complement when the matrix predicate is inflected for future, as in *hašička·qx* 'will find out (if)', or irrealis, as in *wik^čahint* 'would not have', or if the predicate dominating the complement is itself dominated by a negative predicate, as in *wikt^čim habi·t* 'never invited X to', *wikt^čim·n'aca* 'not see X ..ing', or *wik.huhtik* 'not know (if)'. One exception is *wik hupi* 'not help X to', where the following complement is not -*qu*:-marked (unless *wik* is inflected for irrealis). This is probably because the event expressed in the complement, being performed by X, would still be realis.

Finally, there is a set of predicates which, if not inflected for possession, must govern a passive complement: *hix^čatnis* 'hard to', *kwa·sims* 'easy to', *?u·špičv* 'interesting to', *wiknis* 'impossible to',

hayu·t 'confusing to', *?u?umhək* '(adjective) enough to'. Subjects are obligatorily coreferential.

- (182) *hayu·tis t'asi hisi·k't* "This trail is difficult to follow.
/hayu·t-i·s .. his-i·k'-at/ confusing-IND trail there-go along..-
 PASS

3.2.5.3. Conclusion

The phenomenon of subject-raising is here understood in a nonprocess manner. Where a matrix predicate is transitive and no other object occurs, the subject of the complement may occur as the matrix object. This is possibly due to analogy. Firstly, there are predicates with either an object adjunct or a complement, where the object in the first type and the complement in the second type can be identical, as in *know Bill_i* and *know [come Bill_i]*. The adjunct predicate cleft construction (cf. section 3.3.4), in which a predicate can be preceded by either its subject or object, makes possible the following paraphrase of the above complement: *know [Bill_i come]*. Secondly, there are predicates whose matrix object is obligatorily coreferential to a deleted (absent) complement subject, as in *coax Bill_i [come_i]*. Given that case relations are typically not signalled in Kyuquot, the *know [Bill_i come]* type could have been reinterpreted as the *coax* type, resulting in *know Bill_i [come_i]*. Such a structure yields a system in which matrix transitive predicates more regularly govern a surface object.

Generally, where MxSu=CoSu and a subject NP is present, it is found in the matrix clause. In some sentences with a coreferential subject which is multi-word (i.e. 'heavy'), the subject adjunct appears in the complement (i.e. sentence-finally).

- (183) *hit'anat' ma?as t'atn'a's ?uhis ?um?i·qs*
/hit-an-a-t- as t'an-a-t-is .. ?um?i-?i·qsa
 there-TEM-PL dwell-outside child-PL-DIM and mother-..kin
 There dwell the kids and (their) mother.

It must be emphasized that all complement clauses are structurally independent clauses. The absence of pronominal affixes (due to coreference to either matrix subject or object) in complements is equally permissible in independent clauses whose subject is coreferential to that of

a previous independent matrix clause. The subordinate and conditional moods occur in matrix clauses as well. Complements are often identified by native speakers as independent sentences, although granted a discourse-subordinate status (cf. section 3.5.4).

3.3. Marked sentences

Before discussing other complex sentences, such as ones containing relative clauses, it is useful to describe certain marked clausal types found in both simple and complex sentences. The marked sentence types considered here include passive, topical, interrogative, negative, and cleft constructions.

3.3.1. Passive

The typical clause with transitive predicate, Pred-Su_i (Su_i) / (O_j), where the subject is agent and the object is patient, benefactee, or recipient (Pa, Be, or Rec), has a passive paraphrase in which the subject is Pa, Be, or Rec and the semantic agent serves as an oblique NP: Pred-at-Su_j (Su_j) $\text{obl} [(?uh?at) (Obl Ag_i)]$:. The passive's function is to focus on and render as subject a non-agentive participant in a clause containing two or more NP participants. Examples are given below.

- (184) *qḁsa·p Bill mawic* Bill killed a deer
/qah-sa·p die-MOMCAUS Bill deer
- (185) *qḁsa·p' t mawic (?uh?at) Bill* The deer was killed by Bill
/qah-sa·p'-at .. ?u-h-(q)h-?at . die-MOMCAUS-PASS deer it-ABS-SIM-PASS
- (186) *hapt-a·nt Bill su·tit* Bill hid on you
/hapt-(y)a·-int .. sut-(c)it[L]/ hide-CONT-PAST .. you-do to..
- (187) *hapt-a·?tinti·k Bill* You were hid on/from by Bill
/hapt-(y)a·-at-int-(y)i:-k .. / hide-CONT-PASS-PAST-INDE-II

In clauses with both a Pa and either a Rec or Be, either of the non-agent participants can be passive subject.

- (188) *?uyint Bill pi·š ?u·kʷz Linda* Bill gave the fish to Linda
/?u-ayi-int / it-give..-PAST fish to Linda

(189) ?uya·?tint pi·š ?u·kʷt Linda The fish was given to Linda

(190) ?uya·?tint Linda pi·š Linda was given the fish

Certain clauses may associate with a benefactee marked as object of a subordinate ?u·kʷt 'predicate'. These clauses have head predicates such as ?u·a·p 'buy (for)', ku·w·it 'steal (from)', or a predicate marked by -či·p 'for', as in č'ičiňep 'cut for'. When the predicate is not affixed by -či·p, either the patient or the benefactee can be the passive subject.

(191) ?u·a·p·ačatnaqu ?a·pins si·čit Apples were bought for me
 /?u·a·p·ačat-na-qu: .. si-(č)it [L]/
 it-buy-TEM-PASS-PAST-COND apple I-do to..

(192). ?u·a·p·ačatnaqu's ?a·pins I used to get apples bought for me
 When the predicate is affixed by -či·p, the benefactee is generally the passive subject.

(193) č'ičiňep?a·qk·ti·s Linda It's for me Linda will cut it up
 /č'i-či(n)-či·p-?a·qk·-at-(y)i:-s ../
 cut-MOM-for-FUT-PASS-INDF-I Linda

The expression of the passive oblique agent is in one of three ways:

1. in a sentential oblique as in (185), with ?uh·at as predicate, an oblique agent, a subject coreferential to the higher predicate's subject;
2. an unmarked NP oblique as in (193), if the NP has a nominal head (particularly a proper nominal) or a head of the shape adjectival-?i·; or
3. an agentive NP predicate (if quantity, pronominal, or quantifier) affixed by -(q)h·-at, as in (194) below:

(194) casša·?tm·inh k·uk·uh·is ?u·šh·at The hairseals were chased by someone
 /cas-si(n)-at-m·inh .. ?u·šh-(q)h·-at/ someone
 chase-MOM-PASS-PL hairseal some-SIM-PASS

In the above sentence, the quantifier ?u·š- 'some' could be replaced by a quantity, as in suč·aqh·at 'by five', or a pronominal, as in siy·a·qh·at 'by me'.

The word ?uh·at is posited to have two underlying ?'s. First, there are sentences such as (195) in which the two phonemes are separated

by a morpheme.

- (195) ?uhc'a·khtint John It seemed to be done to John by him
 /?u-h-c'a-k-(q)h-at-int ./ it-ABS-seem to...-SIM-PASS-PAST

Secondly, if only the -(q)h morpheme, and not the absolute -h, occurred after ?u-, one would expect *-?uh?at. But if only the absolute -h, and not the -(q)h, were present, then ?uh?at would be distinguished from vowel-final oblique agents whose stem is a quantifier, quantity, or pronominal which does include a -(q)h morpheme. The presence of -(q)h in all passive oblique agent stems is preserved by assuming that -(q)h attaches to ?uh 'it, he, she'. Considering that -(q)h attaches to first and second person pronominal bases, that ?uh functions as a kind of third person pronominal in Kyuquot, and that the fusion of identical adjacent fricatives is general in Kyuquot, this analysis seems convincing.

3.3.1.1. Lexicalist Source of the Passive

The passive in Kyuquot is posited to be base-generated. First, passive clauses do not always have active paraphrases. In (196) below, m'iñyu:- 'rained on' is an intransitive stem. It can be used as an adjectival with common concrete nominals, as in 'the rained-on shirt'. It cannot, however, serve as a transitive active predicate with the patient as object.

- (196) m'iñyu·?atint Bill Bill got rained on
 /m'iñ-yu-·'at-int ./ rain---ed-PASS-PAST

- (197) *m'iñyu·nt Bill

The meteorological ambient roots, as a class, may well exhibit this type of structure.

There is also a set of predicates with passive Rec on a subjects which have no active paraphrase. Consider the following.

- (198) q'wa·?ati·k tim'aqst mamu·kqu·k How would it suit you to work?
 /q'wa-·'at-(y)i:-k .. mamu-uk-qu:-k/
 how-PASS-INDF-II willpower work-DUR-COND-II

- (199) c'išhi·qh'ati·s x'i·x'u I dislike to give parties
 /c'iš-hi-·(q)h-·at-(y)i:-s ./ bad-DUR-SIM-PASS-INDF-I potlatch

- (200) *?uqmish?atinti's puk* The book pleased me

/?u-qmis-(q)h-at-int-(y)i:-s .. / good-NOM-SIM-PASS-PAST-INDF-I

It is not clear why -(q)h should be attached to the above stative predicates. They might be interpreted as NP obliques with Rec. subjects; paraphrasing (200), for example, as 'I'm the one to whom the book is a pleasing thing'. The underlined NP (and ones like it, such as 'bad' or 'boring!') would then be transitive predicates in Kyuquot. Whether or not this is feasible, non-passive paraphrases of (198) to (200) are ungrammatical.

- (201) **?uqmisi(h) si-čit*

/?u-q-mis-(q)h si-(č)it [L] / good-NOM-SIM I-do to..

They contrast with a sentence like (202) which does have an active paraphrase, namely sentence (202a).

- (202) *?uit?atinti's Bill*

/?uit'-at-int-(y)i:-s .. / good-PASS-PAST-INDF-I

- (202a) *?uitint Bill si-čit*

Bill was good to me

The second reason for assuming a base-generated passive is that there are active transitive clauses with no passive counterpart. Recall that clauses including an object of comparison (identified as a sentential oblique) of the shape *?u*kw̚t NP* have no passive paraphrase, whereas clauses with a Rec, Be, or Pa constituent of the shape *?u*kw̚t NP do* have a passive paraphrase.

Third, there are agent obliques in clauses with nonpassive predicates. Oblique agent-clausal obliques occur within intransitive non-passive clauses.

- (203) *qaħšik manč ?uh?at Bill* The deer died on account of Bill

/qaħ-šik / die-MOM deer by Bill

There is no way (203) can be derived from an active sentence by a passivization rule. It is already active and bears no -'at morpheme in the predicate. Recalling that *?uh?at* can serve as a matrix predicate, as in (195), it is assumed that one type of oblique complement (with coreferential subject) which associates with intransitive predicates is a passive

oblique agent predicate (associated itself with an oblique agent NP). This complement is associated with intransitive predicates only if the Pa, Be, or Rec subject can be the object of a causativized variant of the predicate. For example, *qaħsik* 'die' has a patient subject equivalent to the patient object of *qaħsa·p* 'kill' and can be associated with an oblique agent complement. As bases including causative affixes are also unique lexical entries, this subject/object patient equivalence can be expressed only through semantic interpretation of the surface structure, even if one attempted to express other subject/object patient relations by a syntactic rule deriving passive clauses from their active paraphrases.

Agent obliques also occur as matrix NP predicates with patient subjects as in (204) or as topical NP predicates associated with a sentential oblique complement which can be passive as in (205) or active as in (206) or (207).

- (204) *k'uk' ulw' isħ?at* It was done to him by the hairseal
/k'uk' ulw' is-(q)h- at/ hairseal-SIM-PASS

- (205) *k'uk' ulw' isħ?atint qahsa·p't* It was by a hairseal that he was killed
/k'uk' ulw' is-(q)h- at-int qah-sa·p- at/ hairseal-SIM-PASS-PAST die-MOMCAUS-PASS

- (206) *k'uk' ulw' isħ?atint qahsa·p ?u·kwt John*
 It was by a hairseal that John was killed

- (207) *siy'a·qħ?atint ?uksa·p ċap·asp* I coaxed her to set the table
/siy'a·q-(q)h- at-int ... / I-SIM-PASS-PAST coax set table

Such sentences as (206) and (207) are not deriveable from an active paraphrase because the part which would be the matrix predicate in a movement analysis (the above complement) is already active. The complement in these sentences appears to act like a sentential constituent whose voice is not an obligatory function of either a higher predicate or of the grammatical role (subject or oblique) assigned to the associated agent. Topical NP agent (oblique) predicates appear to govern either an active complement ($MxOb1A=CoSu$, $MxSu=CoO$) or a passive complement

(MxOb1A=CoOb1A, MxSu=CoSu).

The fourth reason for assuming that the passive is base-generated is that there are $?u \cdot k^w t$ NP constituents serving as patients to passive predicates. Consider (208) below.

(208) qahsa·p'tint $?u \cdot k^w t$ mawič THAT deer got killed

Such structures occur only for third person (i.e. unmarked) pronominal subjects. So far, the subject has been defined as a constituent coreferential to the pronominal affix found in the predicate associated with that subject. While it is true that *mawič* in (208) is coreferential to the person indicated by the predicative pronominal affix (i.e. third person, because no affix is present), at the same time *mawič* appears to be object of the nonpassive predicate $?u \cdot k^w t$ 'do to' whose subject must equal the oblique or indirect agent of *qahsa·p't* 'be killed'. To call $?u \cdot k^w t$ *mawič* a sentential object of *qahsa·p't* seems unacceptable, because such predicates would then be subjectless (i.e. ambient) and would have a patient object. Yet clearly there is a near-paraphrase relation between (208) and (209) below.

(209) qahsa·p'tint mawič The deer got killed

Yet both predicates are passive.

If $?u \cdot k^w t$ *mawič* is assumed to be object (or oblique) in (208) and the agent is obligatorily noncoreferential to the patient (preventing a reflexive interpretation), then there is no way to explain in terms of the syntax how the same predicate could have a subject or an object which is coreferential to the other. It therefore seems preferable to claim that $?u \cdot k^w t$ *mawič* in (208) is a (passive) subject and that contrastive patients, whether active or passive, can be expressed as sentential constituents with $?u \cdot k^w t$ as predicate and a subject coreferential to the matrix agent (whether passive agent oblique or active subject). Such a grammatically contradictory system may be in part explainable in terms of an analogical extension of the function of $?u \cdot k^w t$ as an indicator of all contrastive patients, rather than only active objects. Such an extension is encouraged by the existence of passive sentences with a Rec or Be subject and a contrastive patient signalled by $?u \cdot k^w t$ NP.

- (210) *?uya?ti's ?u?kʷə sukw'a* I was given SUGAR
/?u-ayi-?at-(y)i:-s ... / it-give...-MASS-INDF-I .. sugar

The final support for a base-generated passive is that the semantic interpretation of a passive clause is not necessarily the sum of the active version's meaning plus some unique meaning associated with the passive morpheme. Consider the following sentence pair.

- (211) *c'api·smaq̕ki's* I want to be on the lap
/c'ap-i·s-maq̕k-(y)i:-s/ hold on lap-? - want to..-INDF-I
- (212) *c'api·smaq̕ki·ti's* I want to be held on the lap

There are a number of instances where affixation of a transitive base by *-at* introduces the notion of an indirect agent and thereby lessens the control of the subject (experiencer in this case) over the event (cf. Thompson 1976 for a discussion of control in the neighbouring but not related Salishan languages). Such passives might be deemed a middle voice, but such a voice would be highly unproductive in Nootka. Note that in (211) and (212) the subjects are coreferential. It is always 'I' who does the 'wanting'. A strict passive interpretation, in contrast, would assign to (212) the meaning 'I was wanted to be on the lap', which is not the appropriate interpretation. Contrast this interpretation with the one in (213).

- (213) *?uchindnaaq̕ti'k* She wants to marry you
/?u-chi-nd-naaq̕-?at-(y)i:-k/ it-married..-MOM-want to..-PASS-INDF-II

Evidently the semantic interpretation of a passivized stem (e.g. the degree of the subject's control) depends in part on lexical information specific to that stem.

For the above five reasons, it is posited that the passive is base-generated in Kyuquot rather than syntactically-derived.

3.3.1.2. Distribution of Semantic Roles by Person

The next question concerns which persons occur as subjects, object, and agent oblique. In Kyuquot, both active and passive predicates can associate with first, second, and third person (I, II, and III) subjects. III subjects occur with I or II objects.

- (214) *hupi-čnat nu-hit* They started to help us
/hupi-či-ci(?)-a-čt nuh-(č)it[L] help-INC-PL we-do to..

- (215) *hisša-?k Bill si-čit* Bill hit me
/his-ši(?)-ak.. si-(č)it[L] hit-MOM-TEM Bill I-do to..

This holds whether III is indicated by an affix (i.e. *-a-čt* when plural) or by NP or by nothing. Interestingly, (215) was offered as a response to 'I got hit by BILL', showing that focus can be marked by subject choice. III subjects with I or II objects cooccur in embedded clauses as well.

- (216) *huhtikk qʷa-yi n-ači-čk si-čit* Do you know if he saw me?
/huhtik-k qʷa-(y)i: ... / know-II(QUE) if-INDF see

- (217) *mickʷa-yi-s ?in wa-?ak su-tit* I'm surprised he spoke to you
/mickʷ-(y)a-(y)i:-s ... wa-?ak sut-(č)it[L]
 surprised-CONT-INDF-I that say-TEM you-do to..

III agents and III nonagents can cooccur in both active and passive sentences, e.g. *qahsa-p'at* 'he killed them, they killed him' and *qahsa-p'tat* 'they got killed by him, he got killed by them'. Similarly, I and II can cooccur as agent or patient in active and passive sentences.

- (218) *hupi-ča?tin. suw'a-qhat* We got helped by you
/hupi-či(?)-a-at-in suw'a-q-(q)h-čat help-MOM-PASS-IP you-SIM-PASS

- (219) *hisši?i-k si-čit* You hit me
/his-ši(?)-(y)i:-k .. / hit-MOM-INDF-II

Finally, I or II agents and III nonagents can cooccur in either passive or active sentences.

- (220) *hisša-?akak Bill.* Did you hit Bill?
/his-ši(?)-a-čka-k .. / hit-MOM-TEM-PASS-II(QUE)

- (221) *hupac-?u-nuw'a-qh'at* HE got helped by us
/hupi-čt-?u-nuw'a-q-(q)h-čat/ help-PASS it-SIM we-SIM-PASS

- (222) *siy'a-qh'atint hupa?t* It was me he got helped by
/siy'a-q-(q)h-čat-int hupi-čt/ I-SIM-PASS-PAST help-PASS

In general, one concludes that the choice of voice is not constrained by the person relation of the patient or agent. Of course, the choice of III subject with I or II object or agent oblique is not as common as that of I or II subject and III object or agent oblique. I and II subjects are generally more salient (focused) than III ones. However, given appropriate contexts, there are grammatical clauses with III subjects and I or II nonsubjects. Hence, there is no obligatory hierarchy of persons with respect to subject choice.

3.3.1.3. Passive Assimilation

A second characteristic of the Nootka passive is the influence of the sentence environment on the voice of a particular clause, at least for complex sentences involving an embedded clause. Three types of embedded clauses are considered here: adverbial obliques, relative clauses, and complements.

Adverbial obliques are clauses whose subjects are coreferential to those of their matrix or dominating predicates. Adverbial obliques are active regardless of the higher predicate's voice.

- (223) *č'atp' ičsip't ha'čt*
/č'at-p' ič-sq-p'-at .. / He was shoved off there
shove-at edge-MOMCAUS-PASS there
- (224) *hit'ap'ak'at ča'ni*
/hit'-ap-'ak'-at .. / He was put there for a while
here-CAUS-TEM-PASS short time

Nominally-bound relative clauses, in contrast, can be either active or passive, whether embedded in an active or a passive matrix clause. Relative clauses and their matrix clauses can have distinct voices and noncoreferential subjects. A matrix subject, object, or agent oblique can be coreferential to an embedded relative clause's subject, object, or agent oblique.

With respect to complements, one finds that the occurrence of passive clauses (whether matrix or subordinate) is normally independent of the other clause's voice. This is at least true for those matrix predicates associating with a complement which is optionally subject-coreferential. Consider the following.

- (225) ?uwaⁱ?nⁱ ?inc ē'i·qak^{i/j}
 /u-wə-⁻ak ?in-č ē'i·q-ak^{w/}
- (226) ?uwaⁱ?nⁱ ?inc ē'i·qak^t_{i/j}
- (227) ?uwaⁱ?n^t_i ?inc ē'i·qak^{i/j}
- (228) ?uwaⁱ?n^t_i ?inc ē'i·qak^t_{i/j}

He_i said he_{i/j} beat someone up
 it-say..-TEM that-INF beat-DUR

He_i said that he_{i/j} was beaten up

He_i was told he_{i/j} beat someone up

He_i was told he_{i/j} was beaten up

The subscripts are used to indicate whether subjects are coreferential (i...i) or not (i...j). Clearly, coreferentiality or the lack of it is not being signalled by the presence of -'at. The following sentence pair gives added confirmation of this.

- (229) ?uqtipint Bill_i ?un'a·hq_{i/j} Bill_i thought he_{i/j} had looked
- (230) ?uqtipint Bill_i ?un'a·hatq_{i/j} Bill_i thought he_{i/j} was sought
 /?uqtip-int .. ?u-n'a·h-⁻at-q^a/ think-PAST .. it-seek..-PASS-SUB

Consider now cases where coreferentiality is obligatory. If a particular complement subject is obligatorily coreferential to the matrix subject, then the opposing voice paraphrase of a particular complement is ungrammatical.

- (231) n'amatškinti^s_i ?u?aⁱ Joe I tried to invite Joe

*?u?aⁱ?t Joe

- (232) n'amatškinti^s_i ?u?aⁱ?t_i I tried to be invited

*?u?aⁱ?k si·čit

Similarly, where the complement subject must be coreferential to the matrix patient, opposite-voice paraphrases of the complement are ungrammatical for that reading.

- (233) ?uksa·pnah Bill_i hat'isapqu_i Sara Did he coax Bill to bathe Sara?
 /?uksa·p-na-ha⁻ ... hat'is-⁻ap-qu: .../
 coax-PAST-QUE Bill bathe-CAUS-COND Sara

*hat'isap'tqu_j Sara

- (234) ?uksa·p'tnah Bill_i hat'isapqu_i Sara Was Bill coaxed to bathe Sara?

*hat'isap'tqu_j Sara

The started complements above can be grammatical if the predicate's subject is interpreted as coreferential to the higher patient (i.e. Bill), leaving the complement NP (i.e. Sara) to function as the clause's oblique agent.

As examples, (235) and (236) below indicate, passive complements with subject coreferential to the matrix patients are acceptable.

- (235) *?ukʷi·bat ?u·chin·at* It was made for her
/?u-(c)i·t-·at ?u-chin [L]-·at/ it-make..-PASS it-do for..-PASS

- (236) *hit̪i·at qa?uk ?ukʷi·bat ?u·?atip·t maw'i*
/hit̪-h-·at .. ?u-(c)i·t-·at ?u-a?atip-·at .. /
 there-ABS-PASS Kaouk it-make..-PASS it-destine for..-PASS father
 It was made at Kaouk for Dad

Constraints can also be stated as arising from the complement to influence the voice of the matrix clause. Although the voice of the matrix is not influenced by that of a complement whose subject is coreferential to the matrix patient, it is influenced by that of a complement with a subject coreferential to the matrix subject. It would appear that in Kyuquot where a complement is passive and thereby has as subject a nonagent (instead of the agent associated as subject with its active counterpart), the higher predicate can also be passive by a kind of passive assimilation. Consider first transitive passive matrix clauses.

- (237) *qʷa·?a·qkʷts ha?ukʷwt* That's how I'm going to be eaten
 (by a spider)
/qʷa·-?a:qk-·at-s ha?uk-·at/ thus-FUT-PASS-I eat(DUR)-PASS

- (238) *huhtik·t, ?ukʷi·bat qa?u·c* Baskets were known how to be made
/huhtik-·at ?u-(c)i·t-·at .. / know-PASS it-make..-PASS basket

- (239) *?u·?w̪·at·at quta·y ɔ·iça·?t* A knife was used to cut it
/?u-w̪-at [L]-·at .. ɔ·i-ši(x)-·at/ it-use..-PASS X. cut-MOM-PASS

The subjects are not necessarily coreferential in these passive complex sentences. However, by passivization of the matrix, the semantic ill-formedness of the matrix-active variants is avoided, e.g. *'They made it to be for them', *'They know how to be made', *'They used it to be cut', etc.

In (236), if *naw'i* is to be the subject of *?u'atip't*, then the coreferential subject of *?uk'i·t* and *hith* (the one that is doing it and being there) cannot be equivalent to the subject of *?u'atip't* as well. Hence, the higher predicates are affixed by *-'at*. This at least allows the agent oblique of *?u'atip't* and *?uk'i·tat* and the patient oblique of *hith'at* to be coreferential. In general, transitive matrix predicates whose active complements are obligatorily subject-coreferential are obligatorily passive when the complement is passive. This is true even for multiply-embedded clauses.

Topical temporal predicates optionally passivize when dominating passive complements.

- (240) *qi·qi·ti:s ka·pap't* It took a long time for him to like
/CV#-qi·-'at-(y)i:-s ka·pap-'at/ ^{mé}
 distrib-long time-PASS-INDF-I like-PASS
- (241) *?athi·tintis qahsa·p't* He got killed at night
/?ath-(y)i·-'at-int-i:s .. / night-..time-PASS-PAST-IND killed
- (242) *?uyi·nt k'iñsa·p't* That's when it got broken
/?u-(y)i·-'int k'iñ-sa·p-'at/ it-..time-PAST break-MOMCAUS-PASS

The last sentence above has as a paraphrase *?uya·?tint k'iñsa·p't*. In contrast, oblique temporal predicates are never passive.

The passive is also present in intransitive higher negative predicates, such as *wik* 'not', *wi·y'a* 'never', and *wikyu* 'have not', whose subjects are coreferential to the associated complement subject.

- (243) *wi·y'ayi:s ha'uk'wap* I never fed him.
/wi·y'a-(y)i:-s ha'uk-'ap/ never-INDF-I eat-CAUS

If the lower subject is a passive Pa or Rec, then the higher predicate is also passive.

- (244) *wi·y'as?tu:s ha'uk'wap't* I never got fed

- (245) *wikyu·?ak't sukwa·?t* He hasn't been picked up yet
/wik-yu·-'ak-'at su-ki(n)-'at/ not-..-ed-TEM-PASS pick-MOM-PASS

- (246) *wik'tint ha'u·q'h'at* It wasn't done by someone else
/wik-'at-int ha'u-(g)h-'at/ not-PASS-PAST other-SIM-PASS

In these cases, as in others, complements with intransitive patient (nonpassive) subjects are not associated with passive matrix predicates.

In contrast to negative predicates, conjunctional predicates generally remain active.

- (247) *?uhtasi-čat suki?ak t'atna* Then they got picked up again
/?uhtas-(y)i:-č-a-t suki(n)-ak-at-a-t-na-/
 then-INDF-INF-PL / pick-MOM-TEM-PASS-PL-again

- (248) *?uniwi-n. ?in qahsa-p tk t'atn'a-skwint*
/?u-nwi-(n) .. qah-sa-p-at-uk t'an'a-t-is-uk-int/
 it-because of.. that die-MOMCAUS-PASS-POSS child-PL-DIM-POSS-PAST
 It was because her kids had been killed

However, passive conjunctional predicates do occur.

- (249) *?inha-n' tints ?i-qhuk-wt* But he told ME
/?in-hi- -a-t- at-int-s ?i-qh-uk- -at/
 only-DUR-TEM-PASS-PAST-I tell-DUR-PASS

- (250) *q'ahta-n' ti-č hupa-?t* Nevertheless, he was helped
/q'ahta- -a-t- at-(y)i:-č hupi- -at/
 although-TEM-PASS-INDR-INF help-PASS

The distribution of passivizing conjunctional predicates is not known at present. It may be possible, however, to associate the passive assimilation strategy with a particular subset of the conjunctional predicates in the lexicon.

Occasionally, qualifiers, like conjunctional predicates, can assimilate to the passive. The passivization is not, however, limited to particular qualifiers and appears to be an optional syntactic variant.

- (251) *?i-h(at)ač ka·pap' t* They were really liked
/?i:h- -at-?a-č ka·pap- -at/ really-PASS-PL like-PASS

A NP topical predicate governing a sentential nonrelative

complement oblique must also govern a subject coreferential to that of its complement. When the subject (necessarily third person) and content of a matrix NP predicate are coreferential to the complement subject, the matrix predicate is not affixed by -'at.

- (252) *miwic̪iš qahsa·p̪ t* It's a DEER that was killed
/miwic̪-?i·š qah-sa-p̪-at/ deer-IND die-MOMCAUS-PASS

When the subject of the NP predicate is coreferential to the complement subject but the content of the NP is coreferential to the complement agent oblique, then the matrix predicate is affixed by the sequence -(q)b-'at SIM-PASS as in (253), and (254).

- (253) *mixtukʷh?atinti·s hissa·?t* It was an OLD man I was clubbed by
/mixt-uk-(q)b-?at-int-(y)i:-s his-si(?)-?at/ old-DUR-SIM-PASS-PAST-INDF-I hit-MOM-PASS

- (254) *saw'a·qh?atnah ta·qša·?t* Was it squeezed by YOU
/saw'a-q-(q)b-?at-na-ha· ta·q-ši(?)-?at/ you-SIM-PASS-PAST-QUE squeeze-MOM-PASS

Finally, consider intransitive verbal and adjectival predicates. There are cases where a matrix intransitive predicate is not passive even though dominating a passive complement.

- (255) *?u?umhimatk x'iča·?t* She might get hit (by arrow, bullet)
/?u-mhi [R]-matak x'i-ši(?)-?at/ it-can..-POSB hit-MOM-PASS

But there are very similar cases where the matrix predicate is passive.

- (256) *kuw'itak'tič ?u?at Bill Bill managed to get invited*
/kuw'it-?at-?at-(y)i:-č ?u-?i(?) [L]-?at/ manage-TEM-PASS-INDF-INF it-invite..-PASS

This difference may be due to idiosyncracies of lexical entries or it may involve some semantic distinctions between types of clauses. This distinction could be proved only by a thorough analysis of voice and its relation to complement-containing clauses.

In conclusion, the Nootka passive has been observed to occur in both transitive clauses (to emphasize and render as subject a nonagent) and certain intransitive clauses which dominate a passive clause. In the latter case, occurrence of the passive may have to be specified for individual lexical items or for lexical items identified by features such as locative, negative, etc. The passive, in Nootka, is in part grammatically induced (i.e. by a dominated passive clause), although for the most part it is a function of certain discourse strategies.

3.3.2. Topical Clauses

Topical clauses are clauses in which the predicate or a base within a predicate is a focused element. A topical clause has a non-focused paraphrase in which the predicate or focused (NP) base of the topical clause serves as either an adjunct or an oblique constituent. A topical predicate subject is coreferential to the subject of its complement predicate. Topical clauses can be adverbial, NP, or NP+ relating. In addition, there are complex predicates consisting of an object base affixed by a predicate-like governing morpheme.

3.3.2.1. Adverbial Topical Predicates

Adverbial topical clauses have temporal or locative stems as predicates. These predicates function as sentential adverbs which govern sentential obliques.

- (257) ?uya·q̥i·s ·?am̥ i·xi ~i·cu 'It's TOMORROW I'll give a party
 /?u-(y)i·-?a:q̥i-(y)i:-s ?am̥ i-iñ~i· ./.
 'it-.time-FUT-INDF-I tomorrow-prospective-DEF potlatch

- (258) hi·baqda' k̥ahkʷačn̥ ha· k̥ʷac'itinti
 /hit-apá [L]-qa·č̥ k̥ah-(?a)k̥ʷa-ši(x) .. k̥ʷac'it-int-?i/.
 there-up in air-DUB break-completely-MOM the Kwatsit-PAST-DEF

Perhaps it was UP IN THE AIR that the Kwatsit box broke up completely

The nontopical paraphrases of (257) and (258) would be the following

sentences.

- (259) *n'i·cu·qki·s ʔuya ʔam i·ni* I'll give a party tomorrow

- (260) *k'ak·w'ačaqae'* ... *hi·tap* It broke up in the air

In contrast, matrix quantity, adjectival, or verbal predicates have no nontopical paraphrase and are hence not considered topical, although they can have a sentential adverbial function.

- (261) *napp'itnak hu·thu·t* Did you dance once?
/nup-p'i-t-na-k .../ one..times-PAST-II(QUE), dance

- (262) *mu·šmu·šaxi·su ya·xya·x* You swept up carelessly
/CVC#mušk-[L]-(y)a-čk-(y)i-su: CVC#yaxw-[L]-(y)a/ IT-messy-GRAD-REP-TEM-INDF-IIp IT-sweep-GRAD-REP

Such adverbial predicates can occur without an oblique as well:

ʔuya·qki·s 'I'll do it then', *hi·tapqae'* 'Perhaps it's up there',

napp'itnak 'Did you do it once?', and *mu·šmu·šaxi·su* 'You did a messy job'.

3.3.2.2. NP Topical Predicates

The NP topical clause consists of a NP predicate coreferential to its subject or to the agent oblique of its complement. Matrix and oblique subjects are coreferential. The active NP topical clause always has a paraphrase in which the NP is subject adjunct of a predicate equivalent to the topical NP clause's oblique predicate. Two examples of active nominal NP topical clauses are given here.

- (263) *čakupintiš ʔu·hw'atčep xuča·y* A MAN used the knife for her
/čakup-int-ʔi·š ʔu-hw'at [L]-či·p .../ male-PAST-IND it-use..-for knife

- (264) *ha·k'a·níntiš m'ača·t ʔuh-at ʔini·ni* A GIRL was bitten by the
/ha·k'a·ní-int-ʔi·š m'a-či(n)-at ʔuh-(q)h-at ʔini-n-i·/ dog girl-PAST-IND bite-MOM-PASS it-ABS-SIM-PASS dog-DEF

NP topical predicates can have subjects coreferential to the subjects of passive or active, transitive or intransitive, oblique clauses. They can be composed of nominal heads or of any semantic type of head which represents a NP, e.g. a pronominal in (265) or a quantity in (266).

- (265) *sutwa-q̥wac hi-šink* YOU'RE supposed to kiss first
/sut-wi-?a:q̥-wa-a:c hiš-(č)inkʷ[L]/
 you-first-FUT-QUOT-II(IND) both-with...

- (266) *c'ava-ksis ?iqhi hit* I ALONE am still there
/c'ava-akʷ-s-is ?iq-hi .../ one-DUR-I-IND same-DUR. there

When a quantifier serves as a NP predicate, it must be affixed by -(q)h SIM.

- (267) *ka?u-qhaint kawičk* The OTHER one came to visit
/ka?u-(q)h-int kawa-iči(č)/ other-SIM-PAST near-INC

- (268) *?u-šhm-inhah kʷacsič* Are just SOME hitting the target?
/?u-š-(q)h-m-inh-ač-ha-kʷac-si(č)/
 some-SIM-PL ITEM-QUE hit target-MOM

For some speakers, quantities and nominals must also be affixed by -(q)h when serving as subject-coreferential topical predicates. This seems to be favored by conservative, possibly less fluent, speakers and may be analogically derived from the pattern of the NP agent oblique coreferential predicates. An example of such a marked nominal predicate is given below.

- (269) *?u-cmaqhaint t'ič'ičšk* It was a WOMAN that fell down
/?u-cma-(q)h-int t'ič'ič-ši(č)/ woman-SIM-PAST sink-at edge-MOM

Topical NP predicates can be phrasal, in which case the head appears to be exclusively nominal as in the following sentences (whose NP predicates are underlined).

- (270) *?i-hp'itaſs zu-cma tu-nu* A TALL woman won
/?i-hʷ-p'it-aſs .../ big-at edge-EVID woman win

- (271) ?u·šinti·č c'awa·k qu·?as ?u·wak ?aya tani wasit
 /?u·š-(q)h-int-(y)i:-č c'awa-akʷ .. ?u-a-wi(ñ) [L].. . . . /
 some-SIM-PAST-INDE-IND one-DUR adult it-find.. many really frog
 There was a CERTAIN man who found a lot of frogs
- (272) ?ayintwa's sinimiašic watyu A LOT of blueberries were at home
 /?aya-int-wa·-a·?s .. wat-yu·/ (this year), I hear.
 many-PAST-QUOT-EVID blueberry go home--ed

Examples of the agent oblique NP predicates are given below.

Observe that subjects are still coreferential and that the NP must be affixed by -(q)h.

- (273) siy'a·qha·qñ·ti·k hupa·? I'M whom you were helped by
 /siy'a·q-(q)h-?a:qñ·at-(y)i:-k hupi-·at/
 I-SIM-FUT-PASS-INDF-II help-PASS.
- (274) hišuk'h?at n'aca·? ?in ñat ALL notice that she's pretty
 /hiš-uk-(q)h-·at n'aca-·at .. . / all-DUR-SIM-PASS see-PASS that
- (275) ?ayaqha' tni's kut'ahs'ap'? We were sent them by MANY people
 /?aya-(q)h-·a·k-·at-n-iš kut-·ahs-·ap-·at/
 many-SIM-TEM-PASS-IP-IND send as gift-in vessel-CAUS-PASS
- (276) hišsa·eqhatča's ſac'ik' t qa'u·c ?ukwi·tat
 /hiš-sa·ca-(q)h-·at-č-a·?s ſac'ik'-at .. ?u-(č)i-č-t-·at/
 all-places-SIM-PASS-INF-EVID expert-PASS basket it-make..-PASS
 Those baskets were known how to be made by people everywhere

Oblique agent NP predicates can be nominal, pronominal, quantifier, quantity, adjectival, or locative with respect to semantic class. However, proper nominals cannot be topical predicates. This holds whether the name is traditional, e.g. čixčin (human male name) or qa'uk (placename), or is an English loan, e.g. piñčamin 'Benjamin' or mitu·ni 'Victoria'.

Some speakers tend to reject NP topical predicates and prefer all focused NP's to be introduced as adjuncts to a NP-relating predicate.

3.3.2.3. NP-relating Predicates

NP-relating predicates can focus the subject (active or passive), object, or agent oblique. Active (III) subjects are topically focused by serving as adjuncts to the predicate $?uh$ 'he, she, it' which governs a sentential oblique (bracketed in the following examples).

- (277) $?uh?i's \dot{tu} \cdot ema [\dot{\eta}u \cdot t]$ It's the WOMAN that's good
 $/?u-h?i's \dots /$ it-ABS-IND woman good
- (278) $?uh?i's \dot{Bil}l [ti \cdot ca]$ It's BILL that's the teacher
- (279) $?uh \cdot int ha \cdot ma [k'i \cdot nsa \cdot p winta]$ It's a HAMMER that broke the window
 $/?u-h-int \dots k'i \cdot nsa \cdot p \dots /$ it-ABS-PAST hammer break-MOMCAUS

The stem $?uh$ is a deictic-like durative III pronominal which, like other nonverbal stems, can have a copulative meaning component and, like all stems, can serve as a predicate. $?uh$ governs a focused subject NP adjunct which is not part of the predicate. The syntax of predicative NP's is constrained for order. There are no instances of NP's in which $?uh$ precedes the article ha , nor of predicative NP's in which the nominal precedes $?uh$. Yet both situations occur in topical clauses.

- (280). $?uh \cdot ca \cdot s \dot{h}a \cdot maht'i m'u?i \cdot x$ THAT house must have burned
 $/?u-h-c-a \cdot s \dot{h}a \cdot maht'i m'u-i \cdot x /$ it-ABS-INF-EVID ... burn-outside
 (MOM)
- (281) John $?uh?a \cdot qx$ $hap \cdot iy$ It's JOHN that will be chief
 $/..?u-h?a \cdot qx \dots /$ John it-ABS-FUT chief

It is assumed, therefore, that the NP's $ha \cdot maht'i$ and $John$ are sister constituents to the $?uh$ predicate and not part of the predicate itself.

The stem $?uh$ is not a copula. It cannot serve as an active predicate with first or second person subjects but must mean '(is) him, her, etc.'. Furthermore, $?uh$ serves as a deictic or pronominal modifier within the NP, even a proper one as in (282).

- (282) $ku \cdot wi \cdot inti \dot{s} ?uh \cdot pi \cdot namin$ That BENJAMIN stole it
 $/ku \cdot wi \cdot inti \dot{s} \dots /$ steal-PAST-IND

It can serve as an elliptical head NP serving as an adjunct, a predicate, or a topical NP predicate.

- (283) *huʔaciʔən ?uh*
/huʔa-c-i-?i:-ši(n) .../
- (284) *huhtik'əmnahsu ?in ?uh*
/huhtik'-ək-na-ha-su:/
- (285) *?uh?a·qñint hupi*
/?u-h-?a:qñ-int .../

HE went back
 back-at-go to...-MOM

Did you all know it was HER?
 know-TEM-PAST-QUE-IIp that
 THEY were going to help
 it-ABS-FUT-PAST help

Observe the contrast in meaning between the following sentences.

- (286) *huhtik'ən ?in tu·cma*
/huhtik'-ən ?in tu-cma .../
- (287) *huhtik'ən ?in ?uh tu·cma*
/huhtik'-ən ?in ?uh tu-cma .../

He knew it was a WOMAN

He knew it was THAT woman.

It would seem that *?uh* has as its major meaning 'it, he, she'. The copulative component of its meaning is a general component of most nonverbal stems in Kyuquot and does not constitute something unique about *?uh*.

It should be emphasized that *?uh* need not be associated with a subject or an agent.

- (288) *hini·p ha·kwa·ni ?uh (muwic)* The girl got THAT (deer)
/hin-i:p/ there(MOM)-obtain.. girl .. deer

Topical objects occur as objects of a predicate composed of *?u-* 'it' plus *-(č)it [L]* 'do to...', or a quantifier, quantity, or pronominal base plus *-(č)it [L]*, or alternatively as objects of a complement clause serving as an oblique to such an object-focusing predicate. Examples of the *?u·kʷt NP* include (289) and (290) and ones of the *NP-(č)it [L]* type include (291) and (292).

- (289) *?u·kʷtinti's Mary ximksa·p* It was MARY I woke up
/?u-(č)it [L]-int-(y)i:-s .. ximk-sa-p/
 it-do to...-PAST-INDF-I Mary waken-MOMCAUS

- (290) *?u·kʷtinti's č'apic hišsi·k John* THAT'S the canoe John finished
/?u-(č)it [L]-int-?i:s .. hiš-si:k .../
 it-do to...-PAST-IND canoe all-finish.. John

- (291) *su·tit'a·qñi's hupi* YOU'RE the one I'm going to help
/sut-(č)it [L]-?a:qñ-(y)i:-s .../ you-do to...-FUT-INDF-I help

- (292) qa·cc·ičtints wik ta·qak
 /qacc-a-(č)it [L]-int-s .../ There were THREE I didn't believe
 three-do to...-PAST-I not believe

An object nominal or other NP cannot be focused by serving as an adjunct to *?uh*, unless the clause in which the focused NP would be object is a relative clause.

- (293) *?uh?i·š tu·cma hami·pi·s

- (294) *tu·cmičti·s hami·p

- (295) tu·cma·š ya·qʷtqs hami·p It's a WOMAN I know
 /tu·cma-?i·š yaqʷ-(č)it [L]-qa-s .../ woman-IND which-do to, REL-I

The focused object can occur in either the matrix clause as in (289) and (290) or in the complement as in (296) and (297).

- (296) ?u·kʷtnak nahi Bill ha pukʷ?i Is THAT the book-you gave to Bill?
 /?u-(č)it [L]-ha-k puk-?i/ it-do to...-PAST-II(QUE) give Bill the book-DEF

- (297) ?u·kʷtintiš Bill nawa suč'isi THAT'S the tree Bill was near
 /... ... suč'is-?i/ ... tree-DEF

In addition, the subject (being coreferential in both clauses) can occur in either clause. There is a cleft construction in Nootka but it does not account for objects two or more clauses to the left of the expected position, as in (298).

- (298) ?inčtaš ti·ča [takšit [wipaxmis Mike ____]]
 /?in-(č)it [L]-a·šs ... wipax-mis .../ only-do to...-EVID teacher always weary-NOM Mike
 Mike evidently always bugs only the TEACHER

At the same time, there is no other case of a constituent occurring to the right of its expected position in some marked clause. To complicate the analysis, only some speakers employ this object-focusing strategy and those who do have mixed intuitions concerning the appropriate position of the subject and object NP's in such sentences.

Topical nonagent subjects in passive clauses can be focused by the following construction: NP-(č)it [L]-at... (Su) [Pred-at...]. In

such a construction the NP is restricted to being either ?u- or a pro-nominal.

- (299) ?u^wbatintis t'an'a-si hitaqsip't THAT child was put in a canoe
 /?u-(c)it [l]-at-int-i's t'an'a-is-i hita-qs-ip-at
 it-do to...-PASS-PAST-IND child-DIM-DEF there(MOM)-vessel-CAUS-PASS

- (300) si-čit'a-qx'ti-s hisa-?t I'M the one that's going to get hit
 /si-(c)it [l]-?a:qx-(y)i:-s his-ši(ñ)-at/
 I-do to...-FUT-INDF-I hit-MOM-PASS

Nonagent passive subjects are more commonly focused by occurring as a topical NP predicate or ?uh predicate plus NP subject associated with a passive complement. Given that the morphological distinction of agent subject from nonagent (passive) subject is still obligatory within the relative clause (cf. section 3.4.2.3), it appears that a change is underway at present in Kyuquot. This change is a strengthening of the notion of subject by the discarding of strategies for distinguishing nonagents from agents when in the subject role. However, further research is required to support the direction claimed for this putative change.

Finally, there are oblique agent topical predicates, wherein the oblique agent (OAg) is focused by the matrix predicate ?uh'at. The OAg NP can occur either in the matrix clause or the complement.

- (301) ?uh'atnabs Bill [hawa-?t] Was it BILL I was called by?

/?u-h-(q)h-at-na-ha-s .. hawa-at/
 it-ABS-SIM-PASS-PAST-QUE-I .. call-PASS

- ?uh'atnabs [hawa-?t Bill] Was it BILL I was called by?

This optionality of position for the agent oblique holds even when the agent NP is complex, e.g. a conjunction of two NP's such as Bill ?uh'iš John 'Bill and John'. One constraint on the position of the agent oblique reflects the general Nootka strategy of avoiding sequences of NP's. Where the complement includes a nonsubject patient, the agent oblique occurs in the matrix clause. Generally but not obligatorily, subject and oblique agent occur in different clauses of the oblique agent topical sentence.

Consider now focused objects which are objects not of the oblique predicate but only of the object focusing matrix predicate. Both predicates are necessarily active. The matrix predicates consist of a governing suffix affixed to $?u\text{-}$. The predicate can be associated with a focused object and an oblique complement.

- (302) $?u\text{-}atpint ?um?i qahsa\cdot ck$ It was for MOM he made the basket
 $/?u\text{-}a\text{-}atip-int .. qa?u\text{-}c-(c)i\cdot k/$ it-destine for..-PAST .. basket-make..
- (303) $?uhta\cdot nt Twi\cdot light makan\cdot i np$ It was the Twilight he tied up
 $/?u\text{-}hta-int .. mak-ate\cdot a-i:nup/$ it-do to..-PAST .. bind-at vertical surface-CAUS
- (304) $?u\text{-}kw\text{-}inknahsu ?ahku qahsa\cdot p$ Is THIS what you killed it with?
 $/?u\text{-}kw\text{-}inkw [E]-na-ha\cdot su: .. qati-sa\cdot p/$
 it-use..-PAST-QUE-IIp this die-MOMCAUS

There is a second type of topical-like structure, in which a NP (usually a pronominal) is affixed by a NP-relating suffix and the resulting stem serves as matrix predicate.

- (305) $xu\text{-}thw\text{-}atintin qahsa\cdot p$ We used a KNIFE to kill it
 $/xut-kw\text{-}at [E]-int-in qah-sa\cdot p/$ knife-use..-PAST-IP die-MOMCAUS
- (306) $nu\text{-}hchinqu\cdot k mamu\cdot k$ Would you work for US?
 $/nuh-chin [E]-qu:-k mamu-uk/$ we-do for..-COND-II work-DUR

Both these types of topical-like objects are included here because speakers identify them as emphasizing the object NP. These sentences are not truly topical because subjects in the two clauses are not necessarily coreferential. Consider the following sentence.

- (307) $?u\text{-}atpints ?um?i ?u\text{-}taqqu mah\cdot i$ I want it to be for MOM that he works on the house
 $/?u\text{-}a\text{-}atip-int-s .. ?u\text{-}taq [E]-qu: .../$
 it-destine for..-PAST-I mother it-work on..-COND house

Such a sentence could of course also mean 'I want it to be for MOM that I work on the house' but it does not have to. Such a sentence suggests that these topical-like predicates are generated as matrix predicates and are not the result of movement. It is never the case that a NP-relating oblique predicate has a subject not coreferential to the subject

of its matrix predicate.

- (308) *?u⁺taqqu maht'i ?u⁺?atpints ?um*i*

There is a second sentence-type which suggests that topical-like object-focusing predicates are base-generated. In this type, an object-focusing base is affixed by a governing suffix, resulting in a stem which could not have served as an oblique constituent for the other predicate in the sentence. For example, sentence (309) cannot be derived from sentence (310).

- (309) si⁺chinma^qmak ?inkwi⁺ Am I whom you wanted to build the
/si-ochin [L]-ma^qaqk-na-k ?inkw-(C)i⁺t/ fire for?

I-do for..-want to..-PAST-II(QUE) fire-make..

- (310) *?inkwi⁺*t*<nak> si⁺chinma^qnak<nak>

The latter is ungrammatical regardless of the position of -na-k.

There is an additional argument for not deriving topical predicates by movement out of either an adjunct or oblique position. Many topical predicates have no (surface) complement.

- (311) ?u⁺k^wiatnah Bill way Joe Was it Bill or Joe he meant?

/?u-(C)it [L]-at-na-ha... . . . / it-do to..-PASS-PAST-QUE .. or ..

There is no 'lower' clause out of which the above clause could have been moved.

Topical clauses can serve as subordinate clauses.

- (312) . wik*i*⁺s ?uh ha ⁺akupi ⁺ai^b It's not THAT guy that's nice
/wik-?i⁺s ?u-h .. ⁺akup-?i⁺.../ not-IND it-ABS .. man-DEF nice

- (313) wa⁺niti⁺s Bill ?ink su⁺tita^qti⁺k hupa⁺t
/wa⁺-nit-?i⁺s .. ?in-k sut-(C)it [L]-?a:q⁺at-(y)i:-k hupi-..at
say-PAST-IND .. that-II you-do to..-FUT-PASS-INDF-II help-PASS
Bill said that YOU'RE going to get helped

- (314) ?i⁺q^wuk⁺hab ?in ?uh⁺at[?]ab Joe

/?i⁺q^wuk-⁺ak-?a⁺b... ?u-h-(q)h-⁺at-?a⁺b .. /

tell-DUR-TEM-PL that it-ABS-SIM-PASS-PL

They were told it was done to them by JOE

In summary, topical clauses in Nootka focus on a NP and identify it as subject, object, (passive) nonagent subject, or agent oblique. Subjects are focused by occurring as NP predicates or as subjects of an *?uh* predicate; objects as objects of *?u·kw̓* predicates; nonagent passive subjects as subjects of *?u·kw̓·?at* predicates; and agent obliques as obliques of *?uh?at* predicates. In all cases, the focused NP can also be found within the complement clause associated with the focusing predicate. Topical-like predicates (composed of NP-relating bases) also identify focused NP's, although topical-like clauses do not necessarily have a nontopical paraphrase.

3.3.3. Quantifiers and Questions

In the last section, the NP-relating clauses were identified as similar to topical clauses but lacking a nontopical paraphrase. Question and quantifier stems (the latter including negatives) also form such quasi-topical clause predicates.

3.3.3.1. Quantifiers

The Kyuquot quantifiers, distinguished as a class morphologically (cf. section 4.7.1), include *xa?u-* 'other', *wik* 'no, not', *kʷis-* 'different', *?u·s-* 'some', *hiš-* 'all', *?ukʷa-* 'self', *takwa-* 'each', and *?ana/i/u* 'only'. Quantifiers are like pronouns in that they can not serve as adjuncts to *?u·kw̓* and *?uh*, or as an oblique to *?uh?at* but must be morphological components of such predicates.

- (315) *?u·ši·š n̓i·kk̓i·k* SOMEONE knocked
/?u·s-(q)h-?i·š CVC-k̓ik-[L]-{(y)a/ some-SIM-IND IT-knock-GRAD-REP

- (316) *hišukʷhat n̓aci·ča·t* He was seen by EVERYONE
/hiš-uk-{-q)h-?at n̓aci-či-čik-{-at/ all-DUR-SIM-PASS see-INC-PASS

Quantifiers and pronouns are also distinguished from stems of other semantic classes by requiring affixation of -(č)ič [L] when serving as object and of -(q)h-?at when serving as agent oblique.

- (317) *wik n̓aci·ča ?u·ši·č* We didn't see anyone there
/i- n̓aci-či-či(h) ?u·š-(č)ik [L]/ not see-INC some-do to..

- (318) *t'i·činksa?tin ɻu·šh?at* We got knocked down by someone.

/t'i-(c)inkw[L]-si(?) -at-in ./ throw-with.. -MOM-PASS-IP some-SIM-PASS

The result of this affixation is that quantifiers (and pronominals) are, in a sense, marked for case relations because topical subjects, objects, and agent obliques (and their nontopical counterparts) are distinctive.

For example, contrast *?u·šh* (subject), *?u·ši?* (object), and *?u·šh?at* (agent oblique) in sentences (315), (317), and (318) respectively.

Quantifiers have a special status as nominal modifiers. Unlike adjectival modifiers, quantifiers can serve as topical predicates in sentences where the nominals they ostensibly modify are in the complement clause.

- (319) *hišuk'ak n'ači·čk qutq'a:s* Pink ALL the people saw the fire

/hiš-uk-ak .. qu-pas-t- .. all-DUR-TEM see people-PL fire

- (320) *hi·šibi·ška·pap sini·ñuk* I like ALL his dogs

/hiš-(c)ibw[L]-(y)i::s .. sini-ñ-uk/ all-do-to..-INDF-I like dog-POSS

- (321) *hišuk'hat hi·šinksat ha·kwañki haw i h*

/hiš-uk-(q)h- at hiš-(c)inkw[L]-si(?) -at ha-kwañk-i haw iñh[L] / all-DUR-SIM-PASS all-with..-MOM-PASS girl-DEF boy-PL

The girl was kissed by EVERY boy.

To a far greater degree than other nominal modifiers, the quantifiers tend to serve as matrix predicates. This is, however, not obligatory.

Apart from the above 'quantifier-float' characteristic, the syntactic structure of quantifier-focused clauses does not differ from that of other NP-focused clauses.

One set of quantifiers requires further discussion, i.e. the negative stems based on the root *wi-* ~ *wik* 'no, not'. In Kyuquot, negative clauses parallel topical clauses. They normally have a sentential complement whose subject is coreferential to the topical predicate's subject. In general, the element negated is the predicate subordinate to the negative predicate.

- (322) *wik'i·š ta?it*

/wik-i·š ta-čit/

She's not sick

not-IND drift-in house

- (323) *wikyu yi's na'u kʷ* I have not made another one
/wik-yu-(y)i:-s na'u-(c)i-z/ not--ed-INDF-L other-make..

Predicates of any semantic class can be negated. Examples given here have adjectival, verbal, quantity, and quantifier predicates as the negated complements.

- (324) *wikints c'awak yi·c* I wasn't the only one to go out
/wik-int-s c'awa-akʷ .../ not-PAST-I one-DUR go out fishing

- (325) *wikint hišuk nnu'k* Not everyone sang
/wik-int hiš-uk .../ not-PAST all-DUR sing

NP's can also be negated as in (326).

- (326) *wik'i's Mary ti·ča* Mary is not a teacher
/wik-i's/ not-IND Mary teacher

One must distinguish in such a sentence between the NP subject of a negative predicate (*Mary* in the above) and the negated NP predicate.

Like other predicates governing complements with coreferential subjects, the adjunct subject of a negative predicate can be found in either the matrix or the complement clause, although more commonly in the complement. Whether this position is due to stylistics, semantics, or syntax awaits further research.

The above sentences suggest that negation is usually expressed by *wik*. Other negative stems include *wikičk* 'begin to (be) not', *wi'y'a* 'never', *wimačaqk* 'want-to not', and *wik'i't* 'no one, absent'. The latter stem can serve only as a subject or agent oblique. The sense of 'no one' as an object, as in 'He saw no one', is expressed only by a negation of the predicate governing the NP coreferential to 'no one'.

- (327) *waqfus wik'i't* Nobody came (on invitation)
waqfus wi-k'i-t/ come-by invitation not-NOM

- (328) *wik'ahč hupi hi·šitqu* He may have helped nobody
/wik'-ah-č ... hiš-(č)ib [L]-qu:/ not-IRR-INF help all-do to...COND

Sentence (328) can also be translated as 'He may not have helped anybody', as well as 'He may not have helped everybody'.

Negation can take place within complements as well.

- (329) ~~?u'shik̓t wik hiniłšk~~ SOME people didn't come
~~/ju:s-(q)h-int / hin-it-*Si(h)*/ some-SIM-PAST not there(MOM)-come-MOM~~
- (330) ~~?uq̓tip ?inswik'a:qñ hupi~~ He thinks that I won't help
~~... ?in-s wik-?a:qñ ... / think that-I. not-FUT help~~
- (331) ~~a'awa'kinti's wik zi:c~~ I was the ONLY one to not go out
~~/q'a-wa-ak'-int-(y)i:-s ... / one-DUR-PAST-INDEF-I not go out~~

If even occurs as the complement predicate of a negative predicate.

- (332) ~~wim aqñint wik ?i:hšix~~ He couldn't help starting to cry
~~/wi-maqñ-int .. ?ih-[L]-*Si(h)*/ not-want to.. -PAST not cry-GRAD-MOM~~

In fact, a double negative such as in (332) or (333) below is the correct way in Nootka to express obligation or duty.

- (333). ~~wim aqñhs wik numu:k~~ Do I HAVE to sing?
~~/wi-maqñ-ha-s ... / not-want to.. -QUE-I not sing~~

Like quantifiers, negatives tend to be sentence-initial. In addition, what is negated tends to occupy a topical role, dominating a sentential complement. Unlike English, Nootka does not allow a negative predicate to dominate a predicate governing a sentential complement if the negation really governs only the lower complement as in *I don't think he'll come*. This must be expressed in Nootka as *I think he won't come*.

In cases of double negation, however, the cognitive predicate can be negated as in (334).

- (334). ~~wiki's ?uq̓tip ?in wík'a:qñ~~ I don't think he won't (come)
~~/wik-(y)i:-s wík-?a:qñ/ not-INDEF-I think that not-FUT~~

In summary, Kyuquot negation requires a topical construction in which a negative predicate immediately dominates the predicate it negates or forms a complex stem in which both the negation and the predicate negated are expressed. There is no way to especially focus on negation in the Kyuquot sentence; its position is fixed. In other words, there is no device enabling one to distinguish between sentences such as *He isn't old* and *He is NOT old*.

3.3.3.2. Content Questions

Content questions, the equivalent of English *wh-* questions, are also topical-like in Kyuquot. In contrast, yes-no questions in Kyuquot are not topical-like but rather are syntactically parallel to unmarked statements and are signalled only by the predicate's question mood affix. There is only one exception. Occasionally, a yes-no question is expressed by appending *wik* 'not' to a predicate expressing doubt.

- (335) *hitingsmatk *wik* Perhaps he's at the beach, eh?
/hita-n'a-q-is-matak .../ there(MOM)-at² height-beach-POSB not

This does not appear to be ellipsis of a complement identical to the matrix clause but dominated by a negative predicate, e.g. *hitingsmatk *wik hitingsmatk*. Recall that *wik* is a predicate and is inflected for the clause-level mood, mode, pronominal, and other inflectional suffixes. Ellipsis should eliminate only the lower predicate but not the inflectional suffixes such as *-matak*, resulting in *hitingsmatk *wikmatk*. Although it is arguable that the negative clause's inflectional affixes are absent because they are identical to those of the other clause, it seems preferable to consider *wik* to be acting here as a type of uninflected particle.

In contrast to yes-no questions, content questions are syntactically marked by having a sentence-initial question stem. The content question proform associated with each semantic class is considered below, beginning with the verbal-bound proforms. The verbal-bound proforms are *?aqis-* and *?a·qin?ap-*, which appear to derive from the question root *?aqi-* 'what?' plus the cranberry affixes *-s* 'do' and *-n [L]* 'do'. The stem *?a·qin?ap* 'do what?' can be used when the action is either transitive or intransitive. However, the subject must be an agent. Hence, the answer to questions of the type found in (336) and (337) must be of the type 'jarring fish', 'killed a deer', or 'sang' but not of the type 'fell down', 'got tickled', or 'became a chief'.

- (336) *?a·qin?apha hit* What's she doing there?
/?aqi-n [L]-'ap-ha:-a: .../ what?-do-CAUS-QUE*, there
- (337) *?a·qin?apnak* What did you do?
/?aqi- n [L]-'ap-na-k/ what?-do-CAUS-PAST-II(QUE)

The other verbal-bound stem, ?aqis 'what/ how happened?, how!', can be used when the subject (of the response) will be nonagent or agent.

If the subject will be agent, the question normally requests amplification of some other assertion.

- (338) ?aqisnah

/?aqi-s-na-ha/

What happened to it?

How did it happen?

what?-do-PAST-QUE

- (339) ?aqis?aqhisa watsik

/?aqi-s-?a:q̥-ha-s-a:/

How would I get home?

what?-do-FUT-QUE*-I go home

- (340) ?aqisnah qahsa:p't

/?aqi-s-na-ha- qah-sa:p'-at/

How was he killed?

what?-do-PAST-QUE die-MOMCAUS-PASS

The locative-bound proform is wa·s(t)- 'where?' (the t deleting preceding a consonant). Its stem form (preceding inflectional suffixes) is wa·sa as in wa·sah 'Where is it?' It is, however, more commonly found as a base within a locative or verbal stem.

- (341) wa·sti:p'wha hit

/wa·s(t)-i:p'-ax-ha-a:/

Where does he get it there?

where?-obtain:-TEM-QUE* there

- (342) wa·s?i:nhsu si·nuk

/wa·s(t)-?i:-na-ha-su/

To where did you all move?

where?-go to..-PAST-QUE-IIp move-GRAD-DUR

The temporal-bound proform is wa·sqiyi 'when?'. It appears to be a compound of wa·s(t)- 'where?' plus qwi-(y)i 'at which time?'.

- (343) wa·sqwa:k?i:hp'i·tsx

/wa·sqiyi-k?i:hw-p'it-[L]-si(x)/

When are you going to grow up!

when?-TEM-II(QUE) big-at edge-EMPH-MOM

The ambiguous morphological structure of wa·sqiyi (i.e. whether it is a root or a multi-morphemic stem) may account for the variation in vowel elision strategies. The quality of a vowel resulting from elision of adjacent vowels depends on whether the first vowel is a root vowel or a suffix vowel (cf. section 2.2). The final i in wa·sqiyi or wa·sq'i (the latter form resulting from elision over a glide) is variably identified as root or nonroot. This matter requires more research. No instances of temporal-bound question roots embedded in a complex stem have

yet been found.

The quantifier-bound proform, *wa·yaq-* 'which?', is used to request specification, as in *wa·yaqh* 'Which one is it?' of (344).

- (344) *wa·yaqmahska sini·x* Which dog do you want?
/wa·yqq-mahsa-k-a: .. / which?-want.-II(QUE*) dog

Answers to *wa·yaq* questions often make use of the specifying quantifiers such as 'all', 'none', 'only', and 'this'.

Quantity and adjectival-bound content questions such as 'what like?', 'how long?', 'how many?', 'how many times?', and 'how much?' are framed in indefinite relative clause structures (cf. section 3.4.2.5).

Finally, there are the nominal- or NP-bound question proforms *?ača-* 'who?' and *?aqi-* 'what?'. These are suffixed by *-a* or *q* in their stem forms. Like topical NP-relating predicates, NP-bound proforms indicate the NP's grammatical relation in the complement or question predicate itself.

Here follow examples of *?ača-* question forms illustrating the range of possible grammatical relations.

- (345) *?ača·qk* Who are you?
/?ača-a·q-k/ who?-NOM-II(QUE)
- (346) *?a·čitnak ka·pap* Whom did you like?
/?ač-(č)ič [L]-na-k .. / who?-do to..-PAST-II(QUE) like
- (347) *?ača·čtnahsa hawa·t.* Whom was I called by?
/?ača-a·q-čat-na-ha-s-a: hawat/ who?-NOM-PASS-PAST-QUE*-I call-PASS

In the above examples, (345) is subject-bound, (346) is object-bound (identified by the governing suffix in the predicate), and (347) is agent oblique-bound (identified by *-at* PASS in both the question and the complement predicates).

The question root *?ača-* also commonly serves as a base within a multi-morphemic predicate, e.g. one composed of that root plus a governing verbal or adjectival suffix, and is hence object-bound.

- (348) *?ačisu·pnahsu* Whom did you all kill?
/?ači-su:p-na-ha-su:/ who?-kill..-PAST-QUE-IIp

The other NP-bound proform is *'aqi-* 'what?'. It is used for animate nonhuman or inanimate NP's and can be subject-bound or object-bound.

- (349) ?aqq-^{ha} pi-š What kind of a fish is it?
 /?aq-a-q-ha-a:.../
 what?-NOM-QUE* fish

(350) ?a-qt̪w^w ab? a-qt̪ka ?ukʷ-i-? What are you going to use/to make it?
 /?aqi-hw ab [L]-?a:qt̪-k-a: ?u-(č)i-?/
 what?-use..-FUT-II(QUE)* it-make..

3.3.4. Cleft Clauses

In the last section, topical clauses were examined. In such clauses, the focused element is the predicate, which takes the clause-level inflectional suffixes. A second marked construction commonly used for focusing is the cleft construction. In cleft constructions, one focused constituent is in a marked position but is not a topical predicate and is not affixed by the clause-level inflection. The following cleft structures are discussed: adjunct-predicate, adjunct-adjunct, and oblique-adjunct.

3.3.4.1. Adjunct-predicate Cleft

In Kyuquot, the clause normally consists of a predicate plus one or more adjuncts. It is a general property of all predicates that they can be preceded by one adjunct NP. Matrix predicates, whether intransitive or transitive, active or passive, can be preceded by a subject or object NP.

In each of the above sentences, the clause-initial NP is emphasized in

some way. The frog (not some other creature) is starting to croak; a raccoon (new information) comes into the yard and bites a chicken (previous focus of the story); they hear him (a previous participant in a story here being reintroduced as a participant); they want to get coho (new information given in response to a content question). Such a focused NP need not be animate.

- (355) *hamu.ti ha? uksa? tint* That bone got eaten
/hamu-t-i ha?uk-si(i)-at-int/ bone-DEF eat(DUR)-MOM-PASS-PAST

While it is true that there is no overt marking of subject or object and hence a sentence such as (352) can be interpreted as either subject- or object-focused, the conversational situation appears to be sufficient to determine the grammatical relation of the focused NP. Conversational participants keep track of what is new and old information up to the point of any given sentence and of what information the story-teller has already revealed (e.g. that her father had killed a raccoon and therefore the chicken could not have killed it) as well as what probabilities can be expected within a given context (e.g. a real story).

The semantic class of the predicate has no influence on whether or not an adjunct-predicate cleft can occur. Such cleft constructions can be found in sentences with verbal predicates (as in the above examples) or locative, temporal, quantifier, nominal, adjectival, or quantity ones.

- (356) *?athi puyinti-s qahsa-p* It was LAST NIGHT I killed it
/?u-(y)i:-int-(y)i:-s qah-sa-p/ night it-time of.. -PAST-INDF-I die-MOMCAUS

- (357) *Bidl wi.y'a-s naqwu* Bill is never drunk, it seems
/... wi.y'a-a-s naq-ay/ Bill never-EVID drink--ed

- (358) *Mary xu.kw'a-na-s* Mary is a doctor
/... xu.kw'a-na-a-s/ Mary doctor-EVID

As sentence (356) demonstrates, a cleft NP can occur in a topical clause. The topical clause can be adverbial, NP, or NP relating.

- (359) *qa?uk hit'a-qxi-s ?ukwi-z* I'll make it at KAOUK
/... hit'a-qxi(s)-s ?u-(c)i-z/ ... there-FUT-INDF-I it-make ..

- (360) ha[.] xuta[.]ya [?]uhintis[.] suhsix[.] THAT was the knife that rusted
 /.. xut-a-y-?i[.] u-h-int-?i[.]s[.] suh-si(x)[.]
 the knife-NOM-DEF it-ABS-PAST-IND rust-MOM

- (361) ?um[.]i[.] ?u-chintintin[.] c'ičixcp It was for MOM we cut it up
 /.. ?u-chin[L]-int-in c'i-si(x)-ci-p/
 mother it-do-for.-PAST-IP cut-MOM-for

There is one type of topical-like clause which will not admit a cleft.

This is the content question clause. A content question predicate must be sentence-initial, even if some adjunct NP is new or focused information.

- (362) *Mary ^{*}a[.]ga[.]wahaha[.]
 /.. ?aqi-a-wi(x)[L]-na-ha[.]-a:/ Mary what?-find..-PAST-QUE*

NP cleft structures are not restricted to matrix clauses. They can apply to NP's which are adjuncts within relative or ^{?u-kw̩} clauses within matrix adjuncts.

- (363) n[.]ic'ikint[.]?um[.]i[.] yaq*wi*.naq[.] It's a needle that she gave to MOM
 /n[.]i-č'ikw-int...yaq^w-(y)i[.]-na-q/¹ sew-NOM-PAST mother-which-give..-PAST-REL

- (364) či[.]ča[.]?hat[.] hu[.]n[.]i[.] ?u[.]kwl[.] They pulled that whale.
 /ci[.]-si(x)-ča[.]?a[.]t .. ?u-(č)ib[L]/ pull-MOM-TEM-PL whale it-do to..

NP cleft structures also occur in adverbial, NP-relating, and complement oblique clauses

- (365) na[.]wahicints[.]?am[.]i[.]?uya[.] I started to wait yesterday
 /na-wah-i-či(x)-int-s .. ?u-(y)iya/¹ wait-INC-PAST-I .. it..time

- (366) k'insa[.]pčas[.] ha[.]ma[.]?u[.]hw'at[.] He must have broken it with a hammer
 /k'ik-sa[.]p-č-a[.]s .. ?u-hw'at[L]/ break-MOMCAUS-INF-EVID .. it-use..

- (367) suw'a[.]qinti[.]k[.] si[.]čit[.] ku[.]w'itcp[.] YOU stole it from me
 /suw'a[.]q-int-(y)i[.]-k si-(č)it[E] ku[.]w'it-či-p/
 you-PAST-INDF-II I-do to.. steal-for(=from)

In the above examples, the NP in the cleft position has the shape of a nominal. However, an adjunct-predicate cleft NP can also consist of a modifier plus a nominal head, or an elliptical head modified by a quantity or quantifier stem.

- (368) *t'iñasi qu[?]as n'acayi^s* I see the guy sitting on the ground
/t'iñ-as-i[?]i .. n'a-ca-(y)i:-s/ see-ground-DEF .. see-INDF-I

- (369) *hišuk wi·kši·čint* Everyone was healed
/hiš-uk wik-šah [L]-i·či(?)·int/ all-DUR not..wrong-INC-PAST

A cleft NP can even be a relative clause or a conjunction of NP's (underlined in the following sentences).

- (370) *ya·q^wts₂ hamip* *?uyinti^s puk* I gave a book to the one I met
/yaq^w-(c)it [L]-qa-s .. ?u-(y)i·-int-(y)i:-s .. /
 which-do to..-REL-I meet it-give..-PAST-INDF-I book

- (371) *na·ni·qs ?uhis čimsaq₂ čay·ixi·č* Grizzly and Bear were berry-
/na·ni-aqs .. čims-aqs čay·ix-(y)i:-č/ picking
 grizzly-mythical female.. and bear-mythical female.. berrypick-
 INDE-INF

It would appear, then, that neither the type nor the complexity of a NP adjunct affects its suitability as an adjunct-predicate cleft NP.

The function of an adjunct-predicate cleft is not fully clear at this time. However, one purpose is to indicate the speaker's surprise at the participation of a certain entity (expressed as the cleft NP).

- (372) *ha:kwaⁿi qahsa·pinti^s* A GIRL killed it (instead of a boy)
/ha:kwaⁿ-?i qah-sa·p-int-?i^s/ girl-DEF die-MOMCAUS-PAST-IND

The adjunct-predicate cleft also occurs in clauses where a new NP participant is being introduced or reintroduced into the discourse. Occasionally, it appears that such a cleft is simply a stylistic variant without a focusing function. Stylistic variation awaits research which could show its role in determining sentence structure.

3.3.4.2. Adjunct-adjunct Cleft

In contrast to that of the adjunct-predicate cleft, the function of the adjunct-adjunct cleft construction (i.e. object-subject order) is more clearly understood. In unmarked Kyuquot clauses with two adjuncts, the subject precedes the object. However, when the object conveys new and salient information, the object adjunct can precede the subject.

- (373) *?ukʷi·tiš qa?u·c Mary* Mary is making a BASKET
/?u-(č)iž [L]-?i·š . . . / it-make..-IND basket Mary
- (374) *kʷuma·š ?u·kʷi maht̓ i ?um?i* Mom's pointing at the HOUSE
/kʷum-(y)a-?i·š ?u-(č)iž [L] . . . / point-CONT-IND it-do to.. house
- (375) *hišimy' u·p ma·cqwin lu·cma* The lady collected HOUSEFLIES
/hiš-(q)im̓ u:p . . . / all-around-CAUS fly woman

Such an adjunct-adjunct cleft also occurs in nonmatrix clauses as well.

- (376) *pihša·?ni·š ?in ?u·ematk napisim maht̓ i* I figured the house be-
/pih-ši(n)-an-(y)i:-s . . . ?u-i-c-matak . . . / longed to a raccoon
 imagine-MOM-TEM-INDF-I that it-belong to...-POSB raccoon house

Given a thorough examination of the expression of new and old information, it might be preferable to express ordering in double adjunct clauses on the basis of new and old information rather than grammatical relations (i.e. subject precedes object). This is another area requiring more research.

Object clefts also result when the subject is 'heavy', i.e. syntactically complex.

- (377) *č'ičimah cuw'it Joe ?uhis Linda* Did Joe and Linda cut the coho?
/č'i-si(n)-na-ha / cut-MOM-PAST-QUE coho Joe and Linda.

Such a cleft, resulting here from a conjoined subject NP, is not obligatory. Conjoined NP subjects can precede the object, although evidently no conjunction can be present in such sentences.

- (378) *č'ičimah Joe-Linda cuw'it* Did Joe and Linda cut the coho?

Double adjunct clauses are avoided in Nootka (cf. clause simplification, section 3.5.3). No examples of unfelicited double adjunct clauses with an adjunct-adjunct cleft structure have been observed. However, all speakers volunteered them as possibilities when asked to translate English sentences containing heavy subject NP's or heavily-stressed object NP's.

3.3.4.3. Oblique-adjunct Cleft

An oblique constituent, in contrast to the adjunct, does not precede its predicate. Such hypothetical statements as the following

(where the initial underlined stem or phrase is an oblique constituent) are ungrammatical.

- (379) *?u-chin ?um?i ɔ'ičikintiš

/?u-chin [L] .. ɔ'i-ši(n)-int-iš/ it-do for.. mom cut-MOM-PAST-IND

- (380) *hintšiš tu*cma*iš

/hin-it-ši(n) tu*cma-iš/ there(MOM)-come-MOM woman-IND

- (381) *nunu*k n'amatškinti*iš

/.. n'amat-ši(n)-int-(y)i:-s/ sing try-MOM-PAST-INDF-I

The only exception is that oblique agents can precede ?uh?at predicates as in (382).

- (382) tu*cma ?uh?atinti*iš kawa*t^t I was visited by the WOMAN

/.. ?u-h-(q)h-at-int-(y)i:-s kawa*at/

woman it-ABS-SIM-PASS-PAST-INDF-I near-PASS

An oblique agent can precede no other predicate.

- (383) *tu*cma kawa*?tinti*iš

This counterexample to a general 'no oblique-predicate cleft' rule may be due in part to the adjunct-predicate cleft which occurs in topical clauses such as the one in (384).

- (384) tu*cma ?uhintiš hintšiš It's the WOMAN that came

/.. ?u-h-int-iš hin-it-ši(n)/ woman it-ABS-PAST-IND there(MOM)-come-MOM

In such a construction, the sentence-initial NP is coreferential to the pronominal-like predicative stem ?uh. Similarly, the sentence-initial NP in a sentence such as (382) is also coreferential to the predicate's stem. Perhaps it is due to this coreferentiality of the agent oblique and the predicative stem in an agent oblique topical clause that a nonadjunct is allowed to precede a predicate in the Nootka sentence.

Although obliques virtually never precede predicates in Nootka, an oblique constituent can precede an adjunct. This oblique-adjunct construction must first be distinguished from certain similar ones. When a matrix predicate and its oblique have a coreferential subject, that subject (if expressed as an adjunct) can occur in either the matrix or the oblique

clause.

- (385) ?uhint Joe ?ukʷi·t̪ č̥ apic It was JOE who made the canoe
 /?u-h-int .. ?u-(č)i-t̪ .. / it-ABS-PAST Joe it-make.. canoe

- (386) ?uhint ?ukʷi·t̪ Joe č̥ apic It was JOE who made the canoe
 An adjunct-adjunct cleft can still occur in the lower clause of a sentence
 such as (386).

- (387) ?uhint ?ukʷi·t̪ Joe č̥ apic It was JOE who made the CANOE

Such lower-clause siting of coreferential subjects occurs for
topical matrix predicates as in (386), (387), or (388).

- (388) ?uh?atintiš ḥawaʔt̪ Joe Joe got visited by HER
 /?u-h-(q)h-^oat-int-?i-š ḥawa-^ot̪ .. / it-ABS-SIM-PASS-PAST-IND near-PASS Joe

It also occurs for unmarked matrix predicates when the oblique clause is
 emphasized (underlined in the following examples).

- (389) qʷah̥ta·ni·č t̪ awit hit quʔas tani Nevertheless the guy was LAYING
 /qʷah̥ta-ak-(y)i-č t̪ aw-it / THERE
 nevertheless-TEM-INDF-INF lie-in house there adult really

- (390) wík'i·tint č̥a'ni maʔas There was no village YET
 /wík-i-t-int .. ma-ʔas/ not-NOM-PAST yet dwell-outside

- (391) qah̥sa·p' t̪ ?uh?at John mawic The deer got kill by JOHN
 /qah̥-sa-p-^oat-int / die-MOMCAUS-PASS-PAST

The above underlining does not indicate that the oblique constituents are
 phonetically stressed but only that they are semantically emphasized (due
 to the peripheral position of the subject NP).

Although Kynquót has strategies for emphasizing both a subject and
 an object, as in example (387), an emphatic oblique agent and subject
 cannot both occur in one sentence. Note the unacceptability of the
 following.

- (392) *?u·kʷatint ḥimksa·p' t̪ ?uh?at Joe Mary
 /?u-(č)it [I]-at-int ḥimk-sa-p-^oat /
 it-do to..-PASS-PAST waken-MOMCAUS-PASS

Sentence (392) includes both a subject-focusing strategy (the *?ukʷit* passive patient subject topical construction) and the oblique-focusing strategy of oblique-adjunct cleft.

The above method of emphasizing oblique constituents seems to be compatible only with matrix predicates not associated with an object adjunct.

This does not imply that the matrix predicate is intransitive but only that no matrix object adjunct is found to occur in sentences where a focused oblique predicate precedes a subject adjunct coreferential to both the matrix and oblique clause subject. It is unclear whether this subject adjunct should be considered part of the oblique clause or part of a cleft construction in which an oblique constituent can precede a matrix adjunct.

Sometimes, however, a cleft construction must be posited. There are cases where an adjunct is grammatically (and semantically) related only to the higher clause but is separated from that clause by an oblique constituent. This is the oblique-adjunct cleft. There are three subtypes: the subject, the object, and the object-subject. In the subject type, the stranded subject is the subject only of the higher clause.

- (393) *?u·ktaqint qahsix sini·x* John It was on account of JOHN that the dog died
?u-(s)taq [L]-int qah-si(x) sini-x-i·-
 it-due to...-PAST die-MOM dog-DEF John

In sentence (393), the NP *John* has no grammatical role to play in the lower clause which has an intransitive predicate.

The object type of oblique-adjunct cleft is like the subject type because the stranded NP has no grammatical relation to the predicate which separates it from the clause in which it does express a grammatical relation. In the following examples, the oblique constituent is enclosed in square brackets.

- (394) *hisimbintin [mamu·k] maku·t̪* We worked in a JAIL

/his-mat-int-in mama-u-k maku-t̪/
 there(MOM), move about-PAST-IP work-DUR bind...place

- (395) *?u·?w·atint [qahsa·p] xutá·y* He used a KNIFE to kill it

?u-hw-ab [L]-int qah-sa-p xut-a-y/ it-use...-PAST die-MOMCAUS knife-NOM

This type of cleft construction occurs most commonly in sentences whose matrix predicate is locative. Ironically, in these true oblique-adjunct cleft sentences, it is the object adjunct and not the oblique constituent (which might be posited to be fronted) which appears to be the emphasized constituent. Of course, a stranded or sentence-final position draws attention.

In the object-subject type of oblique-adjunct cleft, the stranded matrix object is coreferential to the complement subject. Again, the oblique constituent is bracketed in the examples.

- (396) *hati·tak̚s Bill [hutma·s]·?u·kw̚ Mary Bill asked MARY to dance in /hati·t-ə ak̚-?i·s .. hut-mat̚-as .../ front of the house
invite-TEM-IND Bill dance-move about-outside.to Mary*

- (397) *?uksa·p̚ Bill [c'umatim̚ ?u·kw̚ kar̚?i] Joe ?u·kw̚ /?u·ksa·p̚ ak̚ .. c'u-mat̚(q)im̚ .. kar̚?i..
it-coax..-TEM Bill wash-move about-at bulky object to car-DEF Joe to
Bill left JOE to wash the car*

Although there are emphatic patients of the form *?u·kw̚ NP* even when the patient is subject, the oblique complement subjects in sentences such as (396) and (397) are not patients. They would, however, be patients (or perhaps recipients) in the matrix predicates. In such sentences, as in the object type of oblique-adjunct cleft, it is this object stranded to the right of (or inside of) the complement oblique which is the emphasized element.

When a stranded object is located within a complement which is itself associated with an object, the stranded object (as an oblique) can be positioned to the left of the oblique predicate's proper object as in (397) above. In addition, by what appears to be a double application of an oblique-adjunct cleft rule, the stranded object can precede the oblique predicate's proper object.

- (398) *?u·?atpk qahsa·p Bill katuknaqin Did you kill our cat for BILL?
/?u·a·?atip-k qah-sa·p, kat-uk-na-q-in/
it-destine-for..-II(QUE) die-MOMCAUS Bill cat-POSS-PAST-REL-1p*

Sentence (398) has a paraphrase in which *Bill* is sentence-final and hence

evidences only one application of the oblique-adjunct cleft. Although uncommon, oblique-adjunct clefts do occur in unelicited material as well as in response to elicited sentences.

In summary, the cleft constructions in Nootka include the following: an emphasized, surprising, or new adjunct can precede its predicate; a new object can precede a subject adjunct; a relatively uncomplex object or oblique can precede a relatively complex or long subject or object respectively; and an emphasized subject or object adjunct can follow an oblique constituent in which that (matrix) adjunct has no grammatical role. One of the most significant characteristics of cleft constructions is that they demonstrate that stems affixed by clause-level inflectional morphemes need not be clause-initial.

3.4. Other Complex Sentences

In the last section, a survey of the types of marked sentences found in Kyuquot was presented. This discussion of marked sentence types was in turn preceded by the section on oblique constituents. In Kyuquot, the oblique constituent consists of either NP or sentence. The sentential obliques, consisting of either an adverbial, NP-relating, or complement clause, characterize one type of complex sentence. In this section, the other types of complex sentences, the relative clause-bearing sentence and the sentence composed of coordinate clauses, are discussed.

3.4.1. Referential Clauses

Because most relative clauses in Kyuquot can be looked upon as embedded and subordinated referential clauses, the discussion of relative clauses begins by examining the referential clause. A referential base reflects by shape its coreferentiality to a linguistic entity within a certain semantic class. Referentials are anaphoric to a prior or anticipated referent. The referential (and relative) bases are given below. Where the same base cannot be used as both a referential and relative base, the relative version is enclosed in brackets. In their role as referential predicates, these bases can be affixed by any nonsubordinate mood suffix, can occur in matrix or embedded clauses, and can be affixed by lexical suffixes.

TABLE 7. REFERENTIAL (AND RELATIVE) BASES

| | | | | | | |
|------------|-------------------------|-----------------|----------|----------------|------------|-----------------------|
| Verbal | <i>qʷis</i> | happen thus | Nominal | ?u- | it | (<i>yaqʷ-</i> which) |
| | <i>qʷa·-?ap</i> | do that | | | | (<i>qʷi-</i> what) |
| | <i>qʷis-?ap</i> | do that | Quantity | <i>qu·-m̥a</i> | that many | |
| Adjectival | <i>qʷa·</i> | like thus | | ?una | that much | |
| Temporal | ?u-yi (<i>qʷi-yi</i>) | then | Locative | <i>hit</i> | there | |
| | ?unic | that often | | <i>his-</i> | there | |
| | <i>qu·m̥a-p̥t</i> | that many times | | <i>his(t)-</i> | from there | |

Verbal referentials include the basic *qʷis* 'do (it)', 'happen', and two causativized bases. The basic form can be anaphoric to intransitive or transitive predicates. In the latter case, an object may or may not occur as an adjunct of *qʷis*.

- (399) *qʷisəint. m̥iñsa·?x* Then it happened. It started to rain
/qʷis-·ax-int. m̥iñ-si(x)-·ax/ happen-TEM-PAST rain-MOM-TEM

- (400) *huhtik ?in-s qʷis* He knows that I did it (killed it)
... ?in-s .../ know that-I do that

- (401) *qʷis·axqu:s ha· tu?ukʷ?i* That's what I usually did to the board
/qʷis-·ax-qu:-s ... tu?ukʷ-i/ do-TEM-COND-I the board-DEF

The derived *qʷis·ap* should mean 'cause to do, happen'. However, it serves only as the causativized version of the intransitive *qʷis* and is hence synonymous with the transitive *qʷis*.

- (402) *qʷis·ap qʷa·?i·tq hurn'i* They did it (made it), like a whale
/qʷis-·ap qʷa·-?i·tq .. / happen-CAUS thus-REL whale

The derived *qʷa .. ·ap* means 'cause (it) to be thus' and hence emphasizes the completed or resultant aspect of an event.

- (403) *qʷa·?apisi·č ha·* That's what the little one was doing
/qʷa·-·ap-?is-(y)i:-č .. / thus-CAUS-DIM-INDF-INF that

Verbal referentials can be passivized.

- (404) *qʷis·ax·tqu ?ah?a* If something like that happened to him
/qʷis-·ax-·at-qu: .. / happen-TEM-PASS-COND that

Finally, the simple verbal referential *qʷis* can be used as an

oblique deictic when a verbal stem's meaning is demonstrated by the speaker's gesture.

- (405) *ñ̄w̄sik ha q̄w̄s* He grabbed him like this.

The adjectival referential *q̄wa* can mean '(v) thus', '(A) like that', 'such a (N)', etc. It can serve as a matrix predicate as in (406) where *q̄wa* anticipates the description to follow (i.e. 'there was no food') or as in (407) where the *q̄wa* clause follows the description (i.e. 'they were stood up on their ends').

- (406) *q̄wa-niti-č iint ?ah̄a, hu-?ak* It was like that long ago
/q̄wa-nit-(y)i:-č.../ thus-PAST-INDF-INF habitually that

- (407) *q̄wa-?ak humi-sinti* The cedar sticks were like that
/q̄wa-?ak humi-s-int-i/ thus-TEM cedar-PAST-DEF

The adjectival referential also serves as an adverbial oblique predicate,

- (408) *qi-?akint q̄wa* For a long time, it was like that
/qi-?ak-int.../ long time-TEM-PAST. thus

The temporal referentials are *?uyi* 'at that time', *?unic* 'for that long a time', and *qu-m'ap't* 'for that many times'.

- (409) *?uya-?akintin watsa-?k* We'll have gone home at that time
/?u-(y)i-?a:q̄n-int-in wat-si(k)-?ak/
 it.. time-FUT-PAST-IP go home-MOM-TEM

- (410) *?unicintis wa?ic* That's how long he slept
/?unic-int-?i-s.../ how much-PAST-IND sleep

- (411) *qu-m'ap'it-p Bill tu-xtu-* He made Bill jump that many times
/qu-m'a-p'it-ap... CVC-tux-[L]-(y)a/
 what.. quantity.. times-CAUS Bill IT-jump-GRAD-REP

Like *q̄wa*, temporal referentials occur as matrix predicates or as oblique predicates.

The nominal referential is *?u-* 'it, he, she, that'. This base must be affixed by a noninflectional morpheme and hence be part of a multi-morphemic stem. It can refer to a whole NP which may or may not be present

in the clause.

- (412) ?uma^q (Bill)

She paid attention to him (Bill)

It can also refer to a sentential complement whose head can also occur in the same morphological environment as ?u-.

- (413) ?uma^q ku^w it puk

/?u-ma^q ... /

He wants to steal a book

it-want to.. steal book

- (414) ku^w itma^q puk

He wants to steal a book

?u- serves as an anaphoric or copied root in stems of every semantic and grammatical class. It can be affixed by derivational morphemes as in

(412) and (413) or by nonderivational morphemes as in (415).

- (415) c'itka ?uc^w u^m inh

/c'itk-(y)a^w ?u-c^w u^m inh/

The (milk) inside flowed out

flow-CONT it-inside-PL

Like all referential bases, it can refer backwards or forwards in discourse.

While in some cases ?u- does appear redundant (because the referent is also present in the clause) or mechanically predictable (because otherwise certain suffixes could not occur in the sentence), it is claimed here that ?u- does have an anaphoric function and that the constituent it refers to can always be assigned a grammatical relation (e.g. object, complement, subject) with respect to the stem in which it occurs (cf. section 4.7.1).

The quantity referentials, qu'm'a 'that number (of)' and ?una 'that long, amount, much', serve as topical predicates as in (416), as predicative bases affixed by governing (derivational) morphemes as in (417), and as NP modifiers as in (418).

- (416) ?una^w ?uyaqlmis

/?una-a^w ?uyaqlmis/

That's how long the story was

that long-EVID tell-NOM

- (417) qu'm'i:pintab hu^wak

/gwi-m'a-i:p-int-?a^w ... /

They were getting that many before

what-..many-obtain..-PAST-PL ago

- (418) ?acšik qu'm'a qu^was

/?ac-ši(?) gwi-m'a ... /

Every man went out fishing

go out-MOM what-..may adult

The locative referentials are hit 'there', his.- 'there', and

his(t)- 'from there'. The latter two forms precede derivational suffixes.

- (419) *hist'aknak ?ah?a p'u·?i* Is that where you (got) the halibut?
/his(t)-ak-na-k . . . / thence-TEM-PAST-II(QUE) that halibut

- (420) *t'apatskinti·s hisn'a·h ?ah?a* I thought of looking for that there
/t'apat-skinti-(y)i:-s his-n'a-h . . . / think-MOM-PAST-INDF-I there-seek.. that

The form *hit* is the most common. It is nonablative and does not precede derivational suffixes. Rather it occurs either as a stem or affixed by nonderivational (but noninflectional) suffixes.

- (421) *hithakat t'a·nt'a·y* They fished for tommycod THERE
/hit-(q)h-ak-?a-t CVC#t'a-[L]-(y)a/
 there-SIM-TEM-PL IT-fish-with bait-GRAD-REP

- (422) *k'asa·kat hita·yt* They stored theirs in the rafters
/k'as-(y)a-?ak-?a-t hit-a-s-it/
 store-CONT-POSS-PL there-on-in enclosure

When an event occurs while participants are at a particular place, *hit* is affixed by -(q)h SIM ('meanwhile') as in (421) above. The h in the surface form cannot be an absolute or nominalizing affix. Contrast the following two sentences.

- (423) *hitnah* Did he do it there?
/hit-(q)h-na-ha/ there-SIM-PAST-QUE

- (424) *hitnah* Was he there?

Evidently, when an event is going on simultaneously with the occurrence of the participant at a particular location, then the -(q)h suffix is employed. When only the occurrence of a participant at a particular location is being expressed, then *hit* occurs without -(q)h. The distinction between (423) and (424) does not appear to be one of a nominal versus a locative predicate. The existence of the place is not being questioned in example (423). Rather the distinction appears to be one of presence versus absence of a contemporaneous event or state.

3.4.2. Relative Clauses

A Kyuquot relative (i.e. restrictive relative) clause is identified by the shape of the predicate's root or base which determines the semantic class of the head of the bound constituent. In most cases, these bases parallel the referential bases, except that bound NP's are signalled by *yaq^w-* or *q^wi-* and bound temporals by *q^wiyi*. The relative clause is also identified by the obligatory presence of either *-iyi* INDF or *-?i·tq* REL affixed to the clause's predicate.

3.4.2.1. Nonnominal-bound Relative Clauses

Verbal relative clauses are headed by *q^wis*, which occurs in active form with either an agent or patient subject, or by *q^wa[?]ap* or *q^wis[?]ap*, which occur in active form only with an agent subject. Verbal relatives serve as anaphoric complements to predicates such as *hayimk* 'don't know', *huhtik* 'know', *fafash* 'plan', *cig-* 'say', and even the referential predicate *q^wa[?]ap* 'do thus'.

- (425) *?u·t[?]i[?]t q^wisnaq Joe* He imitated what Joe did
/?u·t[?]i[?]ita [L] q^wis-na-q .. / it-pretend to.. do what-PAST-REL
- (426) *q^wa[?]ap[?]a[?]q^w q^wa[?]apqs* He will do what I did
/q^wa[?]ap[?]a[?]q^w q^wa[?]ap-qa[?]-s/ like what-CAUS-FUT like what-CAUS-REL-T

There is some evidence that verbal relative clauses in Kyuquot should be treated as NP's. First, verbal relatives can be introduced by an *?u^wk^wt* predicate.

- (427) *?i·qhuk^w?a[?]qxi's ?u^wk^wt q^wisnaq* I'll tell what he did
/?i·qhuk^w?a[?]qxi(y)i:s ?u-(e)it [L] q^wis-na-q/ tell-DUR-FUT-INDF-I it-do to.. do what-PAST-REL

Second, verbal relative clauses can precede what appears to be the matrix predicate.

- (428) *[q^wa[?]ap[?]itq qu[?]as] c[?]i[?]kaibx* He imitated what the man did
/q^wa[?]ap[?]i[?]tq .. c[?]i[?]kaib-[?]ix/ like what-CAUS-REL .. copy-MOM

In all cases where such a cleft construction is found, the matrix predicate is always transitive and the verbal relative clause appears to serve

as the matrix object.

Adjectival relatives are headed by *qʷa* 'like what'. Such clauses serve as oblique complements with a manner adverbial function.

- (429) *wik-i-th̥ tim-aqsta-nk qʷa-i-tq Bill* No one's as smart as Bill
/wik-i-t-(q)h .. qʷa-i-tq .. / not-NOM-SIM smart like what-REL

- (430) *qu-pasat yu-qʷa qʷa-qin qu-pas* They're also people, as we are
/qu-pas-?a-t .. qʷa-q-in .. / adult-PL also like what-REF-IP

In some constructions, they appear to serve as NP objects:

- (431) *hayimhi-yi-s qʷa-matk-a-qñi* I don't know what it might be like
/hayimhi-(y)i:-s qʷa-matka-qñ-(y)i:/ / not know-INDF-I like what-POSS-FUT-INDF

Such a role is supported by the occurrence of adjectival relative clauses as constituents dominated by *?u·kʷt* as in (432).

- (432) *mirk̥-ki-č ?u·kʷt qʷa-i-tq kurna* It was like what gold is like
/mirk̥-ki-č u-(y)i-č ?u-(č)i-[L] qʷa-i-tq .. / similar-DUR-POSS-INDEF-INDF it-do-to, like what-REL gold

The presence of a higher *?u·kʷt* predicate does not, however, prove that the dominated constituent is a NP. Consider the following sentence.

- (433) *qʷis-akintab ?u·kʷt susu-wi-h* How did they do at getting springs?
/qʷis-ak-int-a-b .. suh-i:h[R] / do what-TEM-PAST-PL . spring(salmon)-try to get..

The word *susu-wi-h* 'getting springs' cannot serve as a NP. It cannot be preceded by an article; it cannot be modified by an adjectival; and it cannot be the head of a nominal-bound relative clause. Hence it is assumed that the presence of *?u·kʷt* does not necessarily identify its governed constituent as a NP. This means that the identification of the syntactic role of the relative clause in a sentence such as (431) is not really established yet.

The temporal (relative) bases are *qʷiyi* 'when', *?unic* 'for as long', and *qu-map-t* 'for as many times'. They typically serve as the predicative stems of oblique complements.

- (434) *suc'iq'ichanh q'iyi* Was it five years ago when (they
/suc'i-q'i-ch'-an-ha q'i-(y)i-(y)i:/ did it)?

five-..years-TEM-QUE which-..time-INDF

- (435) *huhtiki's [?unicnaq ta?it n'uwt]* I knew how long Dad was sick
/huhtik-(y)i:-s ?unic-na-q . . . /
 know-INDF-I how much-PAST-REL sick father

Quantity relative stems are *qu'm'a* 'as many' and *?una-* 'as much'.

They serve as predicative stems in oblique complement clauses with a quantity adverbial function.

- (436) *?i'qhi qu'm'a*tq* There were still as many (as before)
*/?iq-[L]-hi q'i-m'a-?i*tq/ same-GRAD-DUR which-..quantity-REL*

- (437) *qu'm'a*qs [?inahk'itqat z'apic]* There were as many (birds) in the
*/q'i-m'a-qs ?una-h-uk-?i*tq-?a*t .. /* canoe as it could hold
 which-..quantity-in vessel as much-size-POSS-REL-PL canoe

They also serve as quantity modifiers or anaphoric heads within a NP as in (438) and (439) respectively (the NP's being underlined in the examples).

- (438) *hiyisime' ičkintč qu'm'a*nti qu'as hit*
/CV#his-imc-u-ci-či(n)-int-č q'i-m'a-int-i . . . /
 distrib-all-serve-..-INC-PAST-INF which-..quantity-PAST-DEF adult

He started to feed as many people as were there

- (439) *watsik qu'm'ayi* However many there were went home
/wot-sik(y) q'i-m'a-(y)i:/ go home-MOM which-..quantity-INDF

Locative relative clauses have as roots *hit* 'where', *his.-* 'where', and *his(t)-* 'whence'. The meanings and functions of these forms in relative clauses are parallel to those of referential clauses. Locative relatives serve as adverbial or complement obliques.

- (440) *wi'ksahi's hitqa's* I'm fine where I am
/wik-šahi [L]-(y)i:-s hit-qa'-s/ not-..wrong-INDF-I where-REL-I

- (441) *na?a*nti's histatkw?itq* I heard a sound coming from there
*/na?a-int-(y)i:-s his(t)-(y)a*tuk-?i*tq/ hear-PAST-INDF-I whence-make sound of..-REL*

(442) *hi-smatk hu?*^a [*hithnaqs ?u-taqxa*]

/hi^z-is-matak .. hit-(q)h-na-qa-s ?u-taq [L]-xa/

there-at beach-POSB there there-SIM-PAST-REL-I it-work on..-again
It must be there (at the beach) where I was using it before

At present, it is not clear whether the relative clause oblique in (442) is a sister to *hu?*^a and hence a direct oblique of the matrix predicate or is an oblique to the predicate *hu?*^a (itself an oblique to the matrix predicate).

Locative relative clauses can serve as modifiers within NP's or even as anaphoric NP's. The NP's below are underlined.

(443) *nut?i*^s tani ha nism'a histaqšin The land that we're from is

/nut?-i^s his(t)-taq-ši(?)-(y)i-n/ really nice

nice-IND really the land whence-come from.-MOM-INDF-IP

(444) *hi* nihk'ist [*hiy'a-naq hapt*] Hey! He paddled out from where he

/.. nihk'ist hit-a[?]a-na-qa hapt-(y)a*/ was hiding

hey! paddle-go out of hole-TEM there-on rocks-PAST-REL hide-CONT

The locative relative clauses in sentences (441) and (443) are locative-bound. Yet the predicative stems of these relative clauses are verbal rather than locative, due to the presence of the verbal derivational suffixes -(y)a[?]tuk 'make sound of..' and -taq- 'come from..'. Swadesh (1933:103-4) observed this conflict and commented:

The relation of the suffix to the stem [root] is the same as in the case of other themes [stems] of the same semantic class with the same suffixes, but the primary reference in the relative constructions is to the stem [root] rather than to the word [stem] as a whole.

Consider a sentence such as (443). In a sentence like this, the relative clause does not have a predicate whose semantic class is equivalent to that of the bound referent. Rather, it has a root (*his(t)*- 'whence') whose semantic class is the same as that of the bound referent.

This conflict in structure is due to two rules in Nootka. One is that a relative constituent must be the predicate of its own clause. The second is that a relative root governed by a suffix (including -(y)a[?][L])) must be affixed by that suffix in the relative predicate. As a conse-

quence, the semantic class of a bound element's relative base will not necessarily be equivalent to the semantic class of the predicative stem in which that relative base occurs. Although other semantic classes of relative bases can be derived by derivational suffixes (e.g. quantity relative roots can be affixed by verbal or adjectival derivational morphemes to yield verbal or adjectival bases), it is mainly locative and nominal relatives which are involved. With respect to locatives, it appears sufficient to note that adverbial obliques can consist of clauses which function semantically as locative obliques although having verbal or adjectival predicates. Hence coreferentiality or identity operates between the bound constituent and the relative root or some base, but not necessarily the whole relative stem, of the relative predicate.

3.4.2.2. Nominal-bound Relative Clauses

The (restrictive) nominal relative clause (RC) is one in which a NP is the bound referent. In Nootka, a relative clause, whether bound to a nominal or not, can serve as either a matrix or a subordinate clause. If the RC occurs as a matrix clause, then the nominal-bound root refers back to (or occasionally anticipates) some nominal occurring in another sentence in the discourse environment. Occasionally, the nominal-bound RC refers to an object, being, or place salient to the discourse (e.g. in the speaker's environment and pointed to) but not expressly referred to by name.

There are two relative roots, *yaqʷ-* 'which' and *ʔʷi-* 'what', which indicate that the bound referent is a NP. Their functions are considered in relation to those of the relative mood affixes -(y)i·.INDF and -?i·tq REL.

The root *yaqʷ-* specifies a particularized referent, i.e. 'a/the one which/who'. While it is commonly associated with human or animate referents, it does occur with inanimate referents if they specify an individual singled out from its class. Such a particularized referent can be definite or indefinite. RC's bound to a particular definite referent are illustrated below.

- (445) *haʔukšn ya·qupatq ?i·h* He ate the one which was the biggest
/haʔuk-ši(n). yaqʷ-api [L]-?i·tq/ eat(DUR)-MOM which-too-REL big

- (446) *wa·sa·ha· miwiči yaqsu·pnaqin* Where's the deer which we killed?
 (of a set killed by many people)
/wa·sa·ha· miwiči·?i· yaqʷ-su:p-na-q-in/
 where?-QUE deer-DEF which-kill..-PAST-REL-IP

- (447) *?u?a·p?a·qni·s yafa·pitk* I'll buy the very one you bought
/?u-a·p-?a:qñ-(y)i:-s yaqʷ-?a·p-?i·tk/
 it-buy..-FUT-INDF-I which-buy..-II(REL)

In only (446) does the bound NP actually appear as a sentential constituent. The NP can be elliptical and still definite and particularized. The relative clause can serve as an independent sentence.

- (448) *yaqk' up?itq* That's the one which/who he likes
/yaqʷ-k' up-?i·tq/ which-like..-REL

Other examples of sentences including relative clauses bound to a particularized definite referent (and hence signalled in Kyuquot by *yaqʷ-...-?i·tq*) include: *The one which he's making will be nice* (of ones made by different people), *That's what/who I fear, I know which* (of a set of two) he's using, *The one he's seeking is over there, I'll buy the thing which you'll (definitely) make*. In all cases, the identity of the referent, both as a class member and as an individual, is known to the speaker and the matrix subject.

When the bound referent is particularized but indefinite, the RC predicate has the form *yaqʷ-...-(y)i?* Consider the following.

- (449) *hayimhiyi·s yaqsu·pi* I don't know which (?) he killed
/hayimhi-(y)i:-s yaqʷ-su:p-(y)i:/ not know-INDF-I which-kill..-INDF

- (450) *?u?a·p?a·qni·s yafa·pi* I'll buy whichever (?) one he bought
 (know he bought one but not which)
/?u-a·p-?a:qñ-(y)i:-s yaqʷ-?a·p-(y)i:/
 it-buy..-FUT-INDF-I which-buy..-INDF

In the indefinite forms, the independent relative clause has the function of a question.

- (451) *yaqk' upi* I wonder which/who (?) he likes
/yaqʷ-k' up-(y)i:/ which-like..-INDF

It is usually glossed as 'I wonder...' and has some of the force of a

rhetorical question in English because it is stated more to express a lack of knowledge or a state of curiously or doubt than to elicit a response from the listener. However, in Nootka, a listener is making an acceptable conversational response if he or she answers a -(y)i: question.

Other examples of sentences including RG's bound to a particular indefinite referent (signalled by *yagw-...-(y)i:*) are: *Whichever of the canoes he makes will be nice, Wear whichever is clearer (of a set of garments), I wonder who (of the set of humans) he is?, I don't know which (of the knives) he used, I wonder who/which he's seeking, I'll buy whichever one you make, Whoever killed it ran away.* In all cases, the speaker knows there is a unique referent but cannot identify it more narrowly than by its class membership, e.g., the set of canoes made by a group, the clothes owned by a person, the set of humans, etc.

In contrast to *yagw-*, *qwi-* is used when the bound referent is non-particularized. It is used to refer to class membership, not an individual. It is normally restricted to nonhuman referents, except in the oblique type of reference as in *I know what died: a human being*, and is obligatory for geographical referents. Examples of sentences with RG's bound to nonparticularized, definite referents are given below.

- (452) *kuhtiki-s q^wisu-pnqqs* I know what I killed (an elk, not a deer or moose)
/kuhtik-(y)i:-s q^wi-su:p-na-q^a-s/
 know-INDF-I what-kill..-EAST-REL-I

- (453) *?u^ap^aq^as qwi^apitq* I'll buy the same type as he bought
/?u-a-p-a:q^as q^wi-a-p-i-tq/ if-buy..-FUT-I what-buy..-REL

Other sentences whose relative clauses are bound to a nonparticularized definite referent (signalled by *q^wi-...?i-tq*) include: *What he's making (the type of thing) will be nice, He arrived at the place which he was going to, He told all the stories he knew, He took all the meat he could carry, I know what he's eating, I'll also buy one like what you're going to make.* In such sentences, an individual is not contrasted with others of its class (except in the case of geographical entities). Either a class or a class member is denoted, and in the latter case it is similarity rather than difference which is emphasized.

Finally, *qwi*-...-(*y*)*i*: identifies a RC bound to a nonparticularized indefinite referent.

(454) *hayimhiyv*'s *qvisupinti*'s I don't know what (type of animal)
I killed

/*hayimhi*-(*y*)*i*:-s *qwi-sup-int*-(*y*)*i*:-s/

not know-INDF-I what kill!..-PAST-INDF-I.

(455) *?u?ap?ap?aqis qwi?api* I'll buy one like whatever he bought
/*u?ap?ap?aqis qwi?ap*-(*y*)*i*/ it, buy..-FUT-T what-buy..-INDF

Parallel to the functions exhibited in sentences (448) and (451) are those found in the -(*y*)*i*- and -(*y*)*tq* versions of the independent *qwi*-marked relative clauses. Consider the following sentences.

(456) *qwik upitq* That's what he wanted

/*qwi-k'up-i-tq*/ what-want..-REL

(457) *qwik upi* I wonder what he wanted

what-want..-INDF

Here, it is not the individual but rather the class identity which is being asserted to be either known or in question.

Other examples of sentences having RC's with *qwi*-...-(*y*)*i*: predicates include: Give me something I could hit it with!, Whatever he makes (be it box, table, candle, etc.) will be nice, They're smart too whatever they are, I don't know what he made, I'm going to find something which you could eat, I'm going to return whatever is inside this sack.

When the relative *yaqw*- and *qwi*- roots are used in their stem forms, they may serve as pronominals, e.g. *qwiqusi* 'whatever', *qwiqitq* 'something', *yaquasi* 'anyone, whoever', and *yaqiqtq* 'someone'.

(458) *?un'a'hinti*'s *yaquasi* I was looking for anyone

/*u-n'a-h-int*-(*y*)*i*:-s *yaqwu:s*-(*y*)*i*:/

it-seek..-PAST-INDF-I which-IRREL-INDF

3.4.2.3. NP Role Identification

The Nootka relative clause bound to a NP (abbreviated here as 'RC') always has *yaqw*- or *qwi*- (symbolized here as 'YAQ') as the root of its highest predicate. The structure of the RC predicate is not influenced

by the matrix grammatical relation of the NP coreferential to the NP bound by the RC. For example, a RC predicate with subordinate subject is structurally homogeneous, whether that subordinate subject is coreferential to a matrix subject (agent or patient), object, or agent oblique. In contrast, the structure of the RC predicate is influenced by the grammatical relation of the bound referent within the subordinate (i.e. relative) clause.

There is one exception to the above set of observations. There are certain RC's in which the predicate governing the NP is a restrictive locative suffix and the relative base appears to have an object-bound referent.

(459) *hitata itqat* .. what they were up against
/hit-atc-a-?i-tq-?a-i/ where-up against-REL-EL

The root affixed by a restrictive suffix is normally interpreted as its subject if nominal, even in relative clauses.

(460) *yaq'ata itqat* .. the ones who were up against it

Hence, *yaq'*- and *q'i-* cannot be used to identify an object of a restrictive locative suffix. In addition, objects which indicate sources, i.e. 'the thing from...', must be relativized with the locative relative root *his(t)* = 'whence'. Otherwise, NP's are relativized as follows.

The NP relations possible within a Nootka sentence are agent (or intransitive patient) as active subject, agent as passive oblique, patient, benefactee, or recipient as passive subject or active object, with patient as object adjunct or object of *?u:kw̄t* if contrastive and object of comparison, benefactee, or recipient as object of *?u:kw̄t* or of some appropriate derivational suffix, e.g. *-chih* [L] 'do for' or *-ayi* 'give to...'. When a NP is object of a predicate, there is a paraphrase in which that NP is passive subject and the predicate is affixed by -at.

There are two features of the language, in particular, which make it possible to identify the surface grammatical relation of the bound referent to the RC predicate. First, when a base is affixed by a derivational suffix (signalled in glosses by the presence of dots), that base is in an object (or complement) relation to the suffix. Second, when a predi-

cate is affixed by \sim at, its subject is identified as nonagentive.

Using these principles, the identification of the grammatical role of the RC's bound referent is as follows.

When affixed by neither a derivational (governing) suffix nor \sim at, YAQ is bound to the RC (active) subject as (445), (461), and (462).

(461) $\text{č}i\text{-tsi}x [qu\text{-}pasi yaqnaq ku\text{-}w it \& apic]$ The man who stole the canoe
 $/či\text{-tsi}(x) qu\text{-}as\text{-?i} \text{yaq}^w\text{-na-qa}\dots\dots/$ ran away
 escape-MOM adult-DEF which-PAST-REL steal canoe

(462) $hipa\text{-?t } ?uh\text{-?at [yaqnaq hupi si\text{-čit}]}$ He was helped by the one
 $/hupi\text{-?at }\text{yaq}^w\text{-na-qa}\dots(st\text{-}(č)it [L])/$ who helped me.
 help-PASS by which-PAST-REL help I-do to..

When affixed by a governing suffix but not by \sim at, YAQ is bound to the RC object.

(463) $k\text{-in-si-matk [q}^w\text{-i\text{-}w\text{-}i\text{-}tah\text{-?s}]}$ Whatever I use might break
 $/k\text{-in-}si(x)\text{-matak q}^w\text{-i\text{-}w\text{-}at [L]\text{-}i\text{-}ah-(y)i\text{-?s}/$
 break-MOM-POSB what-use..-IRR-INDF-I

(464) $hant\text{-pint}s [čakup ya\text{-}čimak qahsa\text{-?p}]$ I knew the man you killed
 $/hami\text{-p-int}s \text{yaq}^w\text{-}(č)it [L]na-k qah-sa\text{-?p}/$
 know-PAST-I male which-do to..-PAST-II(REL) die-MOMCAUS

Note that (č)it [L] is in complementary distribution with the other governing suffixes. That is, when YAQ is object-bound, it will be affixed by (č)it [L] or some other governing suffix but not by both. The governing suffix can be of any semantic class. For example, whereas the ones in (463) and (464) are verbal, the following ones are adjectival and nominal respectively.

(465) $yaq\text{-častnaq čakup}$
 $/yaq^w\text{-čast-na-qa}\dots/$

(466) $hant\text{-yu\text{-}qwa [q}^w\text{i\text{-}ath\text{-}i]}$
 $/... q}^w\text{-i\text{-}ath-(y)i\text{:}/}$

When affixed by a governing suffix and by \sim at, YAQ is bound to the RC's passive nonagentive subject.

That's the man whom it was done by
 which-done by..-PAST-REL male.

They're nice too, whoever they are
 nice too what-people of..-INDF.

- (467) *?uk' upk [q'wiyā·thaqs]* Do you like what I was given?
/?u-k' up-k q'w-i-(y)i-·at-na-q'a-s/
 it-like..-II(QUE) what-give..-PASS-PAST-REL-I

- (468) *ya·q'itatinti ɔ'ičikəp'at* I wonder whom it was cut up for?
/yaq'-iči-it [I]-·at-int-(y)i: ɔ'i-ši(k)-či-p-·at/
 which-do to..-PASS-PAST-INDF cut-MOM-for-PASS

Occasionally a passive subject is bound to a YAQ predicate lacking *-at*.

- (469) *tu·ma yaq'i·hissa·?t* a woman who got hit
/.. yaq'-i(y)i: hts-ši(k)-·at/ woman which-INDF hit-MOM-PASS

However, this is so rare that it is probably a speech error, or less likely, an incipient innovation.

Finally, when affixed by *-at* but not by a governing suffix, YAQ is bound to the RC's passive agent oblique.

- (470) *xači·či [ha·čakupi yačatnaq hupa·?t]* He visited the guy who helped me
/xača-či-či(k) .. čakup-?i yaq'-·at-na-q'a-s hupi-·at/ near-INC the male-DEF which-PASS-PAST-REL-I help-PASS

- (471) *yačati xit·?at* I wonder whom she was treated well by
/yaq'-·at-(y)i: xit-·at/ which-PASS-INDF nice (to)-PASS

In Nootka, any semantic case can be assigned a subject, object, or oblique role within a clause. In RC's, the NP will have either a subject, object, or agent oblique relation to the RC predicate. In other words, a NP with any semantic relation can be bound to a relative proform (YAQ). The above examples illustrate how agents, patients, benefactees, and recipients are relativized. Instruments, objects of comparison, and possessors are relativized as follows:

Instruments are always relativized within a YAQ-*kw'at* [I] which used... as bound object (or bound passive subject).

- (472) *ya·qhw'atnaq guta·y ɔ'iča·?t ki·k'i*
/yaq'-kw'at [I]-·at-na-q'a .. ɔ'i-ši(k)-·at ki·k-?i/
 which-use..-PASS-PAST-REL knife cut-MOM-PASS cake-DEF

It was THAT knife that the cake was cut with

Objects of comparison are relativized as objects bound to a YAQ-

$-(\check{c})it$ [L] 'do to which' predicate, which governs the predicate of comparison as an oblique.

- (473) *tu·ma ya·qʷitq ?i·h* the woman whom he was bigger than
/.. yaqʷ-(\check{c})it [L]-?i·tq ../ woman which-do to..-REL big

Possessors can also be relativized in Kyuquot. They are bound objects of a YAQ-i·c 'belonging to whom' predicate.

- (474) *huhtiki·s [yaqʷi·citq pikcasm'inh̄ ha·kʷa·ñ]*
/huhtik-(y)i:-s yaqʷ-i·c-?i·tq pikcas-m'inh-?i ../
 know-INDF-I which-belonging to..-REL picture-PL-DEF girl
 I know the girl whose pictures those are

It is also possible to relativize a possessed NP in order to designate its possessor.

- (475) *pikcasm'inh̄ yaquki·i ha·kʷa·ñi* the pictures which are the girl's
/pikcas-m'inh-?i: yaqʷ-uk-(y)i: ha·kʷa·ñ-?i:/
 picture-PL-DEF which-POSS-INDF girl-DEF

However, there is no way to introduce a relative clause which would modify a possessed NP which has an explicit NP possessor.

- (476) **pukuk tu·ma ya·qʷtnaq̄s ku·w·it* the woman's book which I stole
/puk-uk .. yaqʷ-(\check{c})it [L]-na-qə-s ../*
 book-POSS woman which-do to..-PAST-REL-I steal

This can be contrasted with (477) or even (474) where the possessor is introduced through a clausal construction and where it is the possessor, rather than the possessed, which is modified by a relative clause.

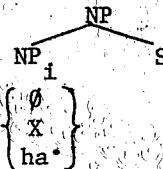
- (477) *pukuk tu·ma yaqkʷupq̄s* the book of the woman whom I like
/puk-uk .. yaqʷ-kʷup-qə-s/ book-POSS woman which-like..-REL-I*

There are cases where both the possessor and possessed are relativized, but in such cases the possessor must be linked to the possessed NP by a relative clause rather than the possessive suffix -uk.

- (478) *tu·ma yaqʷi·citq [puk ya·qʷtnaq̄s ku·w·it]* the woman whose book I
/.. yaqʷ-i·c-?i·tq puk yaqʷ-(\check{c})it [L]-na-qə-s ../ stole*
 woman which-belonging to-REL book which-do to..-PAST-REL-I steal

3.4.2.4. RC Structure

The structure of RC's can be generalized as follows. A NP can dominate a (RC) sentence or a NP plus a (RC) sentence.



The sister NP_i (coreferential to the dominating NP and to the relative clause proform) is in surface form either a nominal-headed NP (X) or the article ha.. Alternatively the RC is headless with no NP_i being present (abbreviated above as 'Ø'). Examples of these three types of RC's are found in sentences (478), (479), and (467).

- (479) *huhtiki·s [ha· ya·qhw' atatnaq (xuta·y)]* I know which knife was
/huhtik-(y)i:-s .. yaqʷ-hw' at [L]-at-na-qa .. / used
 know-INDF-I the which-use..-PASS-PAST-REL knife

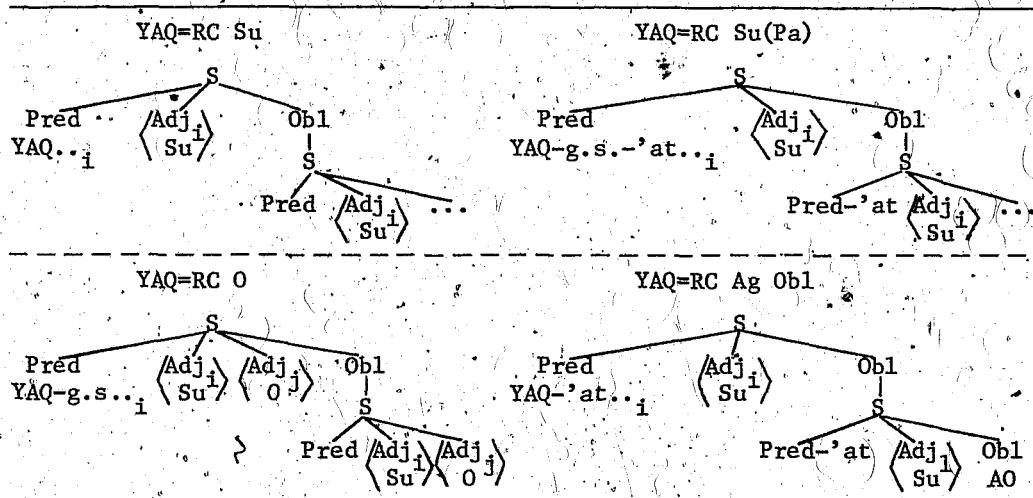
The RC sentence mirrors the structure of other sentences with topical predicates. In topical clauses, the subject can accompany the topical predicate or the 'lower' oblique predicate. Similarly, the adjuncts of YAQ sentences can serve as sisters to the YAQ predicate or to the 'lower' oblique predicate. In RC's, the NP can occur within the RC in a position normal for the NP's grammatical role as long as the RC clause 'does not have the same NP (X, above) as a sister.' If the latter situation occurs, the sentence is ungrammatical as in (480).

- (480) **huhtiki·s [tu·cma yaqk' upith tu·cma]*
/huhtik-(y)i:-s .. yaqʷ-k' up-?i·tk .. / know-INDF-I which-like-II(REL) ..

Below are given schemata of the structure of the sentential part of NP's having relative clauses. The angled brackets indicate that a given constituent occurs in either of the positions indicated. The abbreviation 'g.s.' indicates a governing (derivational) suffix. In all cases, the subject of the RC has a choice of positions and is always coreferential to the subject of the lower clause. In cases where YAQ is bound to the RC object, the object has a choice of positions if the governing suffix in

the YAO predicate is -(e)iz [L]. In such a case, the object of the YAO predicate is coreferential to the object of the lower clause.

FIGURE 2: RC STRUCTURES

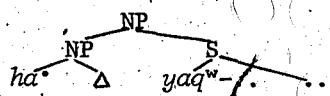


The basic relative clause structures for RC's bound to a NP are the following: $NP[S[YAO\dots]]$, $NP[S[YAO\dots NP_i\dots]]$, $NP[S[YAO\dots Ob1\dots NP_i]]$, $NP[NP_i NP_i] S[YAO\dots]$, and $NP[NP_i ha\cdot] S[YAO\dots NP_i\dots]$. The second and fifth structural types cannot be used for agent oblique-bound RC's, because an agent oblique NP_i cannot serve as an adjunct to a predicate.

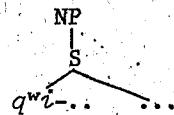
It does not appear satisfactory to attribute the sister NP_i (as in the fourth structure) to a cleft in which an adjunct precedes its predicate, despite the fact that there is a constraint preventing the cooccurrence of both a sister NP_i and a RC-internal NP_i . First, NP_i 's which are oblique agents to a RC predicate can precede that RC predicate as in example (470). In-matrix nonrelative clauses, only adjuncts (i.e. subjects or objects) can precede their predicates, unless the predicate is *?uk?at*, in which case the agent oblique can precede the predicate as well. Second, *ha* (the article) can precede the RC predicate even if there is a coreferential NP_i inside the RC as in (479). While it is true that the NP_i in the RC never contains *ha* itself, there is no other instance of a putative article-cleft construction in the language.

It is possible that the NP_i sister is due to copying, with obliga-

tory nonrepetition of the NP_i elsewhere, i.e. in the RC. This still leaves ha·, which cannot be a copy because ha· never occurs within the RC in a NP coreferential to YAQ. It is suggested, therefore, that ha· is an optional article modifier within a sister NP dominating a delta.



Note that in the above illustrative structure, the relative predicate is given as yaqʷ-. This is because the other relative predicate, qʷi- 'what', never occurs with a bound NP referent present, either inside or outside the RC. Its structure is therefore simply NP_S[qʷi-...]] or



This difference in structure follows from the rôle of qʷi- as a relative proform for a nonparticularized referent. If the referent is particularized by specification of its class membership or by a definite article, then restriction within the class must be expressed by yaqʷ-.

There are RC's involving one or more embedded clauses which have a coreferential NP_i sited in a higher clause, not only one clause higher as in (464) but several clauses higher as in (481) and (482). In other words, the NP_i coreferential to yaqʷ- is in the yaqʷ- clause and is one or more clauses removed from (higher than) the clause whose predicate would govern the NP_i in a nonrelative and nontopical paraphrase.

- (481) c'awa·kiš [ta·kinsi ya·qʷitnak [wikt'im [c'iyi·čk_]]]
 /c'awa-akʷ-?i·š ta·kins-?i· yaqʷ-(c)it [L]-na-k wikt'im c'is-či-ci(?)/
 one-DUR-IND stocking-DEF which-do to..-PAST-II(REL) not..times
 string-INC
 There's one stocking you didn't mend.

- (482) hini·čint [čakup ya·qʷitnak [?iwa [?in ?u'a·pmaqk_ maht'i]]]
 /hin-i-ci(?)-int .. yaqʷ-(c)it [L]-na-k ?u-wa .. ?u-a-p-maqk ../
 there(MOM)-INC-PAST man which-do to..-PAST-II(REL) it-say.. that
 it-buy.. want to.. house
 The man whom you said wanted to buy the house came here.

Such a situation occurs only for subordinate objects, i.e. objects of the

relative predicate and of the lower predicate. In the examples, *ta'kinsi* is the object of the relative predicate and of *c'i yi i'čč*, while *čakup* is the object of the relative predicate and of *?awa*. Although examples of RC's in which the NP_i is even more deeply embedded seem theoretically possible, native speakers seem to find such clauses awkward and prefer to employ several less complex sentences to express the desired content.

There is strong evidence that nominal-bound relative clauses together with their sister NP's (if present) are dominated by NP. This complex NP (if grammatically a matrix subject or object) can be found in a cleft position preceding the matrix predicate, like other NP's.

(483) [k'ahaqsi ya'q'winaqs ku'w'it] k'ihsa·p't The box I stole got broken

/k'ahaqsi-i yaq'-i it [L]-na-qas-s... k'ihsa·p'-at/

box-DEF which-do to... PAST-REL-I steal break-MOMCAUS-PASS

(484) [ya'q'winaqs k'ahaqsi ku'w'it] k'ihsa·p't The box I stole got broken

(485) [ya'q'winaqs ku'w'it] k'ihsa·p'(t) The one I stole got broken

(486) [ha' ya'q'winaqs k'ahaqsi ku'w'it] k'ihsa·p't

The box I stole got broken.

In contrast, RC's whose predicate is bound to a nonnominal referent cannot precede the matrix predicate. This supports the claims that only adjuncts (dominating NP) can precede the predicate and that nominal-bound RC's are NP's.

Such an adjunct-predicate cleft can occur with relative clause adjuncts, regardless of the type of relative clause (as in examples (483) to (486)), regardless of whether the relative clause is subject or object of the matrix predicate, and regardless of whether the bound NP is subject, object, or agent oblique of the relative predicate. In addition, either an adjunct-predicate cleft or an object-subject (i.e. adjunct-adjunct) cleft must take place when both relativized subject and a matrix object are present in a clause.

(487) ku'w'it-i's č'apig [qu'?as yaqndq haptal] The man who was hiding had

/ku'w'it-i's... yaq'-na-qas haptal-(y)a/ stolen a canoe

steal-IND canoe adult which-PAST-REL hide-CONT

(488) [qu·?as yaqmaq haptá] ku·w' itiš č' apic DITTO

(489) *ku·w' itiš [qu·?as yaqmaq haptá] č' apic

This cleft of the RC prevents ambiguity concerning where it ends and where the next NP (if there is one) begins and lessens the possibility of center-embedding. The participation of a RC in an adjunct-adjunct cleft as in (487) is additional evidence that RC's are syntactically treated as adjuncts.

3.4.2.5. Summary

This final section summarizes certain characteristics of relative clauses which identify them as sentences. First, relative clauses (including nominal-bound ones) can serve as independent matrix sentences. When the relative clause is affixed by the relative mood -?i·tq, the sentence has a deictic function.

(490) qʷisakitq, nəh

That's what happened at that point

/qʷis-·at-?i·tq/

happen-TEM-REL now

(491) qʷa·naq [ya·q̥aw·anqas]

That was like what I used

/qʷa-·na-qa· yaq̥-hw-at [L]-na-qa-s/

thus-PAST-REF- which-use..-PAST-REL-I

(492) ?unahitaq ?ah k'atk'a·tq·

It was about the size of my finger

/?una-h-?i·tq .. k'atk'a-·at-qa-s/

as much-size-REL that finger-PASS(=POSS)-POSS-I

When the relative clause predicate is affixed by the indefinite relative mood -(y)i·, the sentence has a question function. Such a sentence is commonly but not necessarily introduced by the particle ču· 'well!, say!'.
 (493) ču· qʷisapí qu·?asi sini·ñi I wonder what the man did to the dog?
 /.. qʷis-·ap-(y)i· qu·?as-?i·sini-ñ-?i·/
 well! happen-CAUS-INDF adult-DEF dog-DEF

(494) qʷa·?a·q̥a· ču·ema

I wonder what the woman will be like?

/qʷa-·?a-·q̥a-(y)i· .../

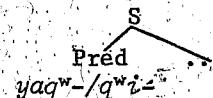
thus-FUT-INDF woman

- (495) *qu^maqⁱčħaxi^k ?una^k* I wonder how many years they had it
/q^{wi}i-m^a-qⁱi-čħ⁻ax-(y)i: ?u-na^k/
 which-..quantity-..years-TEM-INDF it-having.

- (496) *čuⁱ yaqiⁱ quⁱasi^k ku^witⁱ* I wonder which man stole it
/.. yaq^w-(y)i: quⁱ?as-?i.../ well! which-INDF adult-DEF steal

- (497) *čuⁱ ?unicm^uupwⁱ ic'axi^k* I wonder how long you're going to
/.. ?unic-m^up-wⁱitⁱ as-³ax-(y)i:-k/ be away for
 well! how long-absent for..-about to..-TEM-INDF-II

There is one difference between matrix relative clauses and sententially-subordinate ones. Nominal-bound matrix relative clauses never have a sister NP. This, of course, makes sense if matrix RC's are of the shape



That is, the matrix RC sentence is not dominated NP and hence cannot be associated with a NP sister.

A second sentential characteristic of relative clauses is that they themselves can dominate clauses, e.g. relative clauses as in (498) and (499) or oblique clauses as in (500).

- (498) *takⁱki^k [pihaⁱ q^waⁱapⁱitqⁱhaⁱ Obl[q^wicħixita]]*
/tak-[L]-si(n) pih-(y)aⁱ q^waⁱ-ap-?iⁱtq .. q^{wi}-c-?i:-si(x)-?iⁱtq/
 each-GRAD-MOM notice-CONT thus-CAUS-REL the which-at-go to..-MOM-REL

He always noticed what he was doing at the places he went to.

- (499) *[yaq^wiⁱcitqⁱ tħimⁱaqstiⁱ Sul[q^waⁱapitqat]]*
/yaq^w-iⁱ-c-?iⁱtqⁱ tħimⁱaqst-?iⁱ q^waⁱ-ap-?iⁱtq-?aⁱz/
 which-belonging to..-REL smart-DEF thus-CAUS-REL-PL

He's the smart one that the ones who are doing that (whaling) belong to. He's the leader of the whalers.

- (500) *?tⁱqħuk^w?aⁱqwiⁱs [q^wisⁱaⁱqħqs Obl[hiniⁱx]]*
/tⁱqħuk^w-aⁱqħ-(y)i:-s q^wisⁱ-aⁱqħ-qaⁱ-s hin.-?iⁱ(x)/
 tell-DUR-FUT-INDF-I do what-FUT-REL-I there(MOM)-outside(MOM)

I'm going to tell (you) what I'll do in order to get outside

A third sentential feature of relative clauses is that appropriate constituents can occur in cleft positions. We have already seen sentences in which the bound NP of a relative clause precedes the relative predicate (cf. (482) and (487) for example). However, in addition, nonbound NP's can precede the relative clause predicate, whether in nonnominal-bound relative clauses such as (501) or in nominal-bound relative clauses such as (502) and (503).

- (501) *qʷa·yi·č [qu·?as qʷa·?i·tq]* I wonder if they (dogs) are like
/qʷa·-(y)i:-č .. qʷa·?i·tq/ people are
 thus-INDF-INF adult thus-REL

- (502) *huktikin [qu·?asi qʷiyi·tq tʷu·cma]*
/huktik-(y)i-n qu·?as-?i· qʷi-(y)i-?i·tq .. /
 know-INDF-IP adult-DEF which-give..-REL
 We know what the man gave to the woman.

- (503) *huktiki·s [tʷu·cma ya·qʷitq xʷt qu·?as]*
/huktik-(y)i:-s .. yaqʷ-(č)iš [L]-?i·tq .. /
 know-INDF-I woman which-do to..-REL good (to) adult
 1. I know the woman whom the man is good to
 2. I know the man whom the woman is good to

Clearly, in sentences (502) and (503), the NP preceding the relative predicate cannot be a sister NP, because it is not bound to the relative pro-form. It could be there only if the relative clause is assumed to have the syntactic shape of a cleft construction.

In sentence (503), the RC-initial NP can be interpreted as either the subject or object of the relative clause. The first reading is the standard one, in which the bound NP occurs preceding the predicate either as a NP sister or due to an adjunct-predicate cleft. The second reading, which is equally acceptable, is also accounted for as an adjunct-predicate cleft construction, but in this case it is a cleft construction in which the nonbound relative clause adjunct (in this case the relative clause subject) precedes the relative predicate. Clefting of the nonbound adjunct in a nominal-bound RC can occur whether the nonbound adjunct is subject or object of the relative clause.

The above clefting characteristics of relative clauses leads to the fourth characteristic of RC's. Although the grammatical relation of a RC's bound referent is defined by the RC predicate's structure, the grammatical relation of a particular NP constituent within a RC is not uniquely identified as having a certain grammatical relation to the predicate. Just as with other types of clauses, there is no morphological signalling of case within relative clauses. In addition, due to word order variation, there is no necessarily present syntactic cue for grammatical relations. For example, it is not always clear whether a certain NP is coreferential to a nominal-bound relative predicate as in (503). Consider the following sentences and their readings.

(504) *hisšiñ [yaqk' upitq žu·cma]*

/his-ši(ñ) yaqʷ-k' up-?i·tq .. / hit-MOM which-like..-REL woman

1. He hit the one the woman likes
2. He hit the woman whom he likes
i/j

(505) *hisšiñ [žu·cma yaqk' upitq] DITTO (both readings)*

(506) *hiyimhiyi·s [yaſatitq hisša·?t žu·cma]*

/hayimhi-(y)i:-s yaqʷ-?at-?i·tq his-ši(ñ)-?at .. /

- not know-INDEF-I which-PASS-REL hit-MOM-PASS woman
1. I don't know the one whom the woman was hit by
 2. I don't know the woman whom he was hit by

(507) *hayimhiyi·s [žu·cma yaſatitq hisša·?t] DITTO (both readings)*

In (504) and (505), regardless of the position of *žu·cma*, that NP can be interpreted as either the nonbound relative clause subject or the bound relative clause object (identified as object by the governing suffix in the relative predicate). In (506) and (507), regardless of the position of *žu·cma*, that NP can be interpreted as either the nonbound patient subject of the relative clause or the bound relative clause agent oblique (identified as agent oblique by the presence of -'at and the absence of a governing suffix in the relative predicate).

Generally, such ambiguity of a NP's grammatical role in a relative clause concerns whether the NP is coreferential to the nominal-bound relative clause proform (*yaqʷ-* or *qʷi-*) or is subject of the relative

clause. Such ambiguity occurs when both NP's are third person. If either NP were first or second person, the pronominal affix attached to the relative predicate would indicate which NP were subject. In cases where there is ambiguity, it appears that disambiguation depends on linguistic context and the speakers' and listeners' knowledge of their world. For example, it is known that animate NP's generally have control (i.e. are active subjects or passive agent obliques) of inanimate NP's.

3.4.3. Coordinate Clauses

The following section concerns coordinate clauses. Complex clauses composed of two or more clauses of which at least two are not embedded in any other clause in the sentence are termed 'coordinate' clauses. This type of clause, which is very common in Kyuquot, is identified in one of the following ways. One of a pair of clauses is introduced by a particle, a conjunction, or both a particle and a conjunction. The predicate of one of a pair of clauses is affixed by a mood morpheme designating that clause as subordinate. Third, one of a pair of clauses includes a referential base, or a quoting predicate, or a temporal constituent referring to the content of the other clause. There are also coordinate constructions in which neither clause is marked as coordinate. In such cases, all clauses share some semantic or discourse-based characteristics lending cohesion to what otherwise might be interpreted as a set of independent sentences. Such characteristics include a shared coreferential subject, object, or other NP or an identical predicate or clause structure. The above sequence of coordinate clause types is ordered roughly by the degree of identification expressed through various linguistic cues. This sequence is followed in the following presentation.

3.4.3.1. Particle-cued Coordinate Clauses

Particle-cued coordinate clauses include ones beginning with *?uh?is* 'and', *wa'y* 'or', and *?in* 'that'. When a coordinate clause is headed by a particle, its predicate (affixed by the clause-level inflectional morphemes) follows that particle and precedes all adjuncts. Adjunct-predicate clefts do not occur in such a context. Evidently, only one non-

predicative constituent can precede the predicate.

The *?uh?is* particle is used mostly to conjoin NP's. It is also occasionally used to conjoin clauses (separated in the examples by a colon).

- (508) *Sapc' aqimy' up' xi·s : ?uh?is n'iinkimy' up'*
/sapc'-a-(q)imt'-u·p'-ak-(y)i:-s .. n'iink-(q)imt'-u·p/
 vanish-?·-round-CAUS-TEM-INDF-I and turn inside out-round-CAUS
 I turned it inside out and then back the other way

The second particle *wa'y* is much more common. It has as alternate forms *wi(·)y*, *wi*, and *wa(·)* and has a wide range of meaning as illustrated in the following sentences.

- (509) *yacuknah : way kamatqnah* Did he walk or run?
/yac-uk-na-ha .. kamatq-na-ha/ step-DUR-PAST-QUE .. run-PAST-QUE
- (510) *?athša·?nqu·č : wiy n'a·sša·?nqu·č* It got to be night, then day..
/?ath-ša(n)-?ak-qu:-č .. n'a·sša(n)-?ak-qu:-č/
 night-MOM-TEM-COND-INF .. day-MOM-TEM-COND-INF
- (511) *su·psi·k'ñqwin : wi·ma·sya·?c* We had them in soup and even
/su·psi:k'-ak-qu:-n .. ma·s·yaq'-i·c/ grilled
 soup-make..-TEM-COND-Tp .. grill..-ed-eat..

In general, *wa'y* is used to separate clauses which are in some sense opposed to one another; for example, as alternates in (509), as alternating events in (510), or as events graded along some continuum in which the marked clause is the more unexpected or surprising as in (511).

Both *wa'y* and *?uh?is* can serve to introduce matrix clauses as in the following example.

- (512) *wayha tihatip'ñqu·ška* After a pause I would again thrust down
/way-ha· tih-?atu-ip'-ak-qu:-s-ška/ my board
 or-again thin object-down-CAUS-TEM-COND-I-again

The inflecting particle *?in* is also used to identify a coordinate clause. It inflects for certain persons (I, II, II_p), moods (INF), and tenses (FUT). We have already observed *?in* in a complementizer role. In addition, it can serve as a meaning-bearing subordinating element

in a clause which is adjoined to a second clause whose predicate is not normally associated with a complement. In such a context, the function of ?in is contrastive or causal. The contrastive function is relatively rare but suggests that ?in may be etymologically related to ?ana- 'only' (and the Port Alberni Nootka ?ana- 'but' which has no other cognate in Kyuquot).

- (513) *xa?u·matk* : ?in *qi·t’ inamatk* ?uh It may have been another, but she
/xa?u·-matak .. qi·t’ i-na-matak ?uh/ must have lived long ago
 other-POSB .. long time-slightly-POSB it-ABS

There are at least three readings of ?in when serving a causal function. In the first, it marks the clause which is the known or inferred cause of or reason for some other event expressed in adjacent clause.

- (514) *c’usyit hu·* : ?in *xahinti·č* It's still dug up there, because it
/c’us-yit xah-int-(y)i:-č/ happened recently
 dig-traces of.. there .. now-PAST-INDF-INF

- (515) *wik’im ha?uk’p xah* : ?in *ta?it* Don't feed her now because she's sick
/wik’-i·-m ha?uk’-ap / not-IMPV-FUT eat(DUR)-CAUS now .. sick

In the second reading, ?in marks a clause which is the purpose for which the event expressed in an adjacent clause is performed. In such a future-oriented clause, the future morpheme associated only with ?in (i.e. -xi·) can, but does not necessarily, occur.

- (516) *ka·mitq’i·htints* : ?inti·s *qahsa·p’ t* I was chased to be killed
/ka·mitq’-i;h[L]-at-int-s ?in-xi·s qah-sa·p’-at/
 run-try to get..-PASS-PAST-I that-FUT-I die-MOMCAUS-PASS

- (517) *hiy’ahi·č* : ?inši wi·na They (came) there to invade/ resulting
/hiy’ahi-(y)i:-č ?in-ši .. .
 there-INDF-INF that-see (< ?in n’iši that see!) . invade

The last sentence is glossed twice to show the relationship between the second and third readings of ?in. Whereas the second or purpose reading looks forward to the outcome of an event, the third reading looks backward on the outcome or result of an event. In this latter reading, ?in marks a clause, which is typically independent, as the result of a

known or inferred cause. In such cases, ?in is never inflected for future tense.

- (518) nu•?aqšk She drank (the potion)
 /nu•?a-qš-ši(x)/
 comply-in vessel-MOM
 ?inši ?i•qšk ha• qu?asi Hence a person (in her womb) grew
 /?in-ši ?i•qš-ši(x) .. qu?as-i/ so-see! big-INC the adult-DEF
- (519) ?uya qm•č wi•k?atksí?ak't He wasn't being noticed then
 /?u-(y)i-?a:qš-(y)i:-č wi-k?atuk [L]-ši(x)-o ak'-at/
 it..time-FUT-INDF-INF not-notice..-MOM-TEM-PASS
 ?inši xi•qšk tana?k ha... So he paddled off far away
 /?in-ši xi-[L]-ši(x) tani-o ha-[L]/
 so-see! paddle-GRAD-MOM really-TEM there-EMPH

The perceived relation between sentences in such pairs is strong. Native speakers are often hard pressed to decide if ?in or ?inši should end the first sentence or begin the second, although confident that the sentences are independent.

Clauses headed by ?in when it has a cause or purpose reading can also be independent.

- (520) ?ins ?uchindmaqxi's su•tit I want to marry you (proposal)
 /?in-ši ?u-chi-nu(x)-maqxi-(y)i:-s sut-(č)i-[L]/
 since-I it-married to..-MOM-want to..-INDF-I you-do to..

- (521) ?imki n'aça ?acyum inhi It was so they could see the fisher-
 /?in-ši n'aç-(y)aç. ?ac-yu-m'inh-i/ men (that they had lamps)
 so-FUT see-CONT go out..-ed-PL-DEF

In the following excerpt from a text, a reason clause is closely followed by a result clause, both of which are introduced by ?in.

- (522) wi•kšaha•qmici's You'll be fine
 /wi-kšahi [L]-?a:qš-icu:s/
 ?inši ?aya ha?um ?ahku not..-wrong-FUT-IIp(IND)
 /?in-ši/ For there's lots of food here
 hi's ha'y.uwakqu for-see! much food here
 /hi's-ha'y'i-u(x)-o quis/ It's here when the tide goes out
 here-beach recede-at rock-TEM-COND

?inši k'ama y'a?is
/in-ši· k'am-(y)a· .../

Then it's full of butterclams
so-see! full-CONT butterclam

The last sentence in (522) is a result with respect to the third, but a reason with respect to the first.

In Nootka, a result or cause clause marked by ?in can follow the clause or sentence with which it is associated (as in the above examples) or it can precede as in (523).

- (523) ?ink nawič̓ : čimqstu·pi·k si·čit By visiting, you make me happy
/in-k nawa- i·či(?) čim.-aqst-u·p-(y)i:-k si-(č)it [L]/
since-II near-INC right-inside-CAUS-INDF-II I-do to..

3.4.3.2. Conjunction-cued Coordinate Clauses

There are two conjunctional predicates which accompany ?in in clauses which have characteristic paraphrases. These predicates are ?ac'i·s 'persist, despite' and ?unwi·x 'because, on account of'. In the case of ?ac'i·s, the paraphrases are illustrated by the following set of forms.

- (524) sihsa·?x : ?ac'i·s ?in wi·katkw She cried; yet no one noticed
/sih-si(?)-ak ... : wi-k-atuk [L]/ cry-MOM-TEM ... not-notice..

- (525) ?ac'i·s sihsa·?x : ?in wi·katkw Despite crying, no one noticed
Clauses beginning with ?ac'i·s are frequently independent as in (526).

- (526) m'a·ñm'a·yati·č He kept gnawing
/CVCHm'a-[L]-(y)a-ak-(y)i:-č/ IT-bite-GRAD-REP-TEM-INDF-INF
?ac'i·s ?in wi?at Yet there was nothing on it
/... wi-k-at/ despite that not-on surface

Whether independent or not, both ?ac'i·s and ?unwi·x are either variable or in transition with respect to their syntactic role. At times they behave like normal inflected predicates.

- (527) huktiki·s ?in m'iha I know it's raining
/huktik-(y)i:-s ... m'iha-(y)a-/ know-INDF-I that rain-CONT
?ac'i·sa·qxs ya·čsit But I'll go out anyways
/?ac'i·s-?a:qxs ya-[L]-či(?) / yet-FUT-I step-GRAD-MOM

At other times, they behave like particles associated with an inflected predicate.

- (528) *wi·naptaqintin*
/wi·nap- cit- at-int-in/

We stayed home

stay-in house-TEM-PAST-IP

?ac'i·s ?in habi·tatintin Bob ?acšinqu·n
/... ... habi·b- at-int-in .. ?ac-ši(?) -qu:-n/

despite that invite-PASS-FAST-IP Bob go out-MOM-COND-IP
 Even though Bob asked us to go out fishing with him

In the case of *?unwi·x*, the presence of *?in* is critical. If *?in* is present, the *?in*-marked clause is the reason or cause of a result. The *?unwi·x* predicate can introduce the result as in (529) or it may occur with *?in* in the reason clause as in (530).

- (529) *?unwi·x šuhšix : ?in m'ika·nt* The reason it rusted is that it
/?u-nwi·(?) šuh-ši(?) .. m'ik-(y)ka·-int/ rained
 it-because of... rust-MOM that rain-CONT-PAST

- (530) *šuhšix : ?unwi·x ?in m'ika·nt* It rusted because it rained

Both *?unwi·x* and *?ac'i·s* predicates can occur in matrix clauses whether or not *?in* is present and whether or not a subordinate or coordinate clause is present.

Consider now the regular conjunctive predicates. Syntactically, they are like any complement-taking predicates requiring coreferential subjects, except that they are perhaps more likely to be interpreted as a coordinate clause within a compound sentence. This is, however, not necessary. Clauses with conjunctive head predicates can serve as independent matrix clauses with or without an associated coordinate clause-mate. The predicates here considered conjunctive include *qʷahtə-* 'but, nevertheless', *?inhi-* 'but, only', *?ahʔa-* 'and then', and *?whtas* 'and then'. Like other predicates, they can serve as matrix predicates as in (531) and (532), or as predicates of coordinate clauses as in (533) and (534). They do not however appear to serve as the predicate of the first of a set of coordinate clauses, unless the conjunction in fact has all the subsequent coordinate clauses within its scope.

- (531) *hayimhiyi's qʷi·hw' abə·q̥xi·k* I don't know what you'll do with it
/hayimhi-(y)i:-s qʷi-hw' ab [L]-?a:q̥x-(y)i:-k/
 not know-INDF-I what-use..-FUT-INDF-II
?inħa·?ħim ?u?a·bħw' But just be careful
/inħi-ħa- i-m ?u-a-bħw/ but-TEM-IMPV-FUT it-take care of..
- (532) *?uħtasayin watsix* Then we went home
/?uħtas-a-(y)i:-n wat-ši(ħ)/ then-INDF-Ip go home-MOM
- (533) *ħ'upā·t tami : qʷaħta·ħ ha?uk* It was hot (fish) yet he ate it
/ħ'up-(y)a-?at .. qʷaħta-ħ .. / hot-CONT-on really yet-TEM eat
- (534) *m'atħsa·?ħ : ?ah?a·ħ m'iħxa·?ħ* It got cold and started to rain
/m'at-ħi(ħ)-?at?ah?a-?at m'iħ-ħi(ħ)-?at/
 cold-MOM-TEM and-TEM rain-MOM-TEM

The predicate *?ah?a-* may be the same morpheme as the deictic meaning 'there'. Used as a conjunctival predicate, it conjoins two simultaneous or noncausally-linked events. In contrast, *?uħtas* is typically used to link temporally-sequential events.

Few reasons exist for distinguishing conjunctival predicates from other predicates. At present, three present themselves: the variability concerning the position of clause-level inflection (on the conjunctival predicate or the predicate it precedes), the tendency to occur within a conjoined clause, and finally the tendency to phonological degrading. Within a relatively formal but not forced speech style such as story-telling, conjunctival predicates as a class tend to be pronounced in truncated forms: *wa'y* as *wi*, *wi*, *wa*; *?uh?iš* as *?uh?iš*, *hiš*, *?iš*; *?unwiħ* as *?iħiż*; *qʷaħta·ħ* as *qʷa·(ħ)t*, *tħax*; *?ah?a·ħ* as *ħa·ħ*; *?uħtas* as *?uħs*; *?in-niħsi* as *?inħi(·)*; and finally any of *?unu·ħ* *?in*, *qʷaħta·ħ* *?in*, *?ah?a·ħ* *?in*, or *?inħa·ħ* *?in* as *ħin*. Such massive phonological contraction is not otherwise characteristic of such a speech style.

3.4.3.3. Other Cued Coordinate Clauses

There are coordinate clauses where one clause is semantically subordinate and is identified as such by its mood. Moods bearing such a function include *-qu*: COND, *-qa-* SUB (subordinate), and *-ah* PURP (purp-

osive). The subordinate clause can be sentence-initial as in (535) or sentence-final as in (536) and (537).

- (535) ?ath̚sa·?k̚qu : wi·na·in When night falls, we'll invade
 / ?ath̚-si(?) - ak̚-qu: wi-na- i-n/ night-MOM-TEM-COND invade-IMPV-IP
- (536) n'aci·č̚ si·č̚it : hisimyisq̚ He saw me when I was working at the
 / n'aca-ci·č̚ si-(č̚)it [L] his.-mat-e-is-qa-s/ beach
 see-INC L-do to... there-move about-at beach-SUB-I
- (537) hu?ac̚ci?in : hininha'n Let's go back to look for it
 / hu?a-ca-si(?) - i-n hin.-inh-a:-n/ back-to-MOM-IMPV-IP there(MOM)-
 seek..-PURP-IP

Any of these mood-marked clauses can be sententially independent as well. Therefore, they are classed as coordinate rather than true subordinate clauses when adjoining another clause in a compound sentence.

There are also sentences in which coordinate clauses may be said to be marked by having a nonsubordinate clause which is headed by a referential or quoting predicate. In the referential type, the 'subordinate' clause has a predicate bound to the referential predicate of the non-subordinate clause.

- (538) qʷa·?apintat̚ : hu·thuri That's what they were doing: dancing
 / qʷa - ap-int-?a-t̚ ... / thus-CAUS-PAST-PL dance

In the quoting type, the 'subordinate' clause is a direct quote, signalled as such by a predicate of saying, generally wa - 'say'.

- (539) mamp̚kʷa·qñin hit̚ : wa·?aki's "Let's work here", I said
 / mamp̚-uk-?a-qñ-in .. wa -?a-(y)i:-s/ work-DUR-FUT-IP .. say-TEM-
 INDF-I

As in other cases, the quoting and the quoted clause can be conjoined in either order, although the wa - clause tends to be sentence-final. In addition, the two clauses may occur as independent but sequential sentences. Quoting clauses may also occur between quoted clauses as in English.

- (540) hu?ac̚ci?k̚qu : wa·?ak̚ ha· ; "When we go back", said the man,
 / hu?a-ca-si(?) - ak̚-qu: -n wa -?a- / back-at-MOM-TEM-COND-IP say-TEM
 ?uya·?kin ha·m̚iñ "we'll go see (at that time)"
 / ?u-(y)i -?a-in .. / it..time, TEM-IP watch

There is another way in which *wa*⁻ is like a referential or relative predicate. Like them, and unlike other predicates, *wa*⁻ can be affixed by the indefinite mood -(y)i[:] to form a content question.

- (541) ču· *wa*⁻*yik* *nu*⁻*čit* What did you say to us?
 /... *wa*⁻(y)i[:]-*k* *nuh*-*(č)**čit* [L]/ well! say-INDF-II Ip-do to..

There is a final sentence type of marked coordinate clause, the temporal sequence type. Kyuquot has a set of morphemes used to sequence events. When a clause is thus marked, it is likely that that clause will be conjoined to a second clause expressing an event asserted to be in a particular temporal relation to the event asserted in the temporally-marked clause. There are three relations: before, after, and simultaneous. A before clause is introduced by *wikyu* 'have not' as in (542) and an after clause by *hawa*?[~] 'finish' as in (543).

- (542) č*i*?*akw*a?*p*?*qk* : *wikyu*?*qu* *ku*⁻*čit* She'll cut it before she
 /č*i*-*(?a)**kw*a-*ap*-*a*:*qk* *wik-yu*?*qu*: .../ cleans it
 cut-completely-CAUS-FUT not---ed-COND

- (543) *hawa*?*qs* *ha*?*uk* : *naqša*?*xi*?s After I ate, I had a drink
 /*hawi*-*at*-*qa*?-*s* ... *naq*-*ši*(*X*)-*at*-(y)i[:]-*s*/
- finish-TEM-SUB-I eat(DUR) drink-MOM-TEM-INDF-I

A simultaneous time clause is introduced by *mit*⁻ 'same as' or a predicate which includes either -(q)*h* 'meanwhile' or -*p*?*ičh* 'while'.

- (544) č*iya* : *mita*?[~] *ku*⁻*čit* She cut it as she cleaned it
 /č*i*-(y)a[:] *mit-hi*-*at*/ cut-CONT same-DUR-TEM clean(fish)

- (545) *ci*?*qp*?*ičh* : *ha*?*uk* She talked while eating
 /*ciq*-[L]-*p*?*ičh* .../ speak-GRAD-while eat(DUR)

The temporal affix is attached to the predicate of the clause which is the 'ground' during which the event expressed in the other clause takes place. Contrast the temporal relations in the following two sentences.

- (546) *ci*?*qi*?*q* : *wa*?*ičh* He was talking in his sleep
 /CVC#*ciq*-[L]-(y)a[:] *wa*?*ič*-(q)*h*/ IT-talk-GRAD-REP sleep-meanwhile

- (547) *watyu*?*qh* : *wa*?*ič* While he was at home, he slept
 /*wat*-*yu*?-*(q)**h* .../ go home---ed-meanwhile

Other temporal relations, such as those of duration or a particular time-point, are expressed by temporal predicates. Duration which includes the present time is expressed by a temporal predicate affixed by '-ak TEM 'at the time'.

- (548) *qi·q?i·čħsa?n t'i·cnaf?* He's been playing ball a long time
/qi·-q?i·čħ-ši(n)-'ak t'i-(c)snaf?/ long..years-MOM-TEM throw-handle..

When an event occurred or will occur a certain length of time from the present, it is expressed as a clause governed by either a negative or a *q?iya-* 'when' clause, the former emphasizing the nonoccurrence of the event in the interim and the latter emphasizing its ultimate occurrence.

- (549) *n'upq?i·čħaq wik hini·čħ* He came a year ago. He hasn't
/n'up-q?i·čħ-'ak .. hin.-.i:-ši(n)/ come for a year
 one..year-TEM not there(MOM)-go tq..-MOM

- (550) *n'upq?i·čħa·qħ wik hini·čħ* He will come in a year (from now)

- (551) *n'upq?i·čħaq q?iya·tq hini·čħ* He came a year ago. He hasn't come
 for a year. It's a year since he came.

When an event occurred or will occur for a certain duration or series of time-points in the past or future (but not in the present), it is normally expressed in a sentence with either a matrix or an oblique temporal predicate. The matrix predicate optionally takes any or all of the tense affixes.

- (552) *qi·?akint t'i·cnaf?* He played ball for a long time
/qi·-'ak-int t'i-(c)snaf?/ long-TEM-PAST throw-handle..

- (553) *qi·?a·qħi·k hu·ħbu?* You'll be dancing a long time
/qi·-'a:qħ-(y)i:-k .. / long-FUT-INDF-II dance

When the sentence describes a past event, it often includes a negative clause indicating that the event no longer occurs.

- (554) *takšiħints n'ač?at pi·pa : wikiċċi?ns* I used to always read the
/tak-ši(n)-int-s-n'ač?-at .. wikiċċi(n)-'ak-s/, paper
 each-MOM-PAST-I. see-on surface paper not-INC-TEM-I

In summary, the above types of coordinate clauses are identified

as such in one of the following ways: a conjunctival particle or predicate, a subordinate mood, or a referring, quoting, or temporal predicate.

3.4.3.4. Noncued Coordinate Clauses

The vast majority of coordinate clauses are not cued as such.

However, most coordinate clauses do share the same tense, mood, and voice (i.e. unmarked and active). They also commonly share a coreferential subject and are linked by some semantic relation. For example, the second clause can indicate an event subsequent in time to the first and often a result of the first. It can constitute a cause, explanation, or expansion of the first clause. Finally, it could repeat the assertion of the first clause in order to express emphasis, duration in time, or extension in space.

Coordinate clauses, however, need not agree in tense or mood.

Consider the following example.

- (555) *?ihak : k'insa·p' tkʷincəs* She's drying; hers must have got
/iħ-ak² k' in-sa-p² at-uk-into-a-sy/ broken
 cry-DUR break-MOMCAUS-PASS-POSS-PAST-INF-EVID

Nor need they agree in voice. The difference in voice is not necessarily a device to maintain subject coreferentiality in coordinate clauses. Both voice and subject referents can differ in a pair of such clauses as in (556).

- (556) *hini·c'ak : ?ukʷi·tʷic² atat pi·s*
/hi-ni-č-ak-hu-(č)i-tʷitʷ-as-’at-at-pi-s/
 there(MOM)-carry.along..-TEM it-make..-about to...-PASS-PL

They took her; fish was going to be dried (by them).

In addition, the subject of one coordinate clause can be coreferential to the object of the other, even in a sentence where the passivization of one clause would have rendered the subjects coreferential. Finally, there are sentences in which there is no point of NP coreferentiality.

- (557) *kimksi·čay : y'imqimy'uxiš* Wake up! Something terrible has
/kimk-ši(č)-i-čay y'im-(q)imt'-u(č)-i-š/ happened!
 awake-MOM-IMPV-PL-VOC unsatisfactory-around-MOM-IND

(558). *?ak̚a hinin : ?ah?ə·n̚ hisuk̚ nani·t* Two came; the rest stayed
two there(MOM)-come then all-DUR-ITEM peaceable-at home

There is little syntactic motivation for identifying such clauses as conjoined rather than independent other than the minimizing of the inter-clause pause for the conjoined clauses. This is, however, not a reliable sign of coordination. Words, even if separated by clause or sentence boundaries, can fuse as a result of consonant deletion and vowel elision. Clauses are identified as coordinate if they involve much redundancy or refer to temporally-sequential or causally-related events. On the other hand, clauses which are climactic, especially ones marked by *si* (cf. section 4.2.1), are usually independent or at least sentence-initial.

3.5. Discourse

The preceding sections have surveyed the rules of Kyuquot sentence structure, rules largely stateable in relation to sentences as independent entities. There are, however, sentences, such as those including passive or conjunction-headed constructions, whose grammaticality is partly a function of the discourse context. In this section are examined a number of other phenomena which are influenced by discourse context. These include anaphora, focusing strategies, and favorite sentence types.

3.5.1. Anaphora

In anaphora, a constituent is omitted or replaced by another form when coreferential or identical (in form and/or sense) to some constituent prior to it or anticipated in the clause, sentence, or discourse context. The constituent's head can belong to any semantic class and any syntactic constituent-type.

3.5.1.1. Non-NP Anaphora

A non-NP constituent can be referred to or anticipated (i.e. symbolized as X...A or A...X respectively, where A is *anaphor* and X is *antecedent*) by a referential or relative constituent across clause or

sentence boundaries. By the shape of the referring root, the semantic class of the antecedent (or its head) can be identified (cf. sections 3.4.1 and 3.4.2). The verbal, adjectival, and quantity anaphors denote either the particular instance (as in (559)) or an equivalent instance (as in (560)) of the event.

- (559) *qʷis'ak : m' iñša·?*
 /*qʷis-*'*ak m' iñ-ši(?)-'**ak/* Then it happened: it started to rain

- (560) *kamitqša?*_{Mary} : *qʷis'akka Jo* Mary started to run; Jo did too
 /*kamitqʷ-ši(?)-'**ak ... qʷis-*'*ak-ka* ... / run-MOM-TEM ... happen-TEM again

Similarly, *qʷa* 'thus' can indicate comparisons as in *Jo is like her mother* or identity as in *That's how the teacher is*. Temporal and locative bases indicate the particular case as in *the time when she ran away* or *That's where it rained* (unless affixed by -(y)i: INDF). All relative anaphors affixed by -(y)i: INDF indicate an unparticularized (but potentially particular) case as in *whatever she did*, *whenever it rains*, or *however many times he told the story*.

A language's permanent registry (cf. Hinds 1978) includes those anaphors whose referents are permanently and uniquely specified for all speakers. In Kyuquot, such anaphors can be universal, e.g. those of first and second person pronominals (referring to speaker and listener respectively), language-specific, e.g. deictics such as *?aŋ'i* 'there, near the listener', or culture-specific. For example, a verbal anaphor can refer to a unique behavior such as playing tricks if associated with a particular NP participant such as Raven in (561).

- (561) *qʷis'akka qu?*^ʔ*išim'm* Raven was at it again (up to his old tricks)

Also, an anaphor can have a culturally-preferred antecedent if none is specified in the discourse. For example, a quantity of temporal repetitions is understood as referring to four times in culturally-important (e.g. sacred or powerful) contexts.

- (562) *qu·m' ap' t' k' aphačišt' p tup' ab'i* That many times he slammed the water (with the magic hair)
 /*qʷi-m' a-p' it' k' aphačišt'-ap tup' ab-i*/ which...quantity...times slam-on water-CAUS sea-DE

Anaphora can consist of ellipsis, i.e. the absence of the constituent. Ellipsis can be rightward (...X...Ø...), i.e. with a rightward constituent absent, or leftward (...Ø...X...), i.e. with a leftward one absent. Leftward ellipsis (of predicates here) serves to build suspense and increase a constituent's definiteness and specificity.

- (563) ?uh?atnaqu-č
 /?u-h-(q)h- at-na-qu:-č/
 ?ah?a-x hiyi-xwati
 /?ah?a-č ah hiyi-xwat-?i/
 ?u-šsu-qk ?in qwa?ap'ah't
 /... qwa-č ap'-ah'-at/
pisa-p ?u-kw' t'an'a-si
 /pis.- (y)a-č ap .. t'an'a-is-?i/ move-CONT-CAUS .. child-DIM-DEF

It was done by them (sailors)
 it-ABS-SIM-PASS-PAST-COND-INF

There was a mad one
 there-TEM mad-DEF

He was mad that she was treated thus
 mad that thus-CAUS-TEM-PASS

They were bouncing the baby around
 move-CONT-CAUS .. child-DIM-DEF

Rightward ellipsis commonly occurs when a predicate is old information as in questions based on previous assertions or responses to question or repetitions of assertions.

- (564) hūtikša?n qa?u-čt_i
 /hūtik-ši(n)-č qa?u-c-(č)i-č/
 ?u-šnaħka hūtikšen; -i
 /?u-š-na-ha-ča hūtik-ši(n)/ know-MOM-TEM basket-make..
 ha?a, ?u-šinti-čna
 /... ?u-š-(q)h-int-(y)i:-č-na/ some-PAST-QUE-again know-MOM
 Yes, some did.
 yes some-SIM-PAST-INDF-INF-again

She learned how to make baskets

Did anyone else learn how?
 some-PAST-QUE-again know-MOM

An elliptical (predicate) anaphor can have an antecedent far removed in discourse; for example, ten sentences away:

There are also zero anaphors which have no literal antecedent but have a referent recoverable from permanently registered information or from information provided by the discourse. Consider the following.

- (565) ču. xā?u?a?qkska
 /.. xā?u-?a:qk-s-xa'/

Well, I'll (tell) another (story)
 well! another-FUT-I-again

- (566) xā?u?niška n'i n'ičp'a's
 /xā?u-č xk-?is-xa'/

Little Sparrow could do it again
 other-TEM-DIM-again Sparrow

- (567) *e'awa·km'inhintitats pi's.* They each ate one fish
/e'awa-akʷ-m'inh-int-it-at-s ... / one-DUR-PL-PAST-IND-PL-IND

Sentence (565) occurred between stories. Sentence (566) occurred story-finally. The listener is assumed to understand the plot-line, Sparrow's revengeful attack on Elk. The last sentence occurred mid-conversation. Eating fish is the only possible interpretation, given that the participants have just been presented with fish at a feast.

Within a sentence, non-NP ellipsis is generally rightward.

- (568) *kamitqša?n Mary : ?uh?is Jo* Mary ran, and so did Jo
/kamitqʷ-si(n)-aʔ... / run-MOM-TEM Mary and Jo
~~* Mary : ?uh?is kamitqša?n Jo~~

Other examples of rightward ellipsis of predicates across coordinate clauses follow.

- (569) *?uy'i·p. John cuw'it : Bill hisit.* John caught, coho, and Bill
/?u-y'i·p ... / it-obtain .. coho .. sockeye

- (570) *hayimhiyi's yaqi·hinin : ?uhqu Mary : ?uhqu Sara*
/hayimhi-(y)i:-s yaqʷ-(y)i: hin.-in ?u-h-qu: ... ?u-h-qu: ... /
 not know-INDF-I which-INDF there(MOM)-come it-ABS-COND .. it-ABS-COND ..
 I don't know who came; maybe it was Mary or Sara

Leftward ellipsis occurs only if the antecedent is also present in prior discourse.

- (571) *na?a·nti's mixtuk ?i·xʷa* I heard an old person laughing
/na?a·-int-(y)i:-s mixt-uk ?i·xʷ-(y)a/
 hear-PAST-INDF-I old-DUR laugh-CONT

wik mixtuk : t'an'a's ?i·xʷa It wasn't an old person; it
/... mixt-uk t'an'a?-is ?i·xʷ-(y)a/ was a child. laughing
 not old-DUR child-DIM laugh-CONT

The second sentence of (571) would be ungrammatical in isolation.

Ellipsis of predicates whose inflectional affixes are not identical is generally ungrammatical. However, the presence of *yú·qʷa* 'also' or *-ka* 'again' in the second clause or sentence renders such ellipsis

acceptable.

- (572) *?walya·q̥ni·s : ?ah·a·ñ* Mary I went home and Mary did too
/wak-yu-?a:qñ-(y)i:-s ... / go home--ed-FUT-INDF-I, then ..

- (573) *walya·q̥ni·s : yu·q̥wa·ñ* Mary I went home and Mary did too

3.5.1.2. Nonelliptical NP Anaphora

NP anaphora parallels in some ways that of non-NP's. There are, however, also anaphoric suffixes, for first and second person subject and for third person plural (in any grammatical relation). In isolation, first and second person affixes must not be omitted (at least in matrix predicates). However in discourse, they can be omitted if coreferential to the previous matrix subject.

- (574) *?u·šn'ahints* I looked for things
/?u·š-n'a·h-int-s/ some-seek..-PAST-I
- ?ink'ap_ ?inkukʷqs* I kept my fire burning
/?inkʷ-ap ?inkʷ-uk-qa-s/ fire-CAUS fire-POSS-SUB-I

- (575) *hibakin yu·q̥wa* We were also there
/hib-añ-in ... / there-TEM-IP also
- ?u·y'at̥kʷ_ at̥* We looked after them (there)
/?u·š-at̥uk-?a-t/ some-take care of..-PL

First person subject affixes can also be absent if subject of a response to a second person subject question.

- (576) *?u·šnak ?u·ša·wñ saštup* Did you ever find any animals?
/?u·š-na-k ?u·š-a-wi(ñ)[L] sa-(š)tup/ some-PAST-II(QUE) some-find..
k'uk'uhw'is ?u·wiñint_ crawl..being
/.. ?u-a-wi(ñ)[L]-int/ I found a seal
seal it-find..-PAST

In subordinate clauses with coreferential subjects, appropriate first and second person affixes are obligatory for relative clauses and complements marked as such by particle or mood. Ellipsis occurs for subjects of unmarked complements coreferential to the matrix subject.

In coordinate clauses, inflectional affixes (including pronominal

ones) can occur in any or all of the clauses. Again, rightward ellipsis is the general case.

- (577) wat̪sa·?n̪qu·n : ?ayasi·k ?i·h We went home, having finished a lot
 /wat̪-ši(?)-[~]ak-qu:-n ?aya-si.kw.../
 go home-MOM-TEM-COND-IP many-finish.. really

- (578) sami·q č'i·ta·yi·su : nisip You can dig up horseclams and
 /... č'i·t-(y)a·-(y)i:-su: .../
 horseclam clamdig-CONT-INDF-IIp boil

In discourse, leftward ellipsis must have a previous antecedent as well.

- (579) hiš?a·q̄niš ma?as : wa?ak "We'll all live together", he said
 /hiš-?a:q̄n-n-iš ... wa?-ak/
 hisuk qacc'a : hišukʷ?a·q̄niš "There'll be three of us"

It is also common to have all inflectional morphemes present.

- (580) wat̪sa·?n̪niš : wat̪sa·p·n̪niš We're home; someone brought us.
 /wat̪-ši(?)-[~]ak-n-iš wat̪-sa·p-[~]at-n-iš/
 go home-MOM-TEM-IP-IND go home-MOMCAUS-PASS-IP-IND

First and second person subjects are expressed by independent stems as well: *siy'a·q* 'I', *suw'a·q* 'you (s)', *naw'a·q* 'we', and *suw'w'a·q* 'you (p)'. These serve predominately as topical predicates and can be adjuncts only in contrastive clauses.

- (581) siy'a·qinti·s kučit I'M the one that cleaned it
 /siy'a·q-int-(y)i:-s .../
 I-PAST-INDF-I clean (fish)
- (582) ?inħa·xi·s kučit siy'a·q But I (not him) cleaned it!
 /?inħi-[~]ak-(y)i:-s .../
 but-TEM-INDF-I clean (fish) I

First and second persons also have object forms (pronominal-(č)it[L]) and agent oblique forms (pronominal-(q)ħ-[~]at) which can serve as adjuncts or obliques and as topical predicates (cf. sections 3.2.2, 3.3.2.2 - 3).

The most fully specified third person NP's are those which are pragmatically unique. These include place names, e.g. *qaʔuk* or *mitu·ni*, band names, e.g. *qa'y'uk·wath* or *nuča·tath*, the sea *c'aʔak*, and the Creator (Supreme Being) *ha·tap ha·w'iți*, but not the sun (as in many

languages). In Kyuquot, the sun and moon have the same name : *hup'at* 'round thing on fabric-like surface'. The band or place names can also refer to an individual, i.e. a temporarily registered location or inhabitant.

(583) *wi·na yu·tu·bath* The Uclulet(s) attacked
 /.. *yu·tu·t-·ath/* attack. Uclulet-inhabitant(s) of..

Hypocoristic kin terms (i.e. ones unaffixed by -?i·qsu '..kin') are uniquely specified if applicable to only one of the speaker's living relatives. For example, if only one grandparent is living, then all the children and grandchildren can use the term *nani* 'granny, grandpa' uniquely to refer to that one.

Because it is inherited, a proper personal name is not permanently registered. It must be validated, i.e. ceremonially invested with the referring function, each time it is applied to or taken on by (depending on the age and family position of) a different individual. It can refer to only one living individual at a time. Hence, unlike a common NP such as *si·cpax* 'cougar', a proper name is not subject to a rapid turnover of referents and cannot refer (generically) to a set of entities. The privilege of bearing a unique name is reserved for humans, their pets, the places and landmarks of interest to humans, and their personal enduring creations, such as songs, stories, games, and large and/or ceremonial objects, e.g. masks, copper plates, canoes, and even food vessels. One area of uncertainty concerns language-using mythical beings such as Bear Woman or Deer, who have names of the form animal-mythical male (female)..., suggesting that there is only one male and female for each mythical species, e.g. one Bear and one Bear Woman. Yet stories often involve groups such as the Frog children or the Wolf pack, suggesting that these beings are not uniquely specified. Nevertheless, this is not an entirely satisfactory conclusion. It is hard to imagine more than one Raven (the trickster hero).

* Most individual entities have no unique name but are designated by a class name such as *mawič* 'deer', *t'at'u·s* 'star', or *himw'ic* 'story' which is made to specify an individual by the presence of -?i· DEF and/or the article *ha·* as in (*ha·*) *mawiči* 'a (that) certain deer'.

However, there may be coreferential NP's, either subsequent or prior to the one in which referentiality is established, which have no such marking.

(584) ?ucacič macwa

Go to Matswa (a certain house)

/?u-ca-ši(n)-i-[L]-č .../

it-go to..-MOM-IMPV-EMPH-PL ...

hiničkat maht'i

They went into the house

/hin.-?i:-čak-čač .../

there(MOM)-go to..-TEM-PL house

Even in the first sentences of stories, the initial NP introducing each character can be formally definite or particular but semantically non-specific, e.g. the prince in (585) or the stepmother and the boy in (586).

(585) ?uhtasič tucnačkš hač hačw itki The prince took a wife

/?uhtas-(y)ičč tuc-načkši(n) .. hač hačw itki-?i .../

then-INDF-INF woman-having..-MOM the youth-DEF

(586) p' ičičhač ?uvičqsa That stepmother was really bad

/p' ič-či-či(n) .. ?uvičqsa-?i .../ bad-INC the stepmother-..-kin-
DEF

?anačkp řamti sičp'a hačw itki She gave the boy only the

/?ana-načk-čap ... hačw itki-?i .../ name Scabies

only-having..-CAUS name Scabies youth-DEF

NP's used to denote individuals are either kinship, gender, or community position (e.g. species or title but not occupation) terms or nominalized behaviors or attributes such as *mixtukʷi* 'the old one' or *č'ayixinti* 'the ones who picked berries'. NP's are also commonly expressed by a quantifier, quantity, or relative clause, e.g. *čaʔu-* 'other', *č'awač* '(the) one', or *yaqchintiq* 'the one he married'. Repetition of NP's is avoided except in sentences which are climactic, i.e. especially salient to the plot of a particular discourse.

In summary, NP anaphors are distributed as follows. Uniquely specified names occur in an introduction, after a suspense-building anaphoric introduction, and at sub-plot climaxes. At such climaxes and in contexts where a referent is explicitly reintroduced, one typically uses an epithetic NP, a formally indefinite NP, or a pronominal deictic such as *?ahku* 'this, that (one)'. In contrastive contexts, the

deictic ?uh. 'he, she, it, that' can serve as an anaphoric adjunct or more commonly a topical NP predicate. Consider the following set of sentences from a story concerning Mink and his identification as the father of a girl's new infant.

(587) č'a·stimo ?uchink

Mink married her

/.. ?u-chi-nu(?) /

.. it-married to..-MOM

?un'a·h ha· tup'ab hit
/?u-n'a·h /

He was looking for (food) in the sea
it-seek.. the sea there

si t apsča·?k hu·
/.. t aps-ši(?) - ak .. /

Well! He dove there!

CLIMAX dive-MOM-TEM over there

ha?ukša?k ?uh
/ha?uk-ši(?) - ak ?u-h/

Only HE ate (not his wife or baby)

eat(DUR)-MOM-TEM it-ABS

wikt' im hay' ahp
/wik-t' im hay' ah- ap/

He never brought anything

not..times there-CAUS

The first is the climactic sentence of the sub-plot concerning the seeking of the father and the forced marriage. The rest are from the sub-plot concerned with testing the father as a food-provider. Within this latter sub-plot (encompassing 30 sentences), Mink is generally unspecified, except for one instance each of ha· and ?uh (given above) and one of n'uq'i·qs 'father'.

3.5.1.3. NP Ellipsis

Ellipsis, i.e. zero anaphora, is more commonly rightward than leftward across sentence boundaries. Consider the following sentence containing three zero anaphors, the heroine ('she'), the clams, and the children, all previously introduced.

(588) ?ayi·p hu· : hin·k : ha?uk·wp. She got a lot of clams, went in,
/?aya-i:p .. hin.-i·?i(?) ha?uk- ap/ and fed her kids
many-obtain.. over there there(MOM)-go in house eat(DUR)-CAUS

Rightward ellipsis can occur even when noncoreferential NP's are introduced and then denoted anaphorically. No linguistic device or form signals the change in reference relations. Consider the following

sequence of sentences. Square brackets indicate the sentence numbers within the story.

(589) *n'ink' aqsa?n ka'u'k' wath_k*
[93] /*n'ink' aq-si(n)-'ak .. /*

The Clayoquots were up in arms
fight-MOM-TEM

[111] *hini-pšu?nat_i ga'y uk'wth_k*
/ *hin.-i:p-si(n)-'ak-?a·t .. /*

They reached Kyuquot_j
there(MOM)-obtain..-MOM-TEM-PL

[115] ?aniyi·č ūahu'sath_k wiwip'k
/ *?ani-(y)i:-č .. /*

Only the Ahousats didn't want to go
only-INDF-INV .. not want

[121] ?ana·n_k : ?gnik' wik
/ *?ani-'ak .. . /*

They were the only ones
only-TEM only not

[122] ?whatas w'aca?n i w'aca?n
/ .. w'a-si(n)-'ak .. /

Then they_i all attacked (by sea)
then ambush-MOM-TEM

[123] t'icksa?n ma?asinti i/j
/ *t'ick-si(n)-'ak ma?as-int-i /*

The people_{i/j} roared
thunder-MOM-TEM tribe-PAST-DEF

[124] pu·qñ'ak_j hu: : hita·qñ'k
/ *pu-·aqñ-'ak .. hita-·aqñ-'ak /*

They_j ran together into the forest
run(PL)-inside-TEM .. there(MOM)-
inside-TEM

The sentences between [93] and [114] have subjects coreferential to the Clayoquots and those between [115] and [121] have ones coreferential to the Ahousats.

Leftward ellipsis, which is less common intersententially, is used to build suspense as in the following introduction to a story.

(590) *?iqša?n : ku'atitka*
/*?iq-si(n)-'ak ku'at-'ak-na:/*

They did the same thing every morning
same-MOM-TEM morning-TEM-again

?aya qu?as
/ .. . /

There were lots of people (at it)
many adult

wa'ki·km'itot si·čparm'it ha'ukst'ak There were wolverines and
cougars taking turns
/ *wa'ki·k-m'i·t-?a·t si·čpar-m'i·t ha'uk-(c)st'ak /*
wolverine-mythical male..-PL cougar-mythical male.. back-recip.

Within one sentence, ellipsis is virtually obligatory when there is more than one coreferential third person subject, although an

anaphoric deictic, pronominal, or article is also permitted.. A uniquely specified proper name cannot coocur with a coreferential epithetic NP. However, repetition of the proper name or of the plural (third person) affix is acceptable (the former being restricted to elicited sentences).

- (591) wiksa?x Bill ?u·kʷt Joe : ?ah?a·x Bill ?u·kʷt Roger
 /x'ik-ši(x)-?ah .. ?u-(č)iž [L] .. ?ah?a-?ah/
 punch-MOM-TEM Bill it-do to... Joe then-TEM Bill .. Roger
 Bill punched Joe and then he punched Roger

- (592) qu·?asi·čat : wiki·čat sini·x They're people, not dogs
 /qu·?as-(y)i:-č-?a·t wík-(y)i:-č-?a·t ../
 adult-INDF-INF-PL not-INDF-INF-PL dog

Within a sentence, NP ellipsis can also occur across clause boundaries. In coordinate clauses, leftward and rightward ellipsis can be found in unmarked and marked clauses and in initial and final clauses. The following example has a paraphrase in which the two coordinate clauses are in the reverse order. The angled brackets indicate that the NP is acceptable in either position.

- (593) kawi·či <qu·?asi> nu·hit : qʷiyá·tq hínin <qu·?asi>
 /kawá-i·či(x) qu·?as-i·nuh-(č)iž [L] qʷi-(y)a-?i·tq hin.-in ../
 near-INC adult-DEF we-do to... which..time-REL there(MOM)-come
 The man visited us when he came

In a similar pattern, the plural affix -?a·t/ can appear in only one of a set of coordinate clauses.

- (594) matšíx : t' aqp'ičatat They flew straight down there
 /mat-ší(x) t' aq-p'ič-?a·t/ fly-MOM straight-at edge-TEM-PL

- (595) ?inkw*i*?tat : puxšíx They made fire and blew on it
 /?inkw-(č)i-č-?a·t/ fire-make..-PL blow-MOM

When a clause includes a NP which is coreferential to one in an embedded clause, anaphora is obligatory in at least one clause. This holds whether the embedded clause is oblique, complement, or relative.

- (596) nam'ačší <Bill> [t' ičnáčt <Bill>] Bill tried to play ball
 /nam'ačší(x) .. t' i-(č)snačt ../ try-MOM Bill throw-handle... .

In relative clause structures, anaphora can be leftward or rightward but the matrix NP normally precedes its coreferential RC NP, as in A [...X...] or X [...A...].

- (597) *hi·šink haⁱ [yaq^k upitq qu·?asⁱ]* She kissed the man she likes
/hi·š-(č)inkʷ [l].. yaqʷ-kʷ up-i·tq .. / all-with.. which-like..-REL

- (598) *hi·šink qu·?asⁱ [yaq^k upitq]* She kissed the man she likes

Only in cleft constructions can the RC NP precede its matrix antecedent, yielding the structures [...A...] X or [...X...] A.

- (599) *[yaq^k upitq] ?uhⁱ·š ti·čaⁱ* The one she likes is a teacher
... ?u-hⁱ-(q)hⁱ-?i·š .. / .. it-ABS-SIM-IND teacher

- (600) *[yaq^k upitq qu·?asⁱ] hi·šink haⁱ* The one whom the man likes
kissed him

Recall that NP adjuncts containing RC's must either precede the predicate or follow the object if both subject and object adjuncts cooccur in a clause. Across clause boundaries, leftward and rightward anaphora occur regardless of whether the antecedent or anaphor is in a cleft NP and regardless of whether either is in a RC.

The absence of case-marking and the presence of ellipsis results in potential ambiguity of reference, especially in monologue where subject referent changes without signal. Such ambiguity is minimized by making use of pragmatic and contextual information. For example, in (589), the subject of [121] must be the Ahousats on the basis of [115]. The subject of [124] is identified as the Kyuquots on the basis of later sentences (in which Kyuquots are entreated to regroup in a house and are shot at from the beach). The subject of [123] is identified as the Clayoquot on the basis of the lexico-cultural fact that only attackers would 'roar'.

Ambiguity is also minimized due to the dominance of certain alternate interpretations in ambiguous contexts. Consider the following.

- (601) *Mary ?uk^k up Bill : wik John* 1. Mary, not John, likes Bill
 2. Bill likes Mary, not John
 3. Bill, not John, likes Mary

There is a hierarchy of interpretations, from most likely (1) to least

likely (3). Such moderately contrastive sentences as (601), in which alternate interpretations are weighted and in which NP's are more likely to have one role than another, are preferred to less marked sentences whose ambiguity cannot be resolved because the alternate interpretations are not weighted.

- (602) *?uk'up Mary Bill : wik John* Mary likes Bill, not John
Mary, not John, likes Bill

The unacceptability of (602), at least in isolation, due to the 'gap' arising from either subject or object NP ellipsis, suggests that a condition reminiscent of Hankamer's (1973) No-Ambiguity Condition operates in Kyuquot. Ellipsis is prohibited or at least avoided if some other type of potential ellipsis could yield the same surface structure.

In many cases, a particular sentence shape places a potentially ambiguous NP in a disambiguating context. For example, when an ambiguous NP (e.g. the oblique agent *?ih*) is located next to a definite NP (e.g. *Jim*), it is more likely to be interpreted as the definite NP than some other NP. Compare sentences (603) and (604).

- (603) *bu·cma·k Jim ?uh?atint hisša·?t* 1. Jim's wife was hit by him
2. him
/bu·cma-?ak .. ?u-h-(q)h-?at-int his-ši(x)-?at/
woman-POSS Jim it-ABS-SIM-PASS-PAST hit-MOM-PASS

- (604) *?uh?atint hisša·?t bu·cma·k Jim* 1. Jim's wife was hit by him
2. him

The extent to which sentence position is employed to disambiguate anaphors is not known.

Ellipsis occurs for NP objects as well as subjects. It may be leftward or rightward, across clause or sentence boundaries. Examples include sentences (578), (605), and (606).

- (605) *č'ičikinti:s cuw'iti* I cut the coho
/č'i-ši(x)-int-(y)i:-s cuw-it-?i/ dut-MOM-PAST-INDF-I coho-DEF
wik ku·čit But (I) didn't clean (it)

- (606) *sukʷití:s : hitaqspi·s ha·nisak?i* I took that sack and put
/su-ši(x)-(y)i:-s hita-qs-?ap-(y)i:-s...../ it in (our) canoe
take-MOM-INDF-I there(MOM)-in vessel-CAUS-INDF-I the ...

Leftward ellipsis across a clause boundary often occurs in contexts where the NP also has an antecedent in prior discourse, in the case of (606) about ten sentences earlier. Such prior identification is, however, unnecessary. In the following sentence, the NP has no previous antecedent.

- (607) *takšik qahsa·p* : ?u·wa·?kqu *qu·?as* Whomever they met, they always murdered
 /tak-ši(?) qah-sa·p ?u-a·wi(?) [L]-qu: .../
 each-MOM die-MOMCAUS it-find..-COND adult

The NP in (607) and the paraphrase in which clauses are reversed can undergo ellipsis in either clause, regardless of clause order. Nevertheless, there are coordinate clauses in which none of the coreferential object NP's undergo ellipsis.

- (608) *pintšik maht'i* : ?²ihimy'up .. *maht'i* He painted a house red
 /pint-ši(?) .. ?²ihi^w-(q)imbi-up .../ paint-MOM .. red-around-MOMCAUS

3.5.1.4. Reflexives and Reciprocals

A clause can include two coreferential NP's with different grammatical roles, e.g. subject and object or oblique. In such a context, the object NP is represented by a reflexive anaphor, either ?u·kʷačč or ?u·ukʷh.

- (609) *m'ačik Mike* ?u·kʷačč Mike bit himself
 /m'a-či(?) .. ?ukʷa-(č)ič [L]/ bite-MOM Mike self-do to...

A sentence with an elliptical object cannot be interpreted as reflexive.

- (610) *yaqnaq qu·?asi qahsa·p* That's the man who killed him,
 /yaqʷ-na-qa· qu·?as-i· qah-sa·p/ (*himself)
 which-PAST-REL adult-DEF die-MOMCAUS

The root ?ukʷa- is thus like a quantifier (but not a pronominal) because it optionally is affixed by -(č)ič [L] and can be coreferential to any person.

- (611) *y'ime'u·qhk* ?u·kʷačč Don't you like yourself?
 /y'ime- -č'u- -aqh-k ?ukʷa-(č)ič [L]/
 unsatisfactory-inside vessel-inside-II(QUE) self-do to...

This root also serves as object of governing suffixes in oblique clauses with subjects coreferential to the object.

- (612) ?u^ap ?umⁱ šu-wis ?ukʷachin Mom bought shoes for herself
/?u^ap ... ?ukʷa-chin [L]/ it-buy mother .. self-do for

It also occurs in adjunct-adjunct clefts as in (613) and in topical predicates as in (614) and (615).

- (613) či-cma-sak ?u^ah napisim. The raccoon was dragging himself
/či-c-ma-t-:as-:a CV#?ukʷa-h ... across (the yard)
pull-at-move about-on ground-TEM distrib-self-ABS

- (614) ?u^ah i hupi Help yourself!
/CV#?ukʷa-h-i .../ distrib-self-ABS-IMPV help

- (615) ?u^aacti hupi Help yourself!

It appears that ?ukʷa-forms do not always serve as object anaphors. First, if they did, they would be the only topical predicates not containing a governing suffix which are in an object relation to the oblique predicate (cf. (615) above). Second, topical predicates exist in which ?ukʷa- modifies the subject as an emphatic constituent.

- (616) ?u^ahints ?ukʷi^t I made it myself!
/CV#?ukʷa-h-int-s ?u-(č)i^t/ distrib-self-ABS-PAST-I it-make..

- (617) ?u^ahh ?int ?u-taq Does she generally work on it
/CV#?ukra-h-ha ... ?u-taq [L]/ by herself?
distrib-self-ABS-QUE habitually, it-work on..

In this usage, it behaves like the quantifier and quantity stems, which typically serve as topical predicates to emphasize the particular participants of an event.

- (618) c'awa-nti-s ?ukʷi^t I ALONE made it
/c'awa-int-(y)i:-s ?u-(č)i^t/ one-PAST-INDE-I it-make

Such topicalized specifical structures have no nontopical paraphrase in which predicative stem serves as an object and is coreferential to the subject.

- (619) *?ukʷi^t-inti-s {?u^ah
c'awa-k} (I made it myself)

It might be posited that *?u?ukʷh* is, in fact a nonobject-bound emphatic element. This suggests that in (614), (616), and (617), *?u?ukʷh* is coreferential to the subject and that in (613) *?u?ukʷh kapisim* is an epithetic NP. Such an analysis could explain the absence of (reflexive) adjunct-predicate clefts. Assuming that the reflexive stem and the coreferential nominal are parts of an epithetic NP, neither constituent of the NP can be moved out of it into the pre-predicate position. Such an explanation would be stronger if there were grammatical adjunct-predicate clefts in which the adjunct included a reflexive stem. But so far, none have been found. The case for epithetic reflexive NP's is therefore weak and requires further investigation.

Occasionally, *Puk'a-* is not coreferential to the subject of the clause in which it occurs.

- (620) *?unaⁱkmāqⁱq_j [?uk^w_ii^c_j]* She wants to have kids of her own
/u-na-kw-ma-faqⁱq_j uk-wa-i-c/ it-have...want to... self-belong to..

The above bracketed constituent is an implicitly nominalized clause whose subject must be the kids. Such words are rare. It seems most economical to mark them as lexemes with exceptional referential characteristics.

Kyuquot has no true reciprocal pronominal. However, when two agent or experiencer subjects serve as each other's patients, the reciprocity can be expressed by the affix -(c)*st'at* [(*Rcl*)].

- (621) *ɛ̃-i-ct̩‿st̩‿at̩‿m̩‿inh̩-?a-θ̩* They cut each other
 cut-recip-PL-PL

The reflexive stem *?u?ukw̥* can occur in reciprocally-marked clauses as well, although neither agent nor experiencer is responsible for his own experience as patient. Nevertheless, it is true that the (agent or experiencer) subjects are coreferential to patients.

- (622) *č'ict abšnab* ?u?ukʷʰ. . . . They started to cut each other
 /č'i-(c)st-ab-ši(n)-?a-θ CV#?ukʷʰ-a-h/
 cut-recip-MOM-PL, distrib-self-ABS

However, because reflexive clauses contain no object NP's, $?u?ukwh$ must

here also refer to a subject NP.

3.5.2. Focus - New, Surprising, Contrastive, or Définitive

Kyuquot has numerous strategies for focusing on the salience of certain clausal constituents. In the present section, these strategies are summarized. A focused element, which is formally identified by syntactic structure or morpho-lexical collocation, can bear new information, be emphatic, surprising, or contrastive, definite and/or particular, or be viewed from a certain perspective such as that of the speaker, listener, or key discourse participant. Sentences often contain more than one focused NP, e.g. a definite NP and a new NP or a subject and a topic. Consider the following sentence.

- (623) *siy'a-qhatinti'k kub'ahsap't* You were sent the package by ME
/siy'a-(q)h-at-int-(y)i:-k kub.-'ahs-ap'-at/
 I-SIM-PASS-PAST-INDF-II send thing as gift-in vessel-CAUS-PASS

This sentence focuses on the second person (listener) by rendering him grammatical subject. At the same time, it focuses on the agent oblique by means of a topical construction. Strategies for focusing upon different constituents are presented below, illustrated by Kyuquot paraphrases of the sentence *A/The man killed a/the deer*.

In an unmarked clause, with VSOX structure, the predicate and oblique express new (N) information and the adjuncts old (O) information more commonly than new.

- (624) *qahsa-pintis čakup mawič* A/The man killed a/the deer
/qa-h-sa:p-int-?i:š ... / die-MOMCAUS-PAST-IND male deer

Old information is likely to undergo anaphora, ellipsis, or demotion to suffix status. Compare the following responses and their questions.

- (625) *ya-yak'ht* (What's wrong with his foot?)
/ya-uk-(q)h-ta [R]/
 sore-DUR-at foot
 It's sore

- (626) *nišmęč'p* (Where's he sore?) In his foot
/niškin-č'ap/ foot-sore in..

Similarly, content questions can contain old information expressed as a

suffix.

- (627) *?aca·qnah qawi·c* Who ate the salmonberries?
/?aca·q-na-ha· qawi·-i·c/ who-PAST-QUE salmonberry-eat..

The 400 lexical suffixes do not denote all possible predicates and argument-like suffixes are limited to locative suffixes, emphasizing body parts and natural landmarks. For example, whereas the predicate *kill* can be represented as a suffix, as in (628), a sentence appropriate as a response to *What did he kill?*, there is no suffix for *deer* which could be used in a response to *What did he do to the deer?*.

- (628) *muksu·pintiš* He killed a deer
/muk-su:p-int-?i·š/ deer-kill..-PAST-IND

Instead, the answer to the latter question would identify the NP *deer* as old by ellipsis or by the anaphoric root *?u-*.

- (629) *?usu·pintiš* He killed it

New information is partly identified by syntactic position. In general, a new adjunct is more leftward than an old one. For example, new objects are found in adjunct-predicate and adjunct-adjunct cleft structures:

- (630) *muvič qahsa·pintiš čakup* The guy killed a deer

- (631) *qa· pintiš muvič čakup* The guy killed a deer!

An object in a pre-subject position as in (631) is surprising or contrary to expectation as well as new. For example, in (631), the killing of a deer or the killing of a deer is surprising; perhaps because the agent was out setting traps or fishing.

An adjunct-predicate cleft can identify a subject as new as in (632) or surprising as well as new as in (633).

- (632) *čakup qahsa·pintiš muvič* A man killed a/the deer

- (633) *ha·k'a·n qahsa·pintiš muvič* A GIRL (not a boy) killed a/the deer

In addition, adjuncts preceding predicates need not be new but may simply be present in a stylistically variant construction. Similarly,

the oblique-adjunct left does not have one clear function. Either the oblique or the displaced and more peripheral adjunct can be identified as new in such a construction.

Given that a predicate or a sentence-initial constituent generally bears new information, a constituent normally serving as adjunct or oblique can be focused by serving as a higher topical predicate. A topical adverbial is generally emphatic, surprising, or contrastive as well as new (whereas an oblique adverbial is only new).

- (634). *?athi·ntiš qahsa·p mavič* It was at NIGHT he killed a deer

A topical NP predicate is always new and emphatic. If noncontrastive, it serves as an ambient predicate as in (635). If contrastive, it is -(q)h-marked if interclass contrastive as in (636) and ?uh-marked if either intraclass contrastive as in (637) or proper as in (638).

- (635) *čakupa·š qahsa·p mavič* There's a man killing a deer!
/čakup-a·š qah-sa·p .../ male-EVID die-MOMCAUS deer

- (636) *čakuphantiš qahsa·p mavič* It was a MAN that killed the deer

- (637) *?uhintiš čakupi qahsa·p mavič* It was THAT man/ the MAN (of a defined set) that killed the deer

- (638) *?uhintiš čiačin qahsa·p mavič* It was CHIHCHIN that killed the deer

Topical clauses also focus object, subject/patient, or agent oblique NP's by including a NP-relating predicate in the matrix clause.

- (639) *?u·kʷitintiš mavič(i) qahsa·p* It was a DEER/ THAT deer that he
/?u-(č)iθ [E]-int.-?i·š.../ killed
it-do to...-PAST-IND deer kill

- (640) *?u·kʷitatintiš mavič(i) qahsa·p't* It was a DEER/ THAT deer that
was killed

- (641) *?uh?atintiš čakup qahsa·p't* It was THAT man/a MAN whom it
was killed by

Such topical clauses introduce a NP which is new, emphatic, and interclass contrastive in that an entity is singled out from a set of non-defined or non-equivalent entities. The NP can additionally be intra-class contrastive as in (637), or (639) through (641) where an entity

is singled out from members of its own class, e.g. *THAT man* or *THAT deer*.

The contrastive function of *?uh* for subjects and *?u·kw̩t* for objects or certain obliques is found not only in topical sentences. Nontopical contrastive NP's can also be marked thus.

- (642) *qahsa·pintiš ?uh čakupi mawič* THAT man killed a deer

- (643) *qahsa·pintiš čakup ?u·kw̩t mawič* A man killed THAT deer/ a DEER

There is no formal mark identifying nontopical predicates, as emphatic, contrastive, or new. They are identical in form to unfocused ones, regardless of whether or not the associated adjuncts are focused.

- (644) *qahsa·pintiš čakup mawič* A man killed/ KILLED the deer

There is one constraint on interpretation of focused predicates. One can apply a contrastive function only to a base (such as *muk-* 'deer') which serves as a stem or has a stem form and which counts as the most embedded constituent (e.g., NP object) which can be independent of the stem in a paraphrase whose predicate has *?u-* as an anaphoric base.

- (644) *muksu·pintiš* He killed a DEER
*He KILLED a deer/ DEER

- (645) *?usu·pintiš mawič* He killed a deer

One can also focus NP's which are definite and/or particular. If old, such a NP is marked by neither *ha* 'the, that' nor *-?i* DEF (cf. example (638)). If new, such a NP can be, but is not obligatorily, marked. In contrast, generic NP's are never marked for they are neither particular nor definite.

- (646) *qahsa·pintiš (*ha*) mawič(*i)* He killed deer

Generic NP's can, however, be emphatic and interclass contrastive.

- (647) *muksu·pintiš čakupi* The man killed DEER

Particularization is obligatorily marked when a NP is identified by a restricting, i.e. relative, clause.

- (648) *čakup yaqi· qahsa·p mawič* the man who killed the deer

In contrast, a clause which does not identify a NP by restriction is not marked. For example, in (649), the identity of *čakup* is neither

dependent on nor defined by the oblique clause.

- (649) *n'aci-čkinti-s čakup qahsa-p muic* I saw a man killing a deer
/n'aca-či-či(n)-int-(y)i:-s / see-INC-PAST-INDF-I

In summary, Kyuquot employs a number of strategies to focus constituents. Semantic demotion to anaphor, suffix, or total absence indicates that the demoted constituent bears old information. Sentence position and/or clause-level inflection can indicate that an adjunct or predicate is new, emphatic, surprising or contrastive. Association of a NP with the article, definite affix, or RC anaphor *yaqʷ-* indicates that the NP is definite and/or particular; whereas association with *?uh* or *?u-kʷt* can indicate that the NP is contrastive.

3.5.3. Participant Perspective

There are also strategies for emphasizing participant perspective, i.e. for introducing or highlighting various NP's as discourse participants. A new participant can be introduced or reintroduced as a subject, object, or oblique (agent or other relation). Motivation for the choice of introducing strategy is not discussed here.

A participant can be reintroduced as an active subject without any formal indication that the subject has changed.

- (650) *hi-sak-i ha-yis kʷatyat* Kwatyat was there on the beach
/hi-^s-is-^ax ha-^b-is . . / there-at-beach-TEM, there-at beach
kʷupʷ inis He was warming his backside
/kʷup-w-in-is/ hot-at middle-at beach
kʷač askwič They were barbecuing (fish)
/kʷač as-uk-(y)i:-č/ stickroast-POSS-INDF-INF

Where one participant has control over a second, the latter is (re)introduced as object, this introduction being treated as a focusing strategy similar to contrastive emphasis. In both cases, the NP is marked as focused by *?u-kʷt*. This pattern of marking discourse-salient objects is found throughout the 65 stories (comprising about 6000 sentences) analysed. In one story of over 300 sentences, 57 of them had nonpronominal object adjuncts of which 17 contained the focused

?u·kw̩ type of object. The focusing functions of ?u·kw̩ include disambiguating objects which could otherwise be interpreted as subjects as in (651) and other direct quote sentences, contrasting the object to some alternate referent as in (652), and shifting participant perspective.

- (651) ha·wa : wa?ax ?u·kw̩ na?i·qski "Well", he said to his aunt
 /.../ wa?ax ?u-(c)it [L] na?i·qsa-uk-?i/ /
 well! say-TEM it-do to.. aunt/uncle...kin-DEF

- (652) suk'ix ?u·kw̩ ?i·h tani n'a·q He took out the BIGGEST strip
 /su-ši(n) ?u-(c)it [L]... . . . / of blubber
 take-MOM it-do to.. big really fat

The most common function, however, is to (re)introduce a discourse-salient participant. In the table below are listed the ?u·kw̩-marked NP's and their role in the above-mentioned story (the list being restricted to NP's identified as discourse-salient rather than ambiguous or contrastive).

TABLE 8 : SALIENT ?u·kw̩ NP'S IN A SELECTED STORY

| Sentence Number | NP: English Translation | Type of Entry | Discourse Function |
|-----------------|-------------------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| 4 | aunt/uncle | intro | provide lumber |
| 16 | float | intro | transport to house site |
| 192 | crow | intro | delivers success sign |
| 216 | aunt | reintro | receives sign |
| 221 | uncle (husband) | reintro | receives sign |
| 230 | blubber | reintro | sign of success |
| 273 | stepmother | reintro | revenge victim |
| 286 | fat crumbs | intro | symbol of poverty, abuse |
| 294 | hair | reintro | instrument of revenge |
| 295 | sea | reintro | instrument of revenge |

In brief, the story's plot involves a hero, mistreated by a cruel and stingy stepmother, who is aided by an aunt and uncle to get ahead by building a house. He demonstrates success by sending his aunt and uncle a magic crow with a blubber token showing that he has captured a whale and by humiliating his stepmother by returning to her the fat crumbs she fed him and by causing her death in a storm started by slamming a

magic hair on the sea. In each case, $?u\cdot k^wz$ identifies a NP (object) as a key or discourse-salient participant central to the plot; for example, in the above story, as instruments of success (aunt, uncle, float), communication (crow, blubber, fat crumbs), revenge (hair, sea), or object of revenge (stepmother). In focus contexts, only the first occurrence of the salient NP is marked by $?u\cdot k^wz$. For example, once 'stepmother' is reintroduced in sentence (273), subsequent instances of it, although still discourse-salient, are not marked. NPs less central to the plot or coreferential to focused NP's but found in contexts less central to the plot are not marked either, except for purposes of disambiguation or contrast.

Hence, the focusing function of $?u\cdot k^wz$ can be variously interpreted as emphasis as in 'Oh no! He dropped the ball.', contrast as in 'He dropped the BALL (not the mallet)', or discourse salience as in 'He (finally) dropped the ball (thereby signalling that the thieves should jump out.)'. In the latter case, the (object) NP is identified as central to the plot, i.e. instrumental to the unfolding of events.

The function of the Naotka passive is varied. It is used, firstly, to introduce a new participant as agent oblique (e.g., 'someone_k' in example (653)).

- (653) $?ah^?a\cdot ninti\cdot c\cdot bu\cdot ema$ There was a woman
 $?ah^a\cdot -\cdot \alpha\cdot int\cdot (y)i\cdot -c\cdot /$ there-TEM-PAST-INSD-INF
 $?una\cdot ki\cdot c\cdot t\cdot atn\cdot a\cdot s$ She had kids
 $?u\cdot na\cdot k^-(y)i\cdot -c\cdot t\cdot an\cdot a\cdot +\cdot ?is/$ it-have..-INDF-INF child-PL-DIM

$?u\cdot shan\cdot tal\cdot ?u\cdot atuk\cdot w$ They_{i+j} were taken care of by
 $?u\cdot s\cdot (q)h\cdot -\alpha\cdot -at\cdot -?a\cdot t\cdot ?u\cdot atuk[L]\cdot -at/$ someone_k
 some-SIM-TEM-PASS-PL it-care for..-PASS

$?ta\cdot k^w aqnik\cdot sa?n$... He_k had become poor (too) ...
 $?ta\cdot k^w aqnik\cdot si(n)\cdot -\alpha/$ poor-MOM-TEM

Such a strategy allows one character to be salient (as subject) while a second salient participant is introduced as agent oblique and subsequently serves as subject. This is possible even in the first sentence of a discourse as in (654).

- (654) *kuw'itatinti-č ha'kwa:n* A girl was kidnapped
/ku-w'it-at-int-(y)i:-č.../ steal-PASS-PAST-INDF-INF girl

On the other hand, nonpassive sentences involving agent changes are common.

- (655) *?u'i:p ?ahku-či-ča:n* He got it and they pulled it in
/?u-i:p .. či-či(n)-at/ it-obtain.. this pull-MOM-TEM

Such nonmarked shifting is possible even when a subject is coreferential to the object of a second clause.

- (656) *huhlik ?in na'u-knaqñ* He knows he wants to come with
/huhlik .. na'u-uk-maqañ/ know .. accompany-DUR-want.. him

- (657) *?a- qahšik* Well, he died (SADLY)

- ?umuk ?in si-ti:t* Because he lied (to him)
/?u-mu:(n) .. CVC#si-t-[L]-(y)a/ it-because of.. that IT-disbelieve-GRAD-REP

These sentences show that the Kyuquot passive is not an obligatory signal of agent or subject change.

The passive can, however, be used to introduce or temporarily focus a different subject, e.g. the lady in (659) or the victims in (658). In such cases, the previous subject remains as a discourse salient NP likely to resurface as a subject.

- (658) *yayackinti-č ?ah'a:* He was trampling on it there
/CV#yack-int-(y)i:-č .../ distrib-step-PAST-INDF-INF there

- hiq'wa:apčip't* Theirs were wrecked (by him)
/hiq-(?a)k'wa-ap-či-p-at/ all-destroyed-CAUS-for-PASS

- wik'at' tqu naha:t* When he wasn't given anything
/wik'-at- at-qu: nahi:-at/ not-TEM-PASS-COND give-PASS

- (659) *?ah'a:hakinti-s siy'a:q* If I were the one (in love),
/?ah'a- ah'-at-int-(y)i:-s.../ then-IRR-TEM-PAST-INDF-I I

- ?ucača:t : sičibatqu:s ka:pap't* She'd be visited (by me), if
/?u-ca-či(n)-at si-(č)ib[L]-at-qu:-s ka:pap'-at/ I were liked by her

- it-go to...MOM-PASS I-do to...PASS-COND-I like-PASS*

Subject perspective shifts, in (659) from 'I' to 'she' and back to 'I'. This sentence shows that passives are due to neither agent change nor a person hierarchy for subjects. In the first two clauses, the agent remains constant while the voice changes. In the second clause, the third person subject and first person agent oblique would violate a hierarchy in which first and second person have priority over third person as subjects. Rather the passive is used stylistically to identify both the lady and the speaker as salient.

The third and most common function of the passive is to maintain a discourse salient NP as subject regardless of its semantic role, e.g. as benefactee, agent, patient, or experiencer. Consider the following sentences from one story.

- (660) *tami:saki:c hisimyi::s* He was drifting along the beach
/ta-mab-^c-is-^ah-(y)i:-c his-mab-^c-is-[L]/
 drift-move about-beach-TEM-INDF-INF there-move about-beach-EMPH
- hinuttap^xi:c ha: t'an'a-si* The child was taken out of the
/hin-^witta-ap-^ah-(y)i:-c... t'an'a-?is-?i:/ canoe
- there(MOM)-out of vessel-CAUS-TEM-INDF-INF the child-DIM-DEF*
- hini?itip't* He was made to come into the house
/hin-^atip-^at/ there(MOM)-destine to be at..-PASS
- qi[?]ati:c hit* He was there a long time
/qi[?]at-(y)i:-c .. / long time-TEM-INDF-INF there
- ?uij[?]ati:c iu:* He was given four of them (shells)
/?u-yi-^aat-(y)i:-c .. / it-give..-PASS-INDF-INF four
- suk^xin: ?ah[?]a[?]ya:c[?]sa[?]?x* He picked them up and went out
/su-si(x) ?ah[?]a-^ah[?]yac-[L]-xi(x)-^ah/
 pick-MOM then-TEM step-GRAD-MOM-TEM

Throughout, the subject is coreferential to one participant. Other participants are introduced as objects or agent obliques.

Such focusing can result in the passivization of all predicates associated with noncoreferential agent NP's, as in a quoted interchange such as (661):

- (661) a. "...", $wa \cdot ?ak_i$ "...", he_i said
 b. "...", $wa \cdot ?ak^t_i$ "...", was said by her_j to him_i
 c. "...", $wa \cdot ?ak_i$ "...", he_i said

This situation occurs only when the patient, benefactee, or recipient subject of the passive clause is discourse-salient and is coreferential to the (agent) subject of the nonpassive clauses. Passivization in this context is not obligatory (cf. for example (657) in which the second clause is not passivized).

In summary, a passive clause can indicate that a nonagent participant is temporarily focused as a key participant or that the key participant subject is being temporarily acted upon or affected, or has come under the control of some oblique agent which, thus introduced, becomes a subsequent key participant.

3.5.4. Stylistics

Within a language, syntactic rules define a set of potential sentence structures as grammatical (cf. sections 3.1 to 3.4). Alternate sentence structures do not, however, occur randomly but are a function of the communicative salience of constituents, e.g. newness of information, definiteness, particularity, contrastiveness, and role in the discourse (cf. sections 3.5.1 to 3.5.3). In addition, a sentence's shape is based on stylistic principles which render discourse fluent, powerful, pleasing, or emotion-arousing.

3.5.4.1. Clause Simplicity

In Kyuquot, one such principle is clause simplicity. A simple clause contains only one adjunct, one modifier per NP, and no embedded clauses. Although Kyuquot syntactic rules allow for clauses with multiple adjuncts, modifiers, and embeddings, such complex clauses are rare.

For example, of 6523 nonelicited sentences (5741 from monologue and 782 from conversation), a total of 80 contained both a subject and object adjunct: 40 VSO, 20 VOS, 17 SVO, and 3 OVS (the non-VSO types being due to cleft constructions). Hence, although there are rules for

adjunct position and for the interpretation of particular positions (e.g. as new or surprising information), multiple adjuncts are the exception rather than the rule.

There are certain characteristic clause sequences which are byproducts of the one-adjunct clause preference. First, it appears that when the subject of an oblique clause is coreferential to the matrix subject and either the matrix or oblique clause includes an object, the subject is generally found in the clause which contains no other adjunct, i.e. as VS [VO] or VO [VS]. Second, there are sequences in which one clause includes a subject NP while the second one (either coordinate or independent) has a coreferential elliptical subject and includes an object NP, i.e. VS (:) VO. In this type, the second predicate adds little or no semantic information and seems to serve only to provide a clause for the second NP.

- (662) tučna·kša?ñ ñ ihma-m²
/tuč-na-k²-ñi(ñ)-ak ... /

Wookpecker took a wife
woman-have...-MOM-TEM

- ?uchinni·č na·ni·qs
/?u-chi-nu(ñ)-(y)i:-č ... /

He married Grizzly Woman
it-married to...-MOM-INDF-INF

- (663) mamu·k²wak ha· tu·cma hit
/mamu-uk-²ak /

His wife worked there
work-DUR-TEM the woman there

- bihab ?ukwi·t
/... ?u-(č)i·t/

She made mats
mat it-make..

- (664) ?awatinm² mata·ski·č
/mat-a-s-ñ-(y)i:-č/

Eagle landed;
Eagle fly-on-MOM-INDF-INF

- ?u?u·?as hu· sučisi
/?u-?i:-?as .. sučis-i·/

he got way up in the tree
it-go to..-outside there tree-DEF

The subject can also be introduced within a topical predicate whose oblique predicate is equivalent to that of the following clause.

- (665) ?uha·f²s / k²a·?in ha?uk :
/?u-h-(q)h-a-f²s ... /

There were crows eating;
it-ABS-SIM-EVID crow eat(DUR)

- y²amp²a ?u?i·c
/... ?u-i·c/

eating the salalberries
salalberry it-eat..

In sequences such as those found in (662) through (665), the second predicate seems redundant. Each clause or sentence pair seems to have as paraphrase a simple sentence consisting of subject and object NP's plus one predicate, either the one in the pair bearing more nonredundant information, e.g. the first in (664) and the second in (662), or a different predicate which is semantically related to both, e.g. ?u·taq 'work on (to fix, create)' for (663). Yet this simple clause alternative (in fact complex because of the presence of two adjuncts) is rare.

In fact, even lexically redundant predicates recur, with one governing a subject NP and one an object, i.e. V₁S (:) V₂O, across either clause or sentences boundaries.

- (666) ya·csa·pi·č n'uw'i
 /yac-[L]-sa·p-(y)i:-č .../
 yacsā·p ?u·kʷt t'an'a·si
 he made the chidren walk (home)
- Dad made them walk;
 step-GRAD-MOMCAUS-INDF-INF
- (667) hini tu·cma.
 /hin.-ayi .../
 hini zihāt.
 she gave out mats
- The woman gave them out;
 there(MOM)-give.. woman
- (668) qahsa·pma[?]qñi·č ča·p[?]athi
 /qah-sa·p-ma[?]aqñ-(y)i:-č .../
 qahsa·pma[?]qñ?u·kʷt cayna[?]thi
 they wanted to kill the Chinese man
- The Japanese wanted to kill him;
 die-MOMCAUS-want to..-INDF-INF
- (669) ču· ?uma·pša? ga·y'uk[?]th
 /... ?u-ma·p-ši(?) -'at .../
?uma·pšk ?u·kʷt hiti·ski
 /?u-ma·p-ši(?) ... hita[?]si-ñ-?i .../
 it-notice-MOM ... there(MOM)-at beach-MOM-DEF
- The Kyuquots paid attention;
 well! it-notice..-MOM-TEM
- they paid attention to the ones
 who arrived

In addition, identical predicates can be associated with first object and then subject NP's or with subject and oblique NP's.

- (670) ?u·ty[?]a·pi·č nuk
 /?u-i·ty[?]a·p-(y)i:-č .../
 ?u·ty[?]a·p ki·ki·eq[?]a
 the Kwakiutl's presented it
- They presented (him) with a song;
 it-bring..as gift-INDF-INF song

- (671) *qaħsa p'at t, Bill* Bill was killed

qaħsa-p't ?uh?at ya-qʷbitq ka-pap He was killed by the one he liked

/qaħ-sa-p'-at ?u-h-(q)h- at yaqʷ-(c)it [L]-?i-taq.../

die-MOMCAUS-PASS it-ABS-SIM-PASS which-do to..-REL like

About an equal number of double adjunct and VS (:) VO sequences have been observed, the latter even as responses to an elicited double adjunct clause. One concludes that although Kyuquot has two-place predicates, the transitivity is seldom overtly expressed by the presence of two NP's. One NP more commonly undergoes anaphora or ellipsis in each clause.

The second evidence for the tendency toward clause simplicity is the rarity of multiply-modified NP's. When two modifiers of one NP are present in a sentence, the usual syntactic structures are an adjectival predicate plus a relative clause as in (672) or a predicate with quantifier or quantity base plus a singly modified NP as in (673) and (674).

- (672) *mahak̓ yaqa-wħnaqs h'ihimt c'apic* I found an old red canoe
/mah-akʷ-?i-s yaqʷ-a-wi(h)-na-qa-s h'ihʷ-(q)imt .../ old

old-DUR-INDF which-find..-PAST-REL-I red-around canoe

- (673) *?ayi-pi-čat ?i-h, su-ma* They got lots of big tommycod
/?aya-i:p-(y)i:-č-?a-t ... / many-obtain..-INDF-INF-PL big

- (674) *ha?u:waxi-ska c'a-xuk c'apic* I found another fast canoe
/ha?u-a-wi(h)-(y)i:-s-ha- c'a-x-uk .../

other-find..-INDF-I-again fast-DUR canoe

A predicate with an adjectival base cannot govern an object modified by anything, although a single modifier of an object can occur as base in certain predicates as in (676).

- (675) **c'a-xukʷawki-s mahak̓ c'apic*

- (676) *c'a-xukʷawki-s c'apic* I found a fast canoe

When a NP object is modified by both a quantifier and a quantity, either can serve as a predicative base.

There is a third strategy for avoiding doubly-modified nominals. The two modifiers can occur in coordinate or independent clauses as in the following sentence pair.

- (677) *hini-ci-č hi-shi-sac'k* He was carrying an ax
/hin.-i:c-(y)i:-č CVC#his-[L]-(y)a-č'akʷ/
 there(MOM)-carry..-INDF-INF IT-hit-GRAD-REP-instrument for..
ħut tani hi-shi-sac'k c'ušak It was nice and new
/... c'uš-akʷ/ nice really ax new-DUR

Use of two clauses allows one modifier to serve as a predicate, thereby simplifying the NP structure.

In keeping with such strategies is the dearth of NP's with more than two modifiers. Although there are clauses in which the predicates include a quantifier or quantity modifier and the NP's include two modifiers as in (678), a triply-modified NP is acceptable only if the modifiers are from different semantic classes and one of them (which is post-nominal) can be syntactically interpreted as a separate clause as in (679).

- (678) *?ač'aqam̑i-s k'ihiṁt č'apic k'amá k'aháqs*
/?ač-c'aq-a-wi(?)-(y)i:-s... . . k'am-(y)a.../
 two..vessels-find..-INDF-I red canoe full-CONT box
 I found two red canoes full of boxes
- (679) *n'aci-čints mu-nitj ħut ha-kwa-n (?) hit hitinqs*
/n'aci-či-či(?)-int-s mu-nit-?i hita-n'aq-čis/
 see-INC-PAST-I four-PAST-DEF nice girl there there(MOM)-at
 I saw four pretty girls at the beach slope-at beach

There appears to be a limit of complexity within the NP. Beyond that limit, adjoining modifying material is interpreted as belonging to a separate clause. Similarly, if one asks for translations of English sentences including a triply-modified NP, the Kyuquot version virtually never contains such a NP.

Added evidence for a principle of clause simplicity (besides one-adjunct clauses and one-modifier NP's) is the preference for independent or coordinate clauses as opposed to subordinate ones. For example,

clauses which could be assigned coordinate or even subordinate status are commonly interpreted as independent. In the following examples, the second sentences could have been interpreted as subordinate adverbial, complement, or NP-relating obliques respectively, but were not.

- (680) *ta-kšikis sihak*
/tak-[L]-ši(ñ)-?i-š sih-akʷ/

She was always crying
 each-GRAD-MOM-IND cry-DUR

hitn'i-s ?ah'a-
/hit-n'i- is .. /

She was down at the beach
 there-at slope.of beach-at beach

- (681) *hahu-pi-čat*
/hahu-p-(y)i:-č-?a-č/
qʷa-?a-qnitqat
/qʷa-?a:qñ-?i-tq-?a-č/

He advised them
 advise-INDF-INF-PL

That's what they should do
 thus-FUT-REL-PL

- (682) *ku-kinča?ñ pi-š*
/ku-kin-ši(ñ)-?a-ñ .. /
?u-?atp ha-?i-?iti
/?u-a?atip .. ?i-?it-?i-?i/

He cooked the fish
 cooking-MOM-TEM fish
 He did it for the guests
 it-destine for.. the feast-in house-
 DEF

Adjacent sentences can be structurally identical to coordinate clauses of even the subordinate or conjunction-marked types.

- (683) *tihat hini-ci-k*
... hin.-i:c-(y)i:-k/
?in qim'u-p?a-qñin
... qim'-u'-p?-a:qñ-in/

You're bringing your mat
 mat, there(MOM)-bring..-INDF-IT

Because we'll be gone a long time
 that long time-absent for..-FUT-IP

- (684) *?uksnaštintat ?ahku*
/?u-(c)snašt-int-?a-č .. /
qwiyi-yi ja-kma-y
/qwi-(y)i-(y)i: CVC#ma-[L]-(y)a/
 which..time-INDF IT-dwell-GRAD-REP

They demonstrated this (*tupačt*)
 it-handle..-PAST-PL this

They did it while dancing

There are even clauses identified as independent which are identical to clauses embedded within a NP.

- (685) *nakišni-č sahu-sath*
/nakiš-n-(y)i:-č .. /
- yaqʷacitq ha-č'apici kwt* He's the one who has the nice canoe
/yaqʷ-ac-?i-tq .. č'apic-?i..../ which-belong to..-REL ..canoe-DEF
- (686) *č'i-č̓i-y* They were shooting
/CVC#č'i-[L]-(y)a/
- ?u-kʷt maht-i?* It was aimed at the house
/?u-(č)iž [L] maht-i-?i/ it-do to.. house-DEF

The second form of evidence for the avoidance of embedded clauses is that they are often absent in sentences offered in response to elicited ones which include such constructions, particularly relative clauses. Instead, a sequence of either coordinate or independent sentences is created. For example, presented with *I heard some news which was about Bill*, the response was sentence (687).

- (687) *naʔ-a-nti-s ?u-š uyaqhmis* I heard some news
/naʔ-a-int-(y)i:-s .. ?uyaqh-mis/ hear-PAST-INDF-I .. tell-NOM
- ?u-č'inaqak' t Bill* Bill was being gossiped about
/?u-č'inaqak [L]-at .. / it-gossip about..-PASS

Similarly, presented with *a present for the guy who saved me*, the response was not (688) but rather (689), in which no relative clause is present.

- (688) *?nahi-min ?uč'ik čakupi.[yaqi· ti-č'ahsims si-čit]*
- (689) *?uč'ik čakupi nahi-min* (It was) a present for that guy
/?u-č'akw čakup-?i· nahi-min/ it-instrument for.. male-DEF give-NOM
- ti-č'ahsims si-čit* He saved me
/ti-č'-ahs-imsa [L] si-(č)it [L]/ alive-in vessel-bring back.. I-do-to..

The third evidence for avoiding complex sentences is that with adjacent predicates can be associated an adjunct (or oblique) and an oblique (underlined in the examples) which could be grammatical in the preceding clause as well. The initial clause can include a subject or object as in (690) or a complement oblique as in (691).

(690) *c'usšik ñatmis**/c'us-ši(ñ) .../**c'usšik [hu?ak]*(691) *?iqhi· ?u?u?i·h :**/?iq-hi· ?u-u-i:h[R]/**?iqhi· [hu·yis]*

They dug up the earth

dig-MOM earth

They dug it up long ago

He was still trying to get it;

same-DUR it-try to get..

still at the beach there

Such redundant clause sequences can occur in the reverse order as well.

(692) *?i?i·wick [ñ'ay'ix tani] :**/CV#i:h-w-i-ci(ñ) .../**?i?i·wick ŋini·ñm'inh**... ŋini·ñ-m'inh/*

They grew really fast;

distrib-big-INC fast really

those dogs grew really a lot

grow dog-PL

The siting of the oblique in its own clause may also be a strategy to focus the oblique. It is however primarily a stylistic device to avoid complex clauses.

3.5.4.2. Redundancy

The above discussion has indirectly revealed a second stylistic principle: redundancy. Redundancy is present when similar or identical predicates are used in order to locate an adjunct or oblique in its own clause. Redundancy also indicates emphasis. One type of emphatic redundant clause sequence is the mirror-symmetric type, in which the second clause consists of the first clause's constituents but in the reverse order, i.e. XY YX. The two clauses involved are always interpreted as independent.

(693) *?ukwi·^b c'apic**c'apic ?ukwi·^b**... ?u-(c)i·^b/*

He made a canoe!

DITTO

canoe it-make..

(694) *hita·qñ's · ?ucaci?in**?ucaci?in hita·qñ's**/?u-ca-ši(ñ)-i-n hita-aqñ-as/*

it-go to -MQM-IMPV-IP there(MOM)-inside-at ground

Let's go into the forest!

DITTO

Mirror symmetries commonly involve an adjunct-predicate cleft in

one clause and hence a true constituent reversal as in (693) and (694). They can also involve a predicate associated with a qualifier which can precede or follow or can involve a nonpredicated NP as in (695).

- (695) *ñ'apatis ?unahis* a little basket
?unahis ñ'apatis DITTO
/?una-h-?is ñ'apat-?is/ only-quantity-DIM basket-DIM

In contrast, there are mirror symmetries in which a constituent which is a NP or adverbial oblique in one sentence is a topical predicate in the other as in (696).

- (696) *wi·kšahat hišuk* They were all safe!
hišukʷaž wi·kšah-
/hiš-ukʷaž wi-kšah [L]/ DITTO
 all-DUR-PL not-...wrong

In such cases, the identical words do not belong to identical constituents. Of course, in sentences with no clause-level inflection, a NP preceding a verbal, adjectival, etc., could be interpreted as either an adjunct in an adjunct-predicate cleft structure or a topical NP predicate. Kyuquot speakers typically interpret such sentences as adjunct-predicate clefts.

The structure of mirror symmetries is limited. Only two constituents are involved in the reversal and in all cases except for ones involving interjections or qualifiers each of the two reversing constituents is composed of only one word.

Whereas mirror symmetries are identified as independent clauses, unmarked redundant clauses are identified as coordinate. Mirror symmetries involve only one recurrence (which is not clausally-inflected), whereas unmarked redundant clauses involve as many as four repetitions even if the repeated clause includes a complement. In unmarked redundant clauses, inflectional suffixes are repeated as well. The bracketed numbers below indicate the number of repetitions each clause undergoes.

- (697) *wik'i ?uma·p (2x)* Don't pay attention!
/wik-i ?u-ma·p/ not-IMPV it-notice..

- (698) *makṣa?*^ñ *?u?i·p ?ah* (3x) They fastened it right there!
 /ma-kh-ši(ñ)-⁻ ak *?u-?i:-*⁻ go .../ bind-MOM-TEM it-go to..-CAUS there

(699) *c' išhi·cu?*^š (2x) You're all really bad!
 /c' iš-hi-⁻ -icu-⁻ š/ bad-DUR-IIp-IND

Recurring sequences can also be composed of simple one-word coordinate clauses.

- (700) *n'a·ssi(ñ)* : ?*athšiñ* (5x) It got to be day, 'then night,...
 /n'a·s-ši(ñ) ?*ath-ši(ñ)*/ day-MOM night-MOM.

Unmarked clause repetitions can express strong emotional feeling as in *Go there!*, *He got fooled!*, *He's cute!*, *They were surprised!*, or *Let's pick berries!*; duration as in *She cried and cried*, *It flew on and on*, or *They ate and ate*; multiple participants (and iteration of an event, once by each participant) as in *They (all) died*, *He prepared (all) the fish eggs*, *Go (all of you)!*, or *They (all) went out fishing*; or distribution of an event over space, as in *They threw it (soft earth) all around*. By far the most commonly repeated predicates, in both stories and conversations, are *sihak* 'cry', *ha'uk* 'eat', and *yac-* 'step'.

Repetitions of words or bases are found in adjacent clauses as well, as in (701).

Similarly, a word and a dependent morpheme with the same meaning can be found in adjacent clauses, again evidently as a means of emphasis:

- (702) *wa?ič* : *?u?u·t̪ bu·cma·k* • He slept with his wife
 /.. *?u-it [R] bu·cma-uk/* sleep it-sleep with.. woman-POSS

- (703) *?ayasu·^x qu·?as : qahši^x* Many people died
/?aya-su:(^x) ... qah-ši(^x)/ many-die adult die-MOM

3.6 Summary

3.6.1. Problems

In this section are summarized areas requiring further work.

Although constituent order of the simple clause is clear, the interplay between adjunct order and predicate structure (e.g. patient-bound versus other types) needs investigation. In complex sentences, the position of subject adjuncts in matrix or complement clauses may well be rule-governed. Within the NP, the distribution and function of the article and the deictics (especially when indexing conversational participants rather than spatially-located entities) are not as yet understood. Qualifiers deserve more attention concerning their range of distribution and their lexical origin for they belong to different semantic classes and have different syntactic privileges. NP predicates also pose several problems. One is the distinguishing of ambient NP predicates such as *There's the big guy* from NP-modifier predicates with NP adjuncts such as *The guy is big*. It is not clear whether only context distinguishes such assertions.

The source of *?ukw̓* in patient subject NP's may have been due to innovation. Alternatively, *-at* may have acquired a passive-marking function. The choice between NP-relating obliques with similar meanings (especially those introducing benefactee NP's) may be partly a function of a particular matrix predicate. In addition, there may be a distinction between predicates plus oblique predicates and compound lexemes, the latter having a meaning greater than the sum of those of its constituents. Such compounds could be composed of a predicate plus a second (oblique) predicate. This requires increased understanding of the semantic value and range of meaning possible for individual Kyuquot words. Complementation requires investigation concerning semantic correlates of complement-taking predicates. The tough-type (associated with the possessive *-uk* and passive complements) is particularly novel and has poorly understood privileges of occurrence. It is possible that *-uk* has a nominalizing function in this context.

Marked sentences pose problems as well. For example, the passive structure's very identification as passive must be defended, especially because of the existence of passive intransitive clauses. That one passive clause triggers another is evident, but neither the distribution nor the motivation (e.g. as either lexeme peculiarity or semantic interpretation constraint) of this phenomenon is adequately documented.

especially in the case of passives triggered in verbal and conjunctional predicates with passive complements. Topical predicates are particularly prone to interspeaker variability, which may represent dialect variation or innovation. One type of such variability concerns whether or not contrastive passive subjects can be distinguished from active subjects by the presence of *?u·kwz*. If the variant in which *?u·kwz* cannot serve this function is an innovation, then this is evidence for a strengthening of the grammatical role of subject at the expense of the identification of semantic roles.

While the topical nature of quantifier and question predicates is clear, their logical properties (e.g., scope) need more investigation. Cleft constructions are puzzling in terms of frequency of occurrence. Some types are rare, whereas the objects often precede oblique predicates, particularly temporal ones, in what are adjunct-predicate clefts. In addition, research is needed concerning the function of adjunct-predicate and oblique-adjunct clefts. The motivation of cleft constructions may well be an interaction of semantic, lexical, and even metrical factors.

The grammatical role of relative clauses (RC's) can be difficult to assign. They can be sentential, coordinate, oblique, or embedded within an adjunct. Most semantic classes associate with one content question and one relative base. However, nominals have two question and two relative bases, ones which do not share equivalent semantic ranges of meaning. The difference between the ranges of *?ača-* 'who' and *?aqi-* 'what', and those of *yaqw-* 'which' and *qwi-* 'what', based on humanness and particularity respectively, may have arisen through some as yet unknown change. Accessibility constraints on NP-bound RC's require more research, especially concerning the relativizing of possessor or possessed NP's. Finally, it would be interesting to investigate the functional role of and the syntactic constraints on independent RC's. For example, are such clauses more subordinate in some way to discourse than non-RC independent clauses?

Coordinate clauses are problematic in their very identity. How does a speaker decide if adjacent clauses are coordinate or independent? And when the complementizer *?in* intervenes, where does one assign a

clause or sentence boundary? The precise functions and ranges of denotation for conjunctions and conjunctioanl predicates have so far been elusive. The syntax of split direct quotes suggests questions as well. For example, at what constituent boundaries may the intruding quoting phrase occur? Also, how syntactically complex can the quoting phrase be?

Anaphora is widespread in Kyuquot. It is not clear to what extent it is a grammatically predictable phenomenon and to what extent it is a function of discourse and cultural knowledge. Both leftward and rightward anaphora occur but the choice is not motivated at present, except for the rule that leftward predicate ellipsis occurs only when the antecedent precedes as well. The distinguishing of one verbal anaphor from another and one locative anaphor from another (with respect to meaning and privilege of occurrence) is still tentative. It is also not clear that the referent range of an anaphor exactly matches the range of a certain semantic class. For example, ?u- 'he, she, it, that' can represent either a NP or a clause (syntactic categories). In addition, q'a- 'thus' does not appear to serve as anaphor for all and only adjectival bases. It also occurs as a poorly understood emphatic element in both questions and assertions. Finally, the choice of one anaphora, as opposed to another in a particular context and the interaction of ?u- and the expression of definiteness and indefiniteness especially await further research.

Of focusing strategies, perhaps the most opaque are ones used for new and old information, especially those making selective use of lexical suffixes. The motivation for the choice of a participant's grammatical role requires a more discourse-oriented framework and the analysis of more conversational material.

In general, stylistics of discourse is, as yet, unexamined. Most observations made here have concerned tendencies such as the avoidance of complex clauses and the favouring of repetition as a sign of emphasis. There are possibly strict constraints on the number of modifiers; the degree of embedding, and the number of repeated redundant constituents. In the past, there may have been stricter constraints, such as one prohibiting multiple adjunct clauses. This, like the other problems

presented above, awaits subsequent research and analysis.

3.6.2. Typological Considerations

This second summary concerns Kyuquot Nootka and its position with respect to typological theory. Like all languages, Kyuquot has deictics, first and second personal pronouns, proper names, and grammatical elements (e.g. ?in 'that' and wa'y 'or'). Each of these element-types has characteristic privileges of occurrence. Deictics follow the article and precede modifiers in a NP; proper names, at least personal ones, cannot serve as heads in relative clauses; pronouns are affixed by -(c)it [L] when serving as object NP's; and grammatical particles must be accompanied by at least one nongrammatical word (i.e. an inflectable stem) in order to be interpreted as a sentence. Such characteristics support the claim that Nootka has syntactically-defined form classes.

The main clausal constituent is a predicate which is clause-initial in unmarked clauses and clausally-inflected. The predicate is followed by a subject and/or object NP with subject preceding object in the unmarked case. Kyuquot is therefore a predicate-subject-object or VSO language. Lehmann (1978) and Greenberg (1963) have posited the following universals for VSO languages. They have SVθ as an alternate order, clause-initial content question words, and sentence-initial verbal (i.e. predicative) modifiers, e.g. negation, adverb, or inflected auxiliary. In addition, governing elements precede governed ones, e.g. predicate precedes complement; variables precede standards, e.g. comparatives precede standards and smaller quantity terms precede larger ones (e.g. units before tens before hundreds); and nominals precede modifiers such as RC's, adjectives, and genitives.

Nootka indeed has clause-initial question words (as a sentence's highest predicate) and has SVO as an alternate order. However, VOS is about as common as an alternate order although with a different function. Verbal modifiers do not necessarily precede the verb (predicate). Although negative elements occur as higher predicates and hence precede the predicates within their scope, adverbial elements can serve as preceding (higher) predicates or as following oblique predicates. Inflectional affixes occur as a block after the predicate of the clause

with which they are associated. Hence, one must claim either that the inflected auxiliary follows the verb or that there is no auxiliary (the latter alternative being chosen in this analysis). Finally, some predicative qualifiers can or must follow the predicate. Thus, in Kyuquot, verbal modifiers do not appear to preferentially precede the verb.

The sequential relations of governed and governing elements are parallel. Verb (predicate) precedes object; predicate precedes complement oblique; and the Kyuquot analog of prepositions (i.e. grammatically oblique predicates) precede their objects. However, the sequential relations of variables and standards is heterogeneous. Although a comparative precedes its standard (grammatically an object in Kyuquot), a numerical conjunction is obligatorily organized with the smaller magnitude numbers following the larger ones (the standard), i.e. 20x 'and' 10 'and' y. Whereas a genitive virtually always follows its head; e.g. *tu-cma:k Bill* 'Bill's wife', relative clauses are as likely to precede or 'surround' their head as to follow it, and other modifiers more commonly precede their head.

Certain implications are based on other features of a language,

1. If adjectives precede the nominal, then demonstratives (e.g. articles and deictics) and quantity stems precede the nominal in the order demonstrative quantity adjective nominal.
2. If some adverbs (qualifiers) can follow an adjective, then the nominal precedes its adjective and the verb (predicate) precedes its object.
3. If a common nominal (e.g. title) precedes a proper nominal, then the nominal precedes its genitive.
4. If a relative clause precedes its antecedent nominal, then adpositions follow their object OR adjectives precede their head nominal.

The Kyuquot NP is consistent with the first and the second option of the fourth implicational universals. However, the other two universals are either partly invalid or irrelevant for Kyuquot. Nominals do not usually precede adjectivals, and common and proper nominals can cooccur in either order.

Kyuquot seems to be relatively homogeneous with respect to typology. It is typically VSO in having predicates (including subordinate ones) precede their objects or standards. The absence of an auxiliary is not surprising. Auxiliary and/or modal constituents are more characteristic of SVO languages. The main difference then between Kyuquot and what is predicted for a VSO language is that modifiers tend to precede their nominal heads. This particular phenomenon was observed and discussed by Greenberg (1963:100). He noted that the ordering of modifier and nominal head can be influenced both by other head-nonhead sequences in a language (e.g. in Kyuquot, heads (predicates) precede nonheads (adjuncts)) and by the treatment of modifiers as predicates. In Kyuquot, an adjectival or deictic (modifier) can serve as predicate and hence precede the subject NP it governs and modifies. As a result, adjectival non-NP predicates serve as an ambivalent model for the sequential organization of NP constituents. Kyuquot models the NP structure upon the semantic relations of the clause (i.e. adjectival precedes nominal) rather than the logical or grammatical relations (i.e. head precedes nonhead). This is added evidence that the language distinguishes form classes such as adjectival or nominal as well as syntactically-defined constituents such as predicate, adjunct, and oblique. Form classes are discussed in the following section on morphology.

In sum, Kyuquot is relatively consistent as a VSO language without a copula whose NP structure is modelled on the semantic values rather than the grammatical roles of constituents in simple clauses. It is typologically the same as many Phillipine Austronesian languages. More satisfyingly, it is typologically the same as other Wakashan languages and the geographically adjacent and possibly genetically-related families, Chemakuan and Salishan.

4. MORPHOLOGY

4.1. Introduction

We turn now to the formation of the Kyuquot Nootka word. The study begins with a discussion of noninflected words and focuses on interjections. Certain phonological processes which contribute a relatively stable meaning component to the word in which they occur are considered in the section on noninflected words because these processes also take place in words which cannot otherwise be affixed. These processes include emphatic length and vowel mutation, as well as vocative processes.

The rest of the section on morphology concerns inflectable stems and their formation. Inflection is first considered, beginning with the position and function of modal, tense, mood, and pronominal suffixes. Other inflectional affixes are then discussed: the passive, possessive, diminutive, iterative, and plural. Finally, nonpredicative inflection is discussed.

Aspect, which is derivational in Kyuquot and plays a pivotal role in word-formation and grammar in general, is considered in its own section. Aspectual affixes are a link between inflectional and lexical affixes. Lexical marking of aspect (i.e. by stem) is also noted in this section.

Lexical affixes are the most numerous of Nootka affixes. Derivational or *governing* are considered first. They are subclassified by their deriving function, e.g. nominalization, verbalization, etc. Nonderivational noninflectional affixes, termed *restrictive* affixes, are treated subsequently. Restrictive affixes are predominately verbal and locative. A few other affix-types, such as cranberry affixes and stem extenders, complete the discussion.

There is a brief survey of word structure constraints, followed by a summary of Kyuquot morphology (with attention to morpheme and stem classes), implications for typology, and problems requiring further research.

4.2. Noninflecting Words

4.2.1. Particles

In Nootka, there is a set of words which do not inflect. Some of these have already been examined: the article *ha*, the conjunction *?uh?is* 'and'. One, *?int* 'habitually', will be discussed with respect to aspect (cf. section 4.4.8). Onomatopoetic words and interjections remain.

Onomatopoetic words are noninflected as a rule and are perhaps best considered as grammatically appositive to a clause. In myths, the most common onomatopoetic words are those denoting the vocal and motion sounds made by the animal-like characters. Such sounds include *?hay* *?hay ?hay* (Wolf's call) and *ta-šk ta-šk ta-šk* (sound of Eagle's flight).

In personal narratives and conversations, onomatopoetic sounds have more varied sources: the sounds of people, e.g. cheering *ha-h*, crying *?a...*, sneezing *?ack ?ack*; the sounds of entities colliding, e.g. metal cups and spoons on a table *tin tin tin* or an axe chopping a piece of wood *qah qah qah...*; and the sounds of nature. As in English, onomatopoeia is found much more often in narrative monologue than in conversational dialogue.

These onomatopoetic forms commonly occur sentence-initially, but also occur sentence-finally or independently. They usually consist of a series of recurrences (generally three as in the above examples but up to five in the corpus), where vowel length lessens, quality neutralizes (i.e. approaches [əv]), and volume decreases throughout the duration of the recurrences. Consider the following sentence.

- (1) *?a... ?a ?a ?a ?a matwa-sx* Flap flap! He flew out of the cage
/?a .. mat-wit-as-x/ FLAP fly-first-on-MOM

Interjections are of two types: speaker-oriented and listener-oriented. Speaker-oriented interjections occur sentence-initially.

They reflect the speaker's (or quoted person's) emotional state as the sentence is being uttered or at the time of utterance by the quoted person himself. They can indicate an emotional response to some other person's previous utterance. Such interjections function as invitations

to the listener to share the same emotional state or attitude as the speaker who uses them but they are not a request for a verbal or other behavior response from the listener.

The bulk of speaker-oriented interjections are of the phonetic form $\left[\begin{matrix} ? \\ h \\ \sim \\ \text{v}(\cdot) \\ \text{~~~~~} \end{matrix} \right] \left[\begin{matrix} ? \\ h \\ \sim \\ \text{in} \\ \text{in} \end{matrix} \right]$, i.e. a vowel, possibly long, laryngealized, and/or nasalized, surrounded by glottal glides. There are emotional states correlating with certain phone sequences.

TABLE 9: SPEAKER-ORIENTED INTERJECTIONS

| | | | |
|-------------------|--|--------------------------|--|
| awe | [ha ^{•?}] | sadness | [?e [•]] |
| excitement | [?ih] [?á?] | anger | [?e [•]] [?in] |
| surprise | [ha ^(•)] [hi] [?v [•]] | fear | [?e [•]] (breathy) |
| surprise/pleasure | [?i [•]] [?a ^{•(h)}] | displeasure | [?ó [•]] [?á] [?í [•]] |
| pleasure (taste) | [?é [•]] | fear/dislike | [?e [•] h] [?á [•]] |
| sympathy | [?ó [•]] (breathy) | fear/excitement/pleasure | [hè [•]] |
| pleasure/success | [?á [•]] [?á [•]] [?i [•]] [?ó [•]] [hè [•]] | | |

There are also a few speaker-oriented interjections not having this phonetic structure. Transcribed phonemically, these include ?i[•]ha or hamča (surprise), ču[•] (admiration), ?axa[•] (fear), ?aka[•]y (jealousy, pain, resentment), kwan[•]ima (amazement).

Listener-oriented interjections function to organize discourse or to signal desired responses from listeners. Interjections signalling the speaker's response (as a previous listener) to the previous speaker's contribution may reflect:

1. agreement: ha^(•)?a, ha[•], hm, mhm, hawa^(•) ču[•];
2. encouragement: ?aču[•], ču[•]; or
3. understanding: ?a[•], m, hu[•], ?a[•]?a, ?a[•]h.

Interjections signalling the speaker's desire for a listener to share in some mental response include the following (the desired response being given in brackets): ?i[•] (approval), -wa (agreement), n'isi^(•) (understanding), hi[•] or ha[•]wa (amazement), ču[•]wq or ha[•]wa (admiration), hay, na^{•(h)}, wa[•]y or he[•] (attention). Most of these interjections

are sentence-initial; however, *wa* (related to *wa* 'say') is sentence-final and *n'isi* () is clause-final or occurs right after the complement *?in'*'that, since, but'. In addition, there are certain interjections which are functionally imperative. They require the listener to act in some way. Examples of these are *n'u-wa* 'listen!', *n'iča* 'look!' (related to *n'ac-* 'see'), and *ča* 'move out of the way!'.

Interjections which organize discourse do so in one of three ways. They signal the beginning, internal boundaries, or ending of a discourse, specifically a monologue. The first sentence of a narrative or even an extended explanation or description typically begins with the interjection *ču* 'well!'. Final sentences in such monologues are not thus marked. However, stories are typically closed by one of the following words: *hišuk'ñ* 'that's all!', *hawa?*ñ 'it's finished', or *ha'micx* (interjection signalling end of myth).

Finally, events which are supposed to be surprising to the listener and critical as subplot climaxes within a story or discourse are often identified by the sentence-initial interjections *si*, or *?i*. For example, in a personal story in which a drunk woman's misadventure is described, the climax sentence is the following:

- (2) *ti ti-?at& hu-?a* She fell overboard!
ti -?atu-?a .. CLIMAX sink in water-down-TEM there

Clauses marked by *?i* or *?j* to indicate a climax sentence generally have a verbal predicate and are exclamatory.

The following excerpt from a conversation carried on while examining a picture book illustrates the use of interjections.

- (3) he⁺ ?ah[?]a⁻?ñ[?]ahku ñut[?]i
 /.. ?ah[?]a⁻-?ñ[?] ñut[?]-?i⁺/ Well! There's a nice one! (a vase)
 ?o^{...} ?a⁻ni⁻s
 /.. ?a⁻ni⁻?i⁻s/
 ha⁺wa ticitim
 /.. ticit-im/
 njhm Well! There's a nice one! (a vase)
 ATTENTION there-TEM this nice-DEF
 Yeah, it's very nice
 PLEASURE really-IND
 My, what a mat!
 ADMIRATION lay out-in house-NOM
 AGREEMENT

There are also particles which are neither onomatopoetic, nor emotion-expressing, nor discourse-organizing. One is *?aqistik*, also occurring in the truncated forms *qistik*, (*?a*)*qistix*, and (*?a*)*xištix*. This is a filler used to denote a stem which is temporarily forgotten or to fill a pause during which the forgotten word is retrieved. Although it typically replaces a nominal or NP as in (4), it also replaces verbal or adjectival predicates.

- (4) *qʷa·qʷa·?i:kitq ?aqistik nuča·t-?ath y'a?is* It's like um Neuchatlat
/qʷa·-·?i:kw [R]-?i-tq .. nuča-t-?ath ../ clams
 like-given to..-REL um Neuchatlat-..place butterclam

4.2.2. Emphatic Morphemes

As mentioned above, the only morphemes which can associate with particles as well as with inflected words are the emphatic morphemes. The first such morpheme is emphatic vowel mutation. Such vowel mutation is not predictable at present, although it appears to occur only for certain words. Examples of such mutated vowels are found in the following words.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| (5) <i>so·c'up tani</i> | a REALLY (BIG) king salmon |
| <i>/sa·c'up-[Vchange].../</i> | king salmon-EMPH really |
| (6) <i>pešak</i> | BAD |
| <i>/piš-[Vchange]-uk/</i> | bad-EMPH-DUR |

In general, both back and front vowels centralize as an indication of emphasis. Such lowering of *i* and *u* is normally characteristic of those vowels in the environment of low and back consonants but not in the environment of front or high back consonants. It is possible that this centralizing process may account for the occurrence of midvowels in interjections, as in [*?ò*•], [*?è*•], and [*hè*•]. Forms similar to these, but having the vowels *i*(•) and *u*(•) are interjections themselves and might have been the sources of the interjections with central or mid vowels.

The second emphatic sign is vowel length. In Kyuquot, vowel length can be phonemic. For example, *a* and *a•* contrast in the pair

nani 'granny' and *na·ni* 'grizzly bear'. Vowel length can also be morphemic in Kyuquot, in that it can denote a morpheme, the gradutive aspect. Contrast the pair *?athšik* 'it became night' and *?a·thšik* 'it slowly became night'. Length can also be a sign of general emphasis, as in English *re···ally bi···g!* or *she tri···ed to stop!*. Emphatic vowel length occurs for virtually all interjections. In fact, although interjections marked as having a long vowel may be pronounced so that the vowel is no longer than a phonemically long vowel in the language, it is more common to find that the vowel is emphatically long, i.e. longer than a phonemically long vowel. A second class of words typically lengthened for emphasis is the deictic class, e.g. *hu···* 'WAY over there' or *hu···yis* 'WAY over on the beach'. Emphatic vowel lengthening can occur within stems of any semantic class.

The site of emphatic vowel lengthening varies. In single-syllable words, there is only one possible site, as in *?i···h maht* 'a BIG house' or *hit'an qí···* 'he was there a LONG time!'. In multi-syllabic words, the first syllable of the word may be emphatically lengthened.

- (7) *hi···taucht* They're coming out of the forest!
hita-(c)*suhta-[L]/* there(MOM)-come out of woods-EMPH.

Alternatively, the last syllable of a word can be lengthened. This long syllable can be either a stem syllable or an inflectional affix.

- (8) *qu·?as tani* ... What a guy!
tani-[L]/ adult really-EMPH.

- (9) *watša·?ni···š* We're HOME!
/wat-ši(x)-ač-n-iš-[L]/ go home-MOM-TEM-IP-IND-EMPH

- (10) *nu·tka··· ciqa···* She was REALLY circling and singing
/nu·tk-(y)a-[L] ciq-(y)a-[L]/ circle-CONT-EMPH speak-CONT-EMPH

- (11) *?athi···* It was a LONG night
?ath-(y)i-[L]/ night-..time-EMPH

In addition, emphatic vowel lengthening occasionally occurs in both an initial vowel and a final vowel in the same word.

One distinctive characteristic of lengthening vowels for emphasis is that it applies to underlying vowels in some cases. For example, a final vowel which would otherwise be absent in a word's surface form can be present if emphatically lengthened, as in (14) which contrasts with the unemphatic forms in (15).

- (12) *c'a?i·c'u···* It all flowed out!
/c'a-:?i:-c'u-[L]/ flow-go to...-in container-EMPH

- (13) *c'a?i-* It all flowed out

In general, the most common site for emphatic lengthening is the final vowel of a noninflected stem. Emphatic vowel lengthening is also a common characteristic of English words or phrases used in Kyuquot language contexts such as story-telling. Examples include *they go... that way!* or *to...ts a waqt (frogs)*.

The third emphatic sign is vocative vowel length and mutation. This phenomenon, although mostly associated with inflectable stems, marginally applies to interjections as well. Vocative morphemes include the phonological processes and one affix which together identify a word or sentence as being in a long-distance and/or high volume address mode.

The rules of vocativization are as follows:

1. The final vowel of all nominals, stems affixed by $-?i^{\circ}$ DEF and matrix predicates are optionally lengthened (to either phonemically or emphatically long) in sentences which are called out because the speaker is giving a command or the listeners are far away. Addressed NP's (either nominals or stems affixed by $-?i^{\circ}$) and imperative verbal forms (the latter only in long-distance contexts) are obligatorily lengthened.
2. A final vowel lengthened by the above rule and occurring in a nominal stem referring to the addressee is lowered, optionally to [æ·] for the vowel /i·/ and obligatorily to [ɔ·] for the vowel /u·/.
3. Subsequently, the following breaking rule applies: $i^{\circ} \rightarrow a:y/\underline{\quad}\#$. This last rule is obligatory where i° is part of a definite affix ($-?i^{\circ}$) affixed to a nonnominal stem coreferential to the addressee or to any stem coreferential to a nonaddressee. Otherwise the rule is optional.

The following chart summarizes the results of the above rules by

giving the surface form of word-final vowels for different classes of words present in address mode sentences.

TABLE 10: VOCATIVE VARIANTS OF FINAL VOWELS

| | a(.) | i(.)# | i(.)C | u(.)# | u(.)C |
|-------------------------|------|----------|---------|-------|-------|
| addressee N | a: | i: ~ a:y | i: ~ a: | u: | o: |
| addressee {V, A, L} -?i | | a:y | | | |
| nonaddressee X-?i | | a:y | | | |
| imperative V | | i: ~ a:y | i: | | |
| nonaddressee N | (a:) | (i:) | (i:) | (u:) | (u:) |
| other predicates | | | | | |

As the table indicates, addressee nominals always have a long final vowel.

- (14) *qu?isinn'i...t ~ qu?isinn'a...t* Raven!
/qu?is-in-m'i-t-[L, V change]/ raven-NOM-mythicāl male..-VOC
- (15) *nami... ~ namay* (Do it) Grandpa!
/nami-[L, V change]/ grandparent-VOC
- (16) *tu'ko...k* O sea lion!
/tu'ku-k-[L, V change]/ sea lion-VOC

Definitized stems end in ..a:y rather than the expected ..i:
when in a vocative clause.

- (17) *wi·minta·y* You warriors!
/wi·na-int-?i-[L, V change]/ attack-PAST-DEF-VOC
- (18) *wikhtina·y' qu?as* You crazy man!
/wik-htin-?i-[L, V change]/ nothing-made of..-DEF-VOC adult
- (19) *hi·simsa·y'* You providers!
/his-im-sa-[L]-?i-[L, V change]/ there-bring home..-DEF-VOC

Imperative stems ending in the -'i' IMPV morpheme optionally undergo breaking when serving as a constituent of an address mode utterance.

- (20) *sisiqši?i... ~ sisiqši?a...y* Stretch your legs!
/CV#siq-ši(x)-i-[L, V change]/ distrib-extend-MOM-IMPV-VOC

The table also indicates that not only addressees and imperative predicates are marked in address mode clauses. Definitized NP's not coreferential to the addressee also undergo the breaking rule.

- (21) *č'i?asa·q̥wac hu·n'a·y* You're supposed to cut up the whale!
/č'i-as-a:q̥-wa-a-c hu-n'i-i-[L,V change]/
 cut-about to..-FUT-QUOT-II(IND) whale-DEF-VOC

- (22) *ka·?a t'an'a?isay* Hand over the child!
/.. t'an'a-is-i-[L,V change]/ hand over child-DIM-DEF-VOC

In addition, nonimperative predicates are optionally marked as occurring in vocative clauses by the presence of a final extra-long vowel.

- (23) *haw'ita...?s* There's the chief!
/haw'it-a-?s-[L]/ chief-EVID-VOC
- (24) *hu·n'i?ik'a·q̥cu·wa...?s* You're all going to get some whale!
/hu·n'i-q-i(?) [L]-?a:q̥-c-u:w-a-?s-[L]/
 whale-COMB-go to take.-FUT-INF-IIp-EVID-VOC

Imperative particles ending in the future morpheme -k and certain interjections are rendered vocative by the affixing of -a:y to the end of the word.

- (25) *hawa'y* Hey!
/hawa-a:y/ SURPRISE-VOC
- (26) *čuk'a·?ak'a:y* Come on home!
/čuk'a-ak-k-a:y/ come on!-TEM-FUT(come)-VOC

The vocative marking discussed above is obligatory only when the speaker is calling out in a loud voice, especially to listeners at some distance, e.g. from a canoe in the sea to people on the beach, from a woman in a village to her husband coming out of the woods, from someone outside a house to someone inside it, etc. In nonobligatory contexts (i.e. where the vocative is appropriate but optional, e.g. a forceful command), often only one of the potentially marked words is in fact marked; for example, the predicate, the addressee NP, or some other NP.

4.3. Inflection

This next section concerns the normal predicative inflection of all stems. Inflectional affixes are distinguished from other affixes by the following characteristics (cf. also section 4.6). First, they never precede noninflectional affixes. Second, an inflectional mood, tense, or mode morpheme affixed to a predicate has within its scope a whole clause. Other inflectional affixes, such as *-m'inh* PL, *-?is* DIM, *-at* PASS, *-uk* POSS, and *-ka* 'again', can be attached to a predicate when the affix is actually appropriate (semantically) to a nonpredicative clausal constituent such as an adjunct (i.e. a subject or object NP).

When inflectional suffixes cooccur, it is in a fixed order: PL - DIM - MODE - TENSE - PASS - POSS - MOOD - PRO - MOOD - TENSE - IT (IT standing for 'again, iterative'). MODE, TENSE, and MOOD designate sets of morphemes which are not necessarily in complementary distribution.

In contrast, the members of the PRO (pronominal) set cannot cooccur within one stem.

4.3.1. Mode

Modes are distinguished from moods in Kyuquot by the following characteristics.

1. Modes can occur with each other and with moods, whereas most moods cannot cooccur.
2. Modes precede tense morphemes, whereas moods follow them.
3. Modes have no influence on the choice of the pronominal suffix series.

This choice is a function of a stem's mood.

4. Modes focus on the speaker's viewpoint: *-cim* 'I prefer..!', *-ckwa* 'I figure/deduce..', *-matak* 'I think..', and *-ah* 'I pretend/assume..'.

In contrast, moods focus on the assertion itself: its factuality (as real, subordinate, conditional, or unreal) and its source (observation, hearsay, deduction, or quotation).

There are five modes, four of which occur in predicates inflected for a variety of moods and one which occurs only in predicates inflected for the relative indefinite mood *-(y)i*. The first four modes are ordered as follows: *-cim* POSS is leftmost, *-ah* is rightmost, *-matak*

PROB and *-ckʷa* MUST cooccur in either order. The final mode, *-wu:s* IRREL, does not occur with the others.

By far the most common mode is *-matak* PROB, which can mean 'possibly, probably, maybe, perhaps, I think...'. It can be present in a word inflected for any tense or not inflected for tense at all.

- (27) *sa:sinmatk* I think it's probably a hummingbird
- (28) *qi:matakʷx* It's probably been quite a while
/qi:-matak-ʷx/ long time-PROB-TEM
- (29) *x'ičimmatkʷa:qʷx* I'm pretty sure she'll shoot
/x'i-či(ʷ)-matak-ʷa:qʷx/ shoot-MOM-PROB-FUT
- (30) *huqsa:pmatkinti:k* I think you dumped it
/huq-sa:p-matak-int-(y)i:-k/ spill-MOMCAUS-PROB-PAST-INDF-II

The *-matak-ʷa:qʷx* sequence can also mean 'might intend to'; the *-matak-int* sequence can also mean 'might have'.

The second most common mode is *-ckʷa* MUST, meaning 'must have, must, probably'. It signifies that an assertion has been deduced on the basis of evidence rather than experience of the event itself. Like *-matak*, it occurs with any tense or in the absence of a tense morpheme.

- (31) *huqsa:pckʷ* He must have dumped it (the stuff was no longer around)
/huq-sa:p-ckʷa:/ spill-MOMCAUS-MUST
- (32) *ha?ukckʷx* She's probably eaten it by now
(she's had enough time)
/ha?uk-ckʷa:-təx/ eat(DUR)-MUST-TEM
- (33) *huqsa:pckʷa:qʷx* She must be going to spill
- (34) *huqsa:pckʷint* She must have already dumped it

The source of evidence indicated by *-ckʷa* can be verbal (when an event or fact is reported) or physical (when a certain object is absent, present, or somehow effected, e.g. made wet).

The other modes are less common. Whereas *-matak* qualifies an assertion by identifying it as an opinion of the speaker and *-ckʷa*.

qualifies an assertion by lowering its empirical claim to factuality (because it is based on deduction rather than observation or experience), -cim POSB and -^{ah}IRR render an assertion unrealis. The -cim morpheme lends a sense of urgency, duty, or emphasis to an assertion, and can be translated as 'would certainly', should, ought, might'. It is not present in a stem inflected for future tense.

- (35) ha[?]ukcimyi^s I would CERTAINLY eat (if..)
 /ha?uk-cim-(y)i:-s/ eat(DUR)-POSB-INDF-I
- (36) yuq^wa^{*}cim[?]axi^s I'd REALLY like to (but can't)
 /yuq^wa^{*}-cim[?]ax(y)i:-s/ also-POSB-TEM-INDF-I
- (37) wikciminti^k q^wa^{*}ap You shouldn't have been doing it
 /wik-cim-int-(y)i:-k q^wa^{*}-³ap/ not-POSB-PAST-INDF-II thus-CAUS
- (38) ?ača^{*}qcimnaha q^wis Who might have done it?
 /?ača^{*}q-cim-na-ha^{*}-a: ... who?-POSB-PAST-QUE* do

The fourth mode, -^{ah}IRR, is the unrealis mode, meaning 'would (have)'. It gives no sense of urgency, duty, etc. but rather indicates that the assertion thus marked is an alternative to what is true concerning an event or state, in either past, present, or future.

- (39) m^oiňšt[?]ahč It might rain (according to him)
 /m^oiň-ši(?)-³ahč/ rain-MOM-IRR-INF
- (40) ?uk^wi^{*}čcip^{*}ahax^s You could make me one!
 /?uk^wi^{*}-čci^{*}p-³ah-³ax^{*}-i⁰-s/ it-make..-for-IRR-TEM-IMPV-I
- (41) huqsa^{*}p^{*}ahi^{*}k You might be dumping it right now
 /huqsa^{*}p-³ah-(y)i:-k/ spill-MOMCAUS-IRR-INDF-II
- (42) huqsa^{*}p^{*}aha^{*}q^wk He might be going to dump it later
- (43) huqsa^{*}p^{*}ahint He might have dumped it earlier

A mode semantically dominates any mode occurring to its left. Thus, -ck^wa^{*}-matak 'possibly, appears' has the notion of probability dominant, whereas the evidential notion is subordinate. In the reverse morpheme sequence, -matak-ck^wa^{*} 'must have (possibly)', it is the notion of evidentiality, contributed by -ck^wa^{*}, which is dominant.

- (44) *ta[?]itt*i*[?]itak^wamatk* I think he's pretending to be sick
 (based on how he looks)

/ta[?]itt^t*i*[?]ita[L]-ck^wa;-matak/ sick-pretend to... MUST-PROB

- (45) *ta[?]itt*i*[?]itamatakick^w* He's evidently pretending to be sick

The morpheme *-matak* may also modify *-cim* POSSB. In such a case, what is asserted to be possible includes the urgency, duty, or other emphatic irrealis information transmitted by *-cim*.

- (46) *k^wacincimmatk* I think it could break
 /k^wa-si(?)-cim-matak/ break-MOM-POSB-PROB

Similarly, *-ck^wa* MUST can modify *-cim*. In that case, the evidentiality has precedence; i.e. the speaker is qualifying his assertion of duty or strong possibility by indicating that his assertion is based on evidence and deduction rather than on observed, reported, or generally known fact.

- (47) *k^wacincimck^w* It is evident that it could break

Finally, the irrealis mode, *-ah*, can qualify all the other modes previously discussed, thereby rendering the qualified assertion irrealis.

- (48) *huqsa[?]p^wcim[?]ahint* He could have spilled it (but didn't)

- (49) *huqsa[?]pck^wahint* She was evidently going to spill it
 (but didn't)

- (50) *huqsa[?]pmatk[?]ahint* She might have spilled it, I think

The mode *-wu:s* IRREL occurs only in relative clause predicates inflected for the indefinite relative mood *-(y)i:*

- (51) *yaqw^wsati qahsa[?]p^t* I wonder whom he might have been
 killed by (if he is killed)

/yaq^w-wu:s-[?]at-(y)i: qah-sa[?]p-[?]at/
 who-IRREL-PASS-INDF die-MOMCAUS-PASS

As a mode, *-wu:s* has no influence on the choice of past tense allomorph.

The morpheme *-wu:s* IRREL has arisen due to a reanalysis of the irrealis mood **-wu:si:* (found, for example, in Port Alberni Nootka). This reanalysis is incomplete in either a diachronic or morphological sense because there are structures in which *-wu:s* occurs following a tense morpheme

and behaves like a mood, being responsible for the choice of past tense morpheme. As an irrealis mood, -wu:si: occurs with the past tense allo-morph -na, whereas a realis mood such as -(y)i: INDF occurs with the allomorph -int. In other structures, -wu:s preceded the tense morpheme and behaves like a mode. Compare (52) and (53):

- (52) yaqnu·si
/yaqʷ-na-wu:si:/

I wonder who it might have been
who-PAST-IRREL

- (53) yaqnu·satinti
/yaqʷ-wu:s-s-ət-int-(y)i:/

I wonder/whom it might have been
done by
who-IRREL-PASS-PAST-INDF

In (52) the irrealis mood associates with -na; in (53) the indefinite (but not irrealis) mood associates with -int.

4.3.2. Tense

In Kyuquot, tense morphemes follow the mode morphemes and can be ordered as follows: FUTURE TEMPORAL PAST (cf. examples (68) and (69) for support). Tense is commonly unspecified in Kyuquot. In such unmarked predicates, the assertion can be true for past or present, whether perfective or not.

- (54) m'ix̚ix
/m'ix-ši(χ)/

It rained (previously)/ It rains
rain-MOM

- (55) m'ixa
/m'ix-(y)a/

It was/is raining
rain-CONT

- (56) m'ix̚i·č̚
/m'ix-či·či(χ)/

It was/is starting to rain
rain-INC

Future assertions which are hortative ('let's...!') or imperative are commonly unmarked for future, and even nonhortative nonimperative assertions can be unmarked for future, although this latter case is less common.

- (57) wač̚i?in.
/wač-ši(χ)-i-n/

Let's go home (tomorrow)!
go home-MOM-IMPV-IP

- (58) ?i·qhi ?aya
/?i-qhi-[L] ..

There will still be a lot
same-DUR-GRAD many

There is no simple future tense in Kyuquot; that is, an inflectional affix indicating that an event will occur subsequent to the utterance-defined present. Instead, there is a morpheme $-?a:q\check{x}$ FUT which unites the sense of future tense with that of intention, at least in contexts where there is the possibility of control or intention by a participant. This participant need be neither speaker nor subject.

- (59) *qaḥsa·p?* $a:q\check{x}$ *tñiš* We will all be killed!
/qaḥ-sd·p-?a:q\check{x}-at-n-iš/ die-MOMCAUS-FUT-PASS-IP-IND

The time of the event marked by $-?a:q\check{x}$ can be prior or subsequent to the utterance-defined present (i.e. the present defined as the time of the utterance). When $-?a:q\check{x}$ occurs with $-int$ PAST, the event can occur either in the future but prior to some subsequent event (as in (60)) or in the past but subsequent to some other related event (as in (61)).

- (60) *hininqu Bill : ?usi·k?* $a:q\check{x}intin$ When Bill comes, we'll have made it
/hin.-in-qu: .. ?u-si·k-?a:q\check{x}-int-in/ there(MOM)-come-COND .. it-finish..-FUT-PAST-IP

- (61) *?uci·čk?* $a:q\check{x}int$ *t'así·s* He was intending to go to Tahsis
/?u-c-?i:-ši(č)-?a:q\check{x}-at-int .. / it-at-go to...-MOM-FUT-TEM-PAST Tahsis

The future occurrence of an event can be identified by $-?a:q\check{x}$ if the predication is based on knowledge of intent. For example, in a transitive predicate, the agent is known to have the intent and power to cause the event to occur.

- (62) *k'iñsa·p?* $a:q\check{x}$ He will/intends to break it
/k'iñ-sa·p-?a:q\check{x}/ break-MOMCAUS-FUT

The use of $-?a:q\check{x}$ is appropriate even if the predicate is passive as in (59). Intransitive predicates can also be marked by $-?a:q\check{x}$ if an agent, whether specified or not, can be held as responsible for the event.

- (63) *k'iñšiña·q\check{x}* It will break!
/k'iñ-ši(č)-?a:q\check{x}/ break-MOM-FUT

For example, sentence (63) would be appropriate if someone is holding

an object over the edge of a table by one finger.

To contrast the control and noncontrol situations, consider the appropriate contexts for the following sentences.

- (64) *qahši^x?a^{*}q^xmatk* I think he will die
/qah-ši(x)-?a:q^x-matak/ die-MOM-FUT-PROB

- (65) *qahši^wic^{*}matk* I think he's about to die
/qah-ši(x)-w'it^was-matak/ die-MOM-about to...-PROB

In the *-?a:q^x* version, some agent has control over the person's dying.

It could be an executioner, an evil shaman, or a charging animal. In the *-w'it^was* version, there is not necessarily an agent. The person may have been slowly dying of a chronic disease and now nearing the end.

In contexts where no controlling participant can be posited, *-?a:q^x* occurs as a future marker.

- (66) *m^wini^xč^xa^{*}q^x* It's going to rain
/m^w.ini-ci^xi(x)-?a:q^x/ rain-INC-FUT

Consultants acknowledge that, in the past, certain ritual actions might have triggered such normally uncontrolled events.

By far the most commonly occurring tense morphemes are *-'atx* and *-int (~-na)*. In this work, *-'atx* has been identified as TEM ('temporal'). It cannot be defined as denoting the present tense because it can occur with the future or the past tense.

- (67) *t' in' isin^p?a^{*}q^x'at^xti^wsu* You're all going to be made to throw them down on the beach then
/t' i-n' is-inip-?a:q^x-'at-(y)i:-su:/
 throw-at beach slope-MOMCAUS-FUT-TEM-PASS-INDF-IIp

- (68) *ha^wuk^xint* She ate at that point/ She has eaten
 She has been eating and still is

The function of *-'atx* is to indicate that the event asserted occurs at a specified time or during a specified time duration. It can also indicate that an event occurring prior to some utterance has an effect still experienced at the time that utterance is produced. This latter function is somewhat similar to that of a perfect tense or aspect.

Contrast the meanings of the following two sentences.

- (69) *nawi-čnah*
/nawa-či-či(č)-na-ha·/
- (70) *nawi-ča?nah*
/nawa-či-či(č)-ča-na-ha·/

Did she visit him?

near-INC-PAST-QUE

Has she visited him?

near-INC-TEM-PAST-QUE

A predicate need not be realis in order to include the $-'ak$ morpheme.

Negative predicates and irrealis modes or moods, e.g. $-'ah$ IRR, $-cim$ POSB, and $-qu:$ COND, can all accompany $-'ak$.

- (71) *qʷa·?ap'či·k nawač : puxša·?qu* Leave it thus until it's risen
/qʷa-?ap-'ak-(y)i:-k .. pux-či(č)-'ak-qu:/
 thus-CAUS-TEM-INDF-II wait light-MOM-TEM-COND

On the other hand, $-'ak$ is not appropriate in generic predicates or stative predicates if the asserted generic event or state continues through time (including the present).

- (72) *wabšič(*-'ak) ?int* He goes home regularly
/wab-či(č) ... / go home-MOM habitually
- (73) *huhtik(*-'ak)i:s qu?asi* I know the man
/huhtik-(y)i:-s qu?as-i:/ know-INDF-I adult-DEF

The past tense allomorphs $-int$, $-nit$, and $-na$ are in complementary distribution. The latter one, $-na$, accompanies subordinate and irrealis mood morphemes, i.e. the possessive, relative, subordinate, dubitative, interrogative, and conditional. With other mood morphemes, $-nit$ is chosen when the tense morpheme follows a first-syllable vowel and $-int$ occurs elsewhere. Contrast the following sentences.

- (74) *wa-niti:s* I said it
/wa--nit-(y)i:-s/ say-PAST-INDF-I
- (75) *wa-mačqčinti:s* I wanted to say it
/wa--mačqč-int-(y)i:-s/ say-want to..-PAST-INDF-I

The past morpheme can indicate that an event or state occurred in a time prior to the speaker's present or prior to some other event occurring in the speaker's future as in (60) or past as in (76).

(76) *hawi-chinti-s ?uci-ch : q'wiya-tq phone*

/hawi-ⁱ-^{či}(x)-int-(y)i:-s ?u-c-.?i:-^{či}(x) q'wi-(y)a-?i-tq .. /

finish-INC-PAST-INDF-I it-at-go to...MOM which-time-REL phone

I had already been there (and back) when he phoned

Typically, in contexts where two events are both past but one is also past with respect to the other, the more recent one is unmarked for tense.

The stylistics of tense usage is beyond the scope of this work. However, it can be noted that time as a point in relation to the time when an utterance is produced is also indicated by noninflectional suffixes (cf. for example sections 4.4.5 and 4.4.6).

4.3.3. Mood and Pronominal Suffixes

The tense affixes precede the mood affixes. Each mood morpheme associates with one set of pronominal suffixes (except the inferential (INF) and quotative (QUOT) which must associate with some other mood morpheme responsible for the choice of pronominal suffix). The mood and pronominal affixes are positioned as follows.

TABLE 11: POSITION OF MOOD AND PRONOMINAL AFFIXES

| CLASS | MOOD | MOOD |
|-------------|--|---------------|
| Subordinate | Relative Possessive Subordinate Relative Indef. | |
| Irrealis | Dubitative Purpose Interrogative Conditional | (INF) |
| Indefinite | Indefinite | |
| Realis | Absolutive | (INF) (QUOT). |
| | | «QUOT» |
| Imperative | Imperative | |

PRONOUN
SUFFIX

(Evidential)
Indicative «QUOT»

The above chart indicates that most mood morphemes precede the pronominal affix and that most moods are in complementary distribution.

The majority of mood affixes occur with one set of pronominal affixes, the *absolutive* series. The *absolutive* series can occur without a mood affix present. In this case, the predicate thus marked is in the *absolutive* (i.e. unmarked) mood. Those mood affixes occurring with the *absolutive* series are: relative indefinite -(y)i: INDF, dubitative -qa•č DUB, interrogative -ha• QUE, conditional -qu: COND, subordinate -qa• SUB, and the evidential -a• ſs EVID. These mood and pronominal series are given below. The pronominal forms are straightforward: I, II, and III refer to first, second, and third person respectively; Ip is not specified as inclusive or exclusive; plural forms refer only to plural referents. The morpheme -?a• PL is included in the paradigms although it is not treated here as a pronominal suffix.

In the following paradigms, where a morpheme sequence has an alternate underlying form which is abstract but which would yield the same output by the operation of regular phonological rules and which regularizes the paradigm, this alternate form is added in slash brackets. Recall that long vowels are long in first or second syllables only and that obligatorily long vowels unprotected by a consonant are short in third and later syllables.

| | <u>ABSOLUTIVE</u> | <u>INDEFINITE</u> | <u>SUBORDINATE</u> | <u>DUBITATIVE</u> |
|------|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| I | -s | -(y)i:-s | -qa•-s | -qa•-c /qa•č'-s/ |
| II | -k | -(y)i:-k | -qa•-k | -qa•č'-k |
| III | Ø | -(y)i: | -qa• | -qa•č' |
| Ip | -in | -(y)i-n /-(y)i:-in/ | -q-in /-qa•-in/ | -qa•č'-in |
| IIp | -su: | -(y)i:-su: | -qa•-su: | -qa•-cu: /-qa•č'-su:/ |
| IIIp | -?a•t | -?a•t | -qa•?t /-qa•-?a•t/ | -qa•č?at /-qa•č?-?a•t/ |
| | <u>EVIDENTIAL</u> | <u>INTERROGATIVE</u> | <u>CONDITIONAL</u> | |
| I | -s-a• ſs | -ha•-s | -qu:-s | |
| II | | -ha•-k | -qu:-k | |
| III | -a• ſs | -ha• | -qu: | |
| Ip | -in-a• ſs /-in-a• ſs/ | -h-in /-ha•-in/ | -qu-n /-qu:-in/ | |
| IIp | | -ha•-su: | -qu:-su: | |
| IIIp | -a• ſs?at /-a• ſs-?a• t/ | -ha•?t /-ha•-?a•t/ | -qu:-?at /-qu:-?a•t/ | |

The other moods are each associated with a unique pronominal series, although the morphemes for any person are phonologically similar. The other pronominal series will be presented as the associated mood is discussed. The vertical ordering of moods in Table 11 represents a rough categorization of the moods by their morphological characteristics (e.g. position with respect to the pronominal series, privilege of occurrence with qualifying moods) and function.

4.3.3.1. Subordinating Moods

The subordinating moods or mood compounds are considered first. There are five: relative, subordinate, possessive, indefinite relative, and irrealis indefinite relative. This last mood, or mood compound (*-wu:s-(y)i:*) is posited for cases where *-wu:s*, the relative irrealis morpheme, follows mode and tense suffixes. The relative mood paradigm is similar to the subordinate, but begins with *-?i·t* in second and third person. The following paradigms are given in both synchronic and abstract (diachronic) underlying forms.

| | RELATIVE | DIACHRONIC SOURCE |
|------|-------------|-------------------|
| I | -qa·-s | -qa·-s |
| II | -?i·t-k | -?i·t-qa·-k |
| III | -?i·t-q | -?i·t-qa· |
| Ip | -q-in | -qa·-in |
| IIIp | -?i·t-q-su: | -?i·t-qa·-su: |
| IIIp | -?i·t-q-ač | -?i·t-qa·-?ač |

Vowel elision, shortening, and loss account for all differences between the relative forms and their posited sources, except for the absence of *q* in the second person singular. In a sequence of two or three stops, the second to last surfaces as a fricative if it is a back consonant. Evidently, this fricative has been lost in this paradigm. The derivation of second person singular would involve the following stages: *-?i·t-qa·k* → *-?i·t-qa-k* → *-?i·t-q-k* → *-?i·t-x-k* → *-?i·t-k* (by vowel length assignment, vowel loss (in third or later syllable), fricativization, and consonant deletion).

The possessive mood is similar to both subordinate and relative

moods. It is, however, reserved for nominals and is discussed as part of NP inflection.

Subordinating moods are found affixed to the head predicate of relative clauses and mood-marked discourse-subordinate coordinate clauses or sentences. Within relative clauses, either the definite relative $-?i \cdot tq$ or the indefinite (relative) $-(y)i:$ must be present. The indefinite relative occurs if the subject or the content of the relative predicate is not uniquely and positively identified to the matrix subject, the speaker, or the listener.

- (77) *hayimh qwisi* They don't know what happened (but the
 $/.. qwisi-(y)i:/$ speaker and/or listener might)
 not know happen-INDF
- (78) *qwa^aʔa^aqni ʔu^acma* I wonder what the woman will be like
 $/qwa^a-ʔa^aqni-(y)i: .. /$ thus-FUT-INDF woman
- (79) *?uh*i*·s ha qu^a?asi yaqinti t'ip'its^a* That's the guy that fell
 $/?u-h-?i·s .. qu^a?as-i· yaq^w-int-(y)i: t'i-p-it-ši(x)$
 it-ABS-IND the adult-DEF which-PAST-INDF sink-edge-MOM

In example (79), the speaker assumes that the listener is not aware of the identity of the bound referent of the relative clause (at least until the sentence is uttered). When the identity of a relative clause's bound referent is unknown only to the listener(s), it is grammatical to use either $-?i \cdot tq$ or $-(y)i:$.

If the content of a relative clause is irrealis and has an indefinite element (referent or content), the morpheme *-wu:s* is present.

- (80) *qwisiwu:si* I wonder what might happen
 $/qwi's-wu:s-(y)i:/$ happen-IRREL-INDF
- (81) *yaquwu:si haptšik* Who might hide?
 $/yaq^w-wu:s-(y)i: hapt-šik/$ which-IRREL-INDF hide-MOM
- (82) *hayimhiyi:s qwa^awu:si* I don't know what it might be like
 $/hayimhi-(y)i:-s qwa^a-wu:s-(y)i:/$ not know-INDF-I thus-IRREL-INDF

This morpheme, *-wu:s*, is found only in relative clauses and only with the mood $-(y)i:$.

Although a relative clause with a nondefinite antecedent must have its head predicate affixed by $-(y)i:$, an unrealis relative clause need not be affixed by $-wu:s$. Unrealis relative clauses are also marked by $-'ah$ IRR, the unrealis mode. Consider the following sentences.

- (83) $q^w i?i \cdot c w u \cdot s i$ I wonder what he might be eating
 $/q^w i \cdot i \cdot c \cdot w u : s \cdot -(y)i:/$ what-eat..-IRREL-INDF

- (84) $q^w i?i \cdot c' a h i$ I wonder what he might be eating
 $/q^w i \cdot i \cdot c \cdot 'a h \cdot -(y)i:/$ what-eat..-IRR-INDF

These two unrealis morphemes, $-wu:s$ and $-'ah$, do not cooccur. There is at least one difference in their functions. Both $-wu:s$ and $-'ah$ occur with past morphemes but only $-'ah$ occurs with the future morpheme $?a:q\kappa$. This might be because $-wu:s$ itself conveys a notion of futurity. However, other modal or temporal notions are redundantly specified by cooccurring morphemes, e.g. the evidential in $-ck^w a \cdot -a \cdot \eta s$ MUST-EVID.

When the antecedent of a relative clause is uniquely and positively identified to at least one of the matrix subject or the speaker, the definite relative mood is used, affixed to the relative predicate. In addition, when the knowledge of the identity is to be emphasized (for the matrix or relative subject), the relative definite mood can be used even if that identity is not known to the speaker. In the past tense, i.e. when affixed by $-na$, the relative and subordinate moods are neutralized in that the subordinate mood is used in place of the relative mood as well as in contexts calling for the subordinate mood. Contrast the following relative clauses, differing semantically only in tense:
 $yaq \cdot ?i \cdot t q \ napni \cdot t$ 'the one who is a priest' and $yaq \cdot na \cdot q \ napni \cdot t$ 'the one who was a priest'.

Relative clauses can stand as formally independent sentences. An $?i \cdot t q$ -marked clause can be a conversationally-deictic assertion, such as 'that's what he did or that's whom he did it to. A $-(y)i:$ -marked clause can be a rhetorical content question. Only predicates identified by relative bases can be affixed by definite relative affixes; only predicates consisting of relative bases and affixed by $-(y)i:$ or consisting of interrogative bases and affixed by $-ha$ can be interpreted as content questions.

The subordinate mood *-qa* and the indefinite (relative) mood *-(y)i*, but not the relative mood *-?i·tq*, are also found in nonrelative clauses. The subordinate mood is limited in its distribution. In one set of 1300 sentences from fifteen texts (including myths, conversations, and personal narratives), there were no instances of subordinate *-qa* other than those marking a complement as unrealis, either because it was untrue (as in (85)) or because it was the reverse of the state or event which one wished were true.

- (85) *?uqh̥tip su·ha·q* He thought it was a salmon
 /.. *su·ha·-qa·/* think salmon-SUB

There are instances of *-qa* as a matrix predicate mood in clauses which are discourse subordinate.

- (86) *?uhtinq p'ic̥ip* It's made of cedarbark
 /*u-h̥tin-qa* ···/ it-made of..-SUB cedarbark

In contrast, *-(y)i* is very common. The discussion of its use is found in section 4.3.3.5.

4.3.3.2. Irrealis Moods

The next set of moods are the irrealis moods: purposive, interrogative, conditional, and dubitative. These moods (except for the last one) are optionally qualified by the inferential mood *-č* and cannot be qualified by the quotative mood *-wa*.

The purposive mood identifies an aim or purpose and has a unique pronominal suffix paradigm.

| | PURPOSIVE | DIACHRONIC SOURCE |
|------|------------------|---------------------|
| I | <i>-'a:(h)s</i> | <i>-'a:- (h)-s</i> |
| II | <i>-'a:-c</i> | <i>-'a:-t -a*c</i> |
| III | <i>-'a:-t</i> | <i>-'a:-t</i> |
| Ip | <i>-'a:-n</i> | <i>-'a: -in</i> |
| IIp | <i>-'a:-cu:</i> | <i>-'a:-t -su:</i> |
| IIIp | <i>-'a:-t-at</i> | <i>-'a:-t -?a*t</i> |

This paradigm consists basically of a morpheme (sequence) *-'a:-t* preceding the absolute series. Exceptions are the second person, indicated

by an indicative rather than an absolute pronominal affix, and the first person's absence of *-t* and presence of *-h*. The optional omission of *-h* appears to be a Kyuquot innovation which serves to regularize the paradigm. Port Alberni Nootka, for example, has *h* in the first person singular only but it is obligatory there (cf. Sapir and Swadesh 1939:242).

Examples of the purposive mood are given below.

- (87) *?ukʷi·c' a·(h)s* That's so I can have my own
/?ukʷa-i·c' a:h-s/ self-belonging to..-PURP-I

- (88) *c'icik̓ep a·t si·čit* It's so he can cut it for me
/c'-i-či(x)-či-p-a:t si-(č)it [L]/ cut-MOM-for-PURP I-do to..

- (89) *watši?a·n* Let's go home!
/wat-ši(x)-a:-n/ go home-MOM-PURP-IP

The purposive most commonly occurs as a hortative in first person plural subject predicates as in (89):

The interrogative morpheme *-ha:* obligatorily marks all interrogative matrix predicates other than indefinite relative rhetorical content questions. Questions are not identified by inversion or intonation. The question mood occurs with any tense or mode and also with a cranberry morpheme *-a:* which follows *-ha·-s*, *-ha·-k*, or *-ha·*. This cranberry affix is not associated with yes-no questions as in Makah (cf. Jacobsen 1973:15) and is not limited to stems in which the pronominal affix is coreferential to the question stem. The distribution of *-a:* is not understood.

- (90) *?ača·qha qahsa·p* Who killed it?
/?ača·q-ha-a: qah-sa-p/ who?-QUE* die-MOMCAUS

- (91) *?ačisú·ph* Whom did he kill?
/?ači-suwip-ha/ who?-kill..-QUE

The conditional mood morpheme *-qu:* is irrealis in its conditional sense ('if, when, whenever') because a conditional state either has not occurred yet or, if it has occurred, cannot be situated at a particular point in time. Like other clauses inflected for a subordinating mood, a *-qu:*-marked clause need not be structurally subordinate but can serve as an independent clause, meaning 'if only, as if, seems, should, etc.'

(92) *wikqu· waʔic̥ čamah̥t*
/wik-qu: ... /

He couldn't seem to sleep properly
 not-COND sleep properly

(93) *si · x-uh-si(n)-qu:-č*
/.. x-uh-si(n)-qu:-č /

It was as if he'd put his hand over
 CLIMAX slap-MOM-COND-INF it

(94) *čutqu-su*
/čut-qu:-su:/

If only you were all nice!
 nice-COND-IIp

Subordinate clauses marked by -qu: are conditional: 'when(ever)...', 'if...', or 'until...'.

(95) *wi·y'a haʔukʷx: ?aʔa·tuʔakqu's* She doesn't answer when I ask her
/.. haʔu-ši(n) ?aʔa·tu-ak-qu:-s/ never back-MOM ask-TEM-COND-I

The conditional has a second function. This latter function, seemingly aligned to the gloss 'whenever', is the identification of an event as habitual.

(96) *histaqšaʔqu nimqi's*
/his.-taq-ši(n)-'ak-qu: ... /

They would periodically come from
 Nimkish
 there-come from..-MOM-TEM-COND

The habitual reading of -qu: is apparently restricted to verbal predicates.

The conditional and interrogative moods can be qualified by the inferential mood as follows:

| | CONDITIONAL INFERENTIAL | INTERROGATIVE INFERENTIAL |
|------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| I | -qu:-č /-qu:-č-s/ | -ha·-č /-ha·-č-s/ |
| II | -qu:-č-k | -ha·-č-k |
| III | -qu:-č | -ha·-č |
| Ip | -qu:-č-in | -ha·-č-in |
| IIp | -qu:-cu: /-qu:-č-su:/ | -ha·-ču: /-ha·-č-su:/ |
| IIIp | -qu:-č-č- /-qu:-č-?a·č/ | -ha·-č-č- /-ha·-č-?a·č/ |

The presence of č in the underlying forms of these mood-pronominal suffix sequences requires the positing of an assimilation rule: č → c / _s. Regular fricative merging accounts in part for the change of cs to c.

The presence of the inferential in a predicate indicates that the assertion or question expressed is, or has presuppositions, based on

secondary information such as hearsay or opinion.

- (97) *sukʷa·?n̥qu·č n̥aqmis*
/su-ši(č)-?ač-qu:-č n̥aq-mis/

He would periodically dip up oil
 (so the story goes)
 take-MOM-TEM-COND-INF * fat-NOM

- (98) *?aya·?n̥qu·čat*
/?aya-čač-qu:-č-?ač-t/

There could be a lot of them here
 many-TEM-COND-INF-PL

- (99) *?aqin ah̥c*
/?aqi-n̥ ač-h̥-hač-c/

What am I supposed to be seeking?
 what?-seek..-QUE-I(INF)

- (100) *n̥uthačk*
/n̥ut̥-hač-c-k/

Are you considered nice?
 nice-QUE-INF-II

It is tempting to claim that the dubitative mood *-qač* 'perhaps' is a morpheme compound composed of the subordinate *-qa* plus the inferential *-č* (and a hardening cranberry suffix *-a*). This may well be the diachronic source. It is, however, not well-motivated as a synchronic source. There is no evidence that the meaning of *-qač* is the sum of the meanings and functions of the subordinate plus the inferential morphemes: *-qač* is not a subordinating mood and does not occur in formally subordinate predicates.

The dubitative mood concentrates on the possibility of an event or state.

- (101) *n̥upa·sqac*
/n̥up-(y)ač-(s)as-qač/

It must be hot. Perhaps it's hot.
 hot-CONT-really-DUB

- (102) *hit̥?ačqacu hačuk*
/hit̥-(q)h̥-ač-qacu: .../

Maybe you'll be where you're to eat
 there-SIM-TEM-DUB-IIp eat(DUR)

The mood *-qač* DUB is in some respects similar to the mode *-matak* PROB 'probably, possibly'. For example, they can both occur freely with any tense or mode. There is, however, at least one difference between them. When a predicate includes *-matak*, it asserts that a certain event is a possibility and also that the speaker tends to agree with such an assertion. In contrast, the presence of *-qač* does not necessarily imply that the speaker believes in the possibility of the event and can give a clause the quality of an ironical question.

- (103) han'ahsimqač'at.
 /han'ah-sim-qač'-a-t/ Do you think they really have to be
 naked (I doubt it)
 naked-need..-DUB-PL

4.3.3.3. Evidential Mood

The evidential mood indicates that

1. the content or truth of an assertion has been discovered by the speaker as in (104) and (105);
2. there is direct evidence (e.g. a picture or observation) to corroborate an assertion as in (106) and (107); or
3. the listener is being informed and invited to agree that the assertion is noncontroversial and should be evident to him as in (105) and (107).

- (104) c'imat'u·ſs
 /c'imat'u-a-ſs/ Oh, there's a squirrel!
 squirrel-EVID
- (105) kutsa·ſs
 /kut-s-a-ſs/ Oh, so now I'm nice, eh! or I AM nice!
 nice-I-EVID
- (106) mamač'kwaſsat
 /mamač-uk-a-ſs-a-t/ I see they sure are working hard!
 work-DUR-EVID-PL
- (107) pay'inkinaſs
 /pink-Vy-in-a-ſs/ We are evidently/obviously still awake!
 awake-PL-IP-EVID

The evidential mood has no second person forms unless the inferential affix is also present. The first person evidential is generally used in ironic or controversial contexts.

The inferential and quotative moods can occur independently or can cooccur as -č-wa- (in the latter case, only in the third person).

- (108) ?unač'kwaſanti ?uč'tis Oysters were supposed to have a name
 /?u-nač-kw-č-wa-.../ it-have..-INF-QUOT name oysters

Evidently, the independent occurrence of inferential and/or quotative moods is found only for the third person singular. Hence, the quotative and inferential mood morphemes are considered dependent or qualifying moods which always accompany another mood affix. In the cases of apparent independent occurrence, it is posited that the inferential and quotative affixes are in the company of the absolutive mood (Ø).

In addition, the inferential or quotative can occur with the evidential mood. Like the combinations of the quotative or the inferential with the absolute mood, the combinations of the quotative (or quotative and inferential) with the evidential are found only in the third person singular as *-wa^{*}-s* and *-č-wa^{*}-s* respectively.

(109) *watšiñwa^s*

/wat-či(ñ)-wa^{}-a^{*}s/*

Evidently, they said he went home

go home-MOM-QUOT-EVID

(110) *watšiñwaw^s*

/wat-či(ñ)-č-wa^{}-a^{*}s/*

Evidently, they must have said he went home

go home-MOM-INF-QUOT-EVID

In contrast, the inferential evidential mood compound is common. Its paradigm is given below.

| | INFERENTIAL EVIDENTIAL | DIACHRONIC SOURCE |
|------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| I | <i>-(c)-s-a[*]s</i> | <i>-č-s -a[*]s</i> |
| II | <i>-č-k-a[*]s</i> | <i>-č-k -a[*]s</i> |
| III | <i>-č-a[*]s</i> | <i>-č -a[*]s</i> |
| I _p | <i>-č-in-a[*]s</i> | <i>-č-in -a[*]s</i> |
| II _p | <i>-č-u-w-a[*]s</i> | <i>-č-su:-a[*]s</i> |
| III _p | <i>-č-a[*]t-č-č-s</i> | <i>-č-a[*]t-?a[*]i-č-s</i> |

This paradigm is largely composed of the inferential *-č*, absolute pronominal, and evidential *-a^{*}s*. The surface form of *čs* is *c* by regular rule although the occurrence of *c* in surface forms only following a vowel in first person singular is anomalous. Also special is absence of vowel elision and resulting presence of a glide between underlyingly adjacent vowels in the second person plural form.

The third person plural is the most idiosyncratic. It appears to be a product of an analogy on certain quotative indicative suffixes, namely the forms used for third person singular and plural: *-wa^{*}-s* and *-wa^{*}-t-č-č-s*. A second reason for the form of the III_p inferential evidential may be that it enables one to distinguish between a III_p subject and a III subject with III_p object or oblique, the latter being indicated by *-č-a^{*}s-č-č*, as in (111).

(111) qahsa·pintčaſſat
 /qah-sa-p-int-č-a·ſſat/

He evidently must have killed them.
 die-MOMCAUS-PAST-INF-EVID-PL

A parallel distinction is found in indicative forms, where the mood affix also typically follows the pronominal affix but precedes the plural affix.

The inferential evidential is used to indicate that an assertion is a discovery that

1. concerns the listener as in (112);
2. contradicts a previously held opinion as in (113); or
3. depends on indirect information such as hearsay or deduction as in (114).

(112) ?uci·čk?a·qččkaſſ ?ačči·žm' up You're evidently going for two days
 /?u-ci-?i:(k)-?a:qč-č-k-a·ſſ ?ač-či-ž-m'u-p/

it-at-so to...-MOM-FUT-INF-IT-EVID two..days-absent for..

(113) ?aka·kčaſſ ſamti
 /?aka-?ak-č-a·ſſ .../

It must have two names, I guess
 two-POSS-INF-EVID name

(114) ha?uk·w̄nitsaſſ
 /ha?uk-?ak-int-(c)-s-a·ſſ/

I must have evidently eaten it
 (crumbs on my face and teeth)
 eat-TEM-PAST-INF-I-EVID

4.3.3.4. Indicative Mood

The unique indicative mood paradigm is given below.

| | INDICATIVE | DIACHRONIC SOURCE |
|------|------------|-------------------|
| I | -s-i·ſ | -s -?i·ſ |
| II | -a·c | -a·c(-?i·ſ) |
| III. | -?i·ſ | -?i·ſ |
| Ip | -n-i·ſ | -n -?i·ſ |
| IIp | -icu:-ſ | -icu -?i·ſ |
| IIIp | -it-ai-ſ | -it-?a·i-?i·ſ |

Regular rules of vowel length assignment and vowel loss account for most discrepancies between surface forms and the underlying or diachronic source. However, the loss of ? after n in the first person plural and after t in the third person plural is idiosyncratic. Evidently, the northern Nootkan indicative (i.e. the one employed in Kyuquot Nootka and

other dialects north of Barkley Sound) is an innovation based on the pronominal series used for the inflected particle ?ata- 'but', a particle no longer used in Kyuquot. Compare the Kyuquot indicative series presented above with the Port Alberni (a southern dialect) indicative and ?ata- pronominal series presented below.

| | P.A. INDICATIVE | P.A. ?ata- |
|------|-----------------|------------|
| I | -(m)a*h | -siš |
| II | -(m)e*?ic | -?ick |
| III | -ma* ~ -a | ?is |
| Ip | -(m)in | -nis |
| IIIp | -(m)e*?icu: | ? |
| IIIP | ? | ? |

The Port Alberni indicative has no counterpart in Kyuquot, although the indicative second person Kyuquot forms may have been modeled partly on the Port Alberni second person indicative forms. The -it in the Kyuquot IIIP may be a remnant of the ?ata- particle. As with the inferential evidential, the divergence in third person singular and plural forms enables one to distinguish third person subject -?iš-at (with third person plural object or oblique) from third person plural subject -it-at-š.

The indicative mood is used for statements of fact validated by experience, observation, general cultural knowledge, or wise authority.

(115) *wiksiš ?uwa*
/wik-s-iš ?u-wa/

I didn't say that
 not-I-IND it-say..

(116) *qahšidmatak'x̌iš*
/qah-ši(x)-matak-x̌at-?iš/

I think he must be dead (pulling
 animal's intestines out of cave)
 die-MOM-PROB-TEM-IND

(117) *wi·kšaha·q̌icuš*
/wik-šahi [I]-a:q̌i-icu:-š/

You're all going to be well
 not-wrong with..~FUT-IIp-IND

The indicative mood can occur with any tense. The indicative is not, however, an unmarked mood. It is found in only about five percent of matrix sentences (based on a sample of some 6000 sentences taken from conversational and narrative texts). In contrast, the indefinite and

definite moods, which are found in the majority of realis declarative sentences, account for about ten and sixty-five percent of matrix sentences respectively.

In general, the more mode- or mood-qualified assertions found in a text, the more indicative-marked assertions it will contain. In other words, the indicative mood tends to be used to identify factual assertions which are preceded by sentences qualified as to their information source or validity, e.g. by the inferential, evidential, or dubitative moods and the possible (POSB) or unrealis modes. The marking of factual assertions in such contexts is necessary in order to avoid assigning them an elliptical mood. Ellipsis of mood and other inflectional morphemes can take place whenever the previous marked matrix predicate has the same inflectional affixes.

In the following excerpt from a conversation (held while looking at pictures), the marking of the second and fourth sentences as indicative shows that they are not to be assigned an elliptical evidential mood based on the previous evidential-marked sentences.

- (118) *mamu'kwa'ss ?ah?a : t'iqw'qi* They evidently make those and carry
/mamu-uk-a.*s .. t'iqw'-qi*/ them on their heads

?ah xutukw's Ah! His (baskets) are nice!
/.. xut-uk-?i.s/

Sac'ika'ss They must be experts.
/Sac'ik-a.*s/

?ucma'qkinti's kap'eq mamaky'ik Kapcha wanted to go to the store
(/CV#makw-y'ikw/ (spoken as an aside)
/?u-c-maqaqt-int-?i.s .. CV#makw-y'ikw/
it-at-want to...-PAST-IND Kapcha distrib-trade...instrument

Avoiding an elliptical mood interpretation is not the only use of the indicative.

It is also used to indicate that the act of assertion is as communicatively important as its content. This can be because the sentence is an important announcement, a statement contrary to the listener's opinion or directly concerning the listener, or a direct quote introduced after a

sequence of narrative third person subject predicates.

(119) *watšikniš*

/wat-ši(?) -n-i-š/

We've come home!

go home-MOM-IP-IND

(120) *qahsa-p' tintiš*

/qaḥ-sa-p'-at-int-?i-š/

She was MURDERED!

die-MOMCAUS-PASS-PAST-IND

(121) *tuča-c*

/tuč-a-c/

You're nice

nice-II(IND)

(122) *čatšik čakupkwi*

/čat-ši(?) / čakup-uk-?i-/-

She shook her husband

shove-MOM male-POSS-DEF

?uyaqhmisš

/?uyaqh-mis-?i-š/

There's news!

tell-NOM-IND

4.3.3.5. Absolutive and Indefinite Moods

In contrast to the indicative mood, all of whose persons are employed, the second person of the absolute mood virtually never occurs. This may be in part due to the similarity of second person absolutes *-k* II and *-su*: IIp to second person interrogatives *-ha-k* (~ *-k* in third or later syllables) II and *-ha-su*: (*-h-su*: in third or later syllables) IIp. The second person indefinite is the usual choice when a second person subject occurs in a realis predicate, including ones which are predictions, polite requests, or commands.

(123) *watša-?ni-k*

/wat-ši(?) -'ač-(y)i:-k/

You will please go home now

go home-MOM-TEM-INDF-II

The relative likelihood of occurrence cannot be stated for the absolute and indefinite moods by person. This is because two persons, third person plural and first person plural, are neutralized with respect to these moods, either in the post-consonantal environment, as is the case for first person plural, or in all environments, as is the case for third person plural. It is assumed that these persons behave like their singular counterparts, i.e. with the first person in the indefinite mood and the third person in the absolute mood. In summary, given a realis assertion which is declarative but has no reason to be marked indicative, it will most likely be indefinite if the subject is first or second person

and absolute if the subject is third person.

There appear to be some additional reasons, besides the person of the subject, for the presence of an indefinite-marked predicate. First, the indefinite mood can indicate that a nonagent is ambiguously specified (i.e. indefinite). Consider the following sentence pairs in which an indefinite predicate is contrasted with an absolute one. Note that the predicate can be transitive or intransitive and that the nonagent can be elliptical, anaphoric, or specifically identified as to class, e.g. the class of deer in example (128).

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (124) ?una·kinti·s | I had one |
| /?u-na·kʷ-int-(y)i:-s/ | it-have..-PAST-INDF-I |
| ?una·kints | I had it |
| (125) ?u·taqi·s | I'm fixing things, something |
| /?u·taq [L]-(y)i:-s/ | it-work on..-INDF-I |
| ?u·taqs | I'm fixing it |
| (126) nahinti·s Bill | I gave something to Bill, |
| /nahi-int-(y)i:-s .../ | give-PAST-INDF-I |
| ?nahints Bill | I gave Bill away |
| (127) na?u·matki | it could be another person |
| /na?u·matak-(y)i:/ | other-PROB-INDF |
| na?u·matk | Perhaps it was the other |
| (128) qahsa·pinti·s muvič | I killed a deer |
| /qah-sa·p-int-(y)i:-s .../ | die-MOMCAUS-PAST-INDF-I deer |
| qahsa·pints muvič | I killed a/the deer hanging around |

Second, the indefinite mood can be used if the affixed predicate is NOT the new information. Instead, some other constituent, such as the subject or oblique is the new information.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| (129) qa?u·cti yu·qwa | SHE'S making a basket too |
| /qa?u·c-(e)i·t-(y)i: .../ | basket-make..-INDF also |
| qa?u·cti yu·qwa | She's making a basket too |

Third, the indefinite mood can indicate that the assertion is true for a period of time which is unspecified but significant. This period

can be a relatively long time as opposed to a short time as in (130) or a habitual event as opposed to a unique event as in (131).

- (130) *kaptə̃nti·s* I was hiding a while, most of the time
/hapt-(y)a:-int-(y)i:-s/ hide-CONT-PAST-INDF-I
- haptə̃nts* I was hiding a little while, at one time
- (131) *wat̪siki·s* I go home periodically
/wat̪-ši(ñ)-(y)i:-s/ go home-MOM-INDF-I
- wat̪siks* I came home (once)

Finally, the indefinite mood can identify a predicate as referring to a situation ongoing at the time of utterance rather than a situation unspecified for tense.

- (132) *ñe'ic'u·yi·s* I'm giving a potlatch now
/ñe'ic'u·-(y)i:-s/ potlatch-INDF-I
- ñe'ic'u·s* I gave/will give a potlatch
- (133) *his-i·čhi·s* I'm starting/ I've started to bleed now
/his-i·či(ñ)-(y)i:-s/ bleed-INC-INDF-I
- his-i·čhs* I started to bleed

The absolute, indefinite, and indicative moods differ in their privileges of occurrence with qualifying mood affixes. The absolute, at least in third person, can be qualified by either or both of the inferential and quotative moods. In contrast, the indefinite can be qualified by the inferential but not the quotative mood. In fact, the indefinite inferential is the usual way to express an inferential assertion. The inferential paradigm is given below.

| | INDEFINITE INFERENTIAL | DIACHRONIC SOURCE |
|------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| I | -(y)i:-č | -(y)i:-č-s |
| II | -(y)i:-č-k | -(y)i:-č-k |
| III | -(y)i:-č | -(y)i:-č |
| I _p | -(y)i:-č-in | -(y)i:-č-in |
| II _p | -(y)i:-ču: | -(y)i:-č-su: |
| III _p | -(y)i:-č-ač | -(y)i:-č-?ač |

As is the general case in these paradigms, the underlying or historic sequence *čs* surfaces as *c*.

The inferential indefinite mood compound is used when the content of an assertion is assumed to be true by the speaker, or has indirectly come to his attention, or is a generally held assumption.

Hence, this mood is common in narratives to characterize assertions which, in contrast to some previous sentence, are general cultural assumptions concerning the world and the content of mental culture (e.g. stories and religious dogma).

- (136) *huya^a-t⁺ mama^ta[?] si* The little bird was dancing
 /.. CV#mat-(y)a[?]-?is-?i[?]/ dance distrib-fly-CONT-DIM-DEF
huya^a-ti[?]-c hita[?]cqin It was dancing in the bow of the boat,
 so the story goes
/huya^a-t⁺(y)i[?]-c hit-a[?]c-qin/ dance-INDE-INFO there-at bow-at head

4.3.3.6. Quotative Moods

The indicative mood contrasts with the indefinite in that it can occur with the quotative mood.

| | QUOTATIVE INDICATIVE | DIACHRONIC SOURCE |
|------|----------------------|-------------------|
| I | -wa•-s-s | -wa• -s -?i-s |
| II | -wa•-c | -wa• -c |
| III | -wa•-s | -wa• -?i-s |
| Ip | -wa•-n-is | -wa• -n -?i-s |
| IIp | -wa•-cu:-s | -wa• -cu -?i-s |
| IIIp | -wa•-t-at-s | -wa•-it-?a-t-?i-s |

The quotative indicative mood is principally used to indicate that an event or state was reported by some party other than the speaker or

listener. Hence, the assertion is an announcement of fact (namely, that something has been reported). Reported facts, whose predicates are marked by *-wa'*, are generally expressed in the indicative mood, obligatorily so if the subject is coreferential to the speaker or listener.

- (137) *wat̪iχwass̫* I'm said to have gone home
/wat̪-i(χ)-wa'-s-i-š/ go home-MOM-QUOT-I-IND
- (138) *pu'kʷaʔa'q̪watač̫* They're going to play poker (according to rumour or a caption on a photo)
/pu'kʷa-ʔa:q̪k-wa'-t-at̪-š/ poker-FUT-QUOT-IND-PL-IND
- (139) *č'iʔakʷaʔp'a'q̪wac̫ hu'n'i* You are instructed to cut up the whale
/č'i-(ʔa)kʷa-čap-ʔa:q̪k-wa'-c/ cut-completely-CAUS-FUT-QUOT-II(IND) whale

The quotative indicative can occur with any tense but not with a mode. There is no Kyuquot counterpart to the Port Alberni quotative mood *-weʔin*, with its own unique pronominal series.

There is another quotative type of construction in Kyuquot. In an argument or interchange where one wished to stress one's assertion of an utterance, the morpheme (compound) *-wa:(q)s* is attached to an indicative predicate. Evidently, the *q* is found optionally in predicates with singular subjects (but never in ones with plural subjects). This morpheme typically indicates that the assertion thus marked contradicts one made previously.

- (140) *nutna'knis̫wa's* We have a NICE one (not an ugly one)!
/nut-na'kʷ-n-i-š-wa:s/ nice-have..-Ip-IND-QUOTE MPH

Although the attached morpheme appears to be a cliticized form of the predicate *wa'-qa'-s* 'I said..', (say-SUB-I), such a predicate cannot take a complement inflected for the indicative mood:

- (141) **wa'qa's nutna'kiš*

Nor can a complement precede its matrix predicate. Hence, *-wa:(q)s* is treated as a mood-qualifying clitic whose diachronic source was probably the predicate *wa'-qa'-s* which could have served as a discourse-subordinate coordinate clause: **nutna'kiš : wa'qa's* 'He's got a NICE

one; that's what I say'. The *-wa:(q)s* clitic is in complementary distribution with all the other quoting morphemes: *-wa** 'say..' and *-wa* QUOT*. In addition, the privileges of occurrence of these quoting morphemes differ: *-wa* 'say..'* occurs with any mood; *-wa* QUOT* with the indicative mood and, in the third person only, with the evidential, absolutive, and inferential moods; and *-wa:(q)s QUOTEMPH* only with the indicative mood.

4.3.3.7. Imperative Mood

The remaining mood, the imperative, is unique. Its morpheme for IIp, *-č*, is unlike that of other moods and its future morphemes, *-im* FUT and *-k* COME, are unique as well. In addition, it is severely constrained in its privilege of occurrence with persons and modes. It can be found only in predicates with Ip or II(p) subjects and either the mode *-cim* MUST or no mode at all. The organization of mood and postmood affixes in imperative forms is as follows.

TABLE 12: IMPERATIVE MORPHEMES

| Mood | > | Subject | > | Object | > | Tense | > | Object |
|------------|---|------------|---|------------|---|-----------|---|-----------------|
| <i>-i*</i> | | {<-in Ip>} | | {<-in Ip>} | | {-im FUT} | | <i>-?a*t</i> PL |

TABLE 13: IMPERATIVE-PRONOMINAL SEQUENCES

| Subject | Object → | Is | Ip | III Is/Other | IIIP |
|---------|----------|---------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| II | | <i>-i*s</i> | <i>-in</i> | <i>-i*</i> | <i>-'a*t</i> |
| IIp | | <i>-i*čis</i> | <i>-i*čin</i> | <i>-i*č</i> | <i>-i*čat</i> |
| Ip | | NA | NA | <i>-in</i> | <i>-'inat</i> |

Objects coreferential to imperative subjects are not indicated by pronominal affixes but rather by reflexive words. The deletion of word-final short vowels in third or later syllables, the (optional) deletion of word-final ?, and the processes triggered by glottalization-inducing inflectional suffixes (such as *-i* IMPV*) make singular subject imperative forms particularly opaque (cf. section 2.2 for phonological rules).

- (142) *?u·štaf* Work on something!
/?u·š-taq [L]-i/* some-work on..-IMPV

- (143) *waʔiču*
/waʔič-u(ñ)-i'/

Go to sleep!
 sleep-MOM-IMPV

- (144) *ci·qci·qaʔp'at*
/CVC#ciq-[L]-(y)a·-ap'-a·t/ IT-speak-GRAD-CONT-CAUS-PL(IMPV)

Make them talk!

Imperative words can be homonymous with nonimperative words. In such cases, second person singular subject, first person object imperative is parallel to first person subject absolute and second person plural imperative is parallel to third person indefinite inferential. Examples of the imperative forms are given below.

- (145) *haptas*
/hapt-(y)a·-i-s/

Hide from me!
 hide-CONT-IMPV-I

- (146) *wi·naʔin*
/wina-[L]-i-n/

Let's invade!
 invade-EMPH-IMPV-IP

- (147) *hupi·čat*
/hupi·-i-č-at/

Help them, all of you!
 help-IMPV-IIp-PL

To these mood-pronominal sequences can be optionally added one of two tense morphemes, *-k* COME 'come and' (immediate future) or *-im* FUT (true future). Examples of the cooccurrence of mood-pronominal sequences and imperative future suffixes are given below.

- (148) *?ukwi·čcip'ičisim*
/?u-(č)i·č-ci·p-i·-č-is-im/

You'll all make it for me!
 it-make..-for-IMPV-IIp-I-FUT

- (149) *nutwa·čak'ink*
/nut-wa·-čak'-i-n-k/

Let's come and say something nice!
 nice-say..-TEM-IMPV-IP-COME

There is also an imperative suffix *-č* GO which means 'go and'. This suffix is restricted to predicates lacking imperative pronominal or tense suffixes as in (150).

- (150) *?un'a·hč*
/?u-n'a·h-č/

Go and look for it!
 it-seek..-GO

In addition, there are at least two imperative particles in Kyuquot, *čukʷa·* 'come!' and *ka·?* 'hand it over!'. They are obligatorily imperative and can be inflected only by *-'ak* TEM, *-č* IIp, *-k* COME,

-ña 'again' and object pronominal suffixes in the case of *ka·?ay*.

- (151) *ka·?a·?ñ*ičiskña** Come and hand it over to me again!
/ka·?a·-?an-i-č-is-k-ña/ hand over-TEM-IMPV-IIp-I-COME-again

4.3.3.8. Mood Synopsis

| Mood | Example | Gloss |
|---------------------|---------------------|--|
| Relative | <i>yaq?i·tq ñut</i> | That's the one who is nice |
| Indefinite Relative | <i>yaqi· ñut</i> | I wonder which is nice |
| Irrealis Relative | <i>yaquu·si ñut</i> | I wonder which might be nice |
| Subordinate | <i>ñutqa</i> | I thought he was nice (but he's not) |
| Dubitative | <i>ñutqa·č</i> | Perhaps he's nice |
| Purposive | <i>ñut?at</i> | It's so he'll be nice |
| Interrogative | <i>ñutha</i> | Is he nice? |
| Interrogative INF | <i>ñutha·č</i> | Is he supposed to be nice? |
| Conditional | <i>ñutqu</i> | If only he were nice |
| Conditional INF | <i>ñutqu·č</i> | He supposedly used to be nice I wish he were nice |
| Indefinite | <i>ñuti</i> | He's nice |
| Indefinite INF | <i>ñuti·č</i> | He's supposedly nice, I understand |
| Evidential | <i>ñuba·š</i> | He's evidently nice, I see |
| Evidential INF | <i>ñutča·š</i> | I see he's nice, after all |
| Evidential QUOT | <i>ñutwa·š</i> | He's evidently said to be nice |
| Evidential INF QUOT | <i>ñutčwa·š</i> | He's evidently said to be nice, supposedly |
| Absolutive | <i>ñut</i> | He's nice |
| Absolutive INF | <i>ñutč</i> | He's supposedly nice |
| Absolutive QUOT | <i>ñutwa</i> | He's nice, so I'm told |
| Absolutive INF QUOT | <i>ñutčwa</i> | He's said to supposedly be nice |
| Indicative | <i>ñut?i·š</i> | He's nice! |
| Indicative QUOT | <i>ñutwa·š</i> | He's said to be nice! |
| Indicative QUOTEMPH | <i>ñut?i·šwa·qs</i> | He's NICE, I'm telling you! |
| Imperative | <i>ñutši·i</i> | Be nice! |

Note that relative stems are necessary if one uses a relative mood and

that the imperative stem must be verbal.

4.3.4. Passive

The above discussion has concerned mode, tense, mood, and pronominal suffixes. Interspersed among these are the following: $-'at$ PASS, $-uk$ POSS, $-?is$ DIM, $-ka$ 'again', and finally $-m\check{inh}$ PL, this last suffix providing a point of introduction to a discussion of nonpredicative inflection.

The passive affix follows $-'at$ TEM and precedes $-uk$ POSS.

- (152) *qahsa•pčp'atkʷint* His was killed for him
/qah-sa•p-či•p-'at-uk-int/ die-MOMCAUS-for-PASS-POSS-PAST

- (153) *qahsa•p'atk'at* He was killed at that time
/qah-sa•p-'at-'at/ die-MOMCAUS-TEM-PASS

It has three main functions. One is to signal that the subject is patient, benefactee, or recipient rather than agent or that it is patient rather than experiencer. That is, a NP which could be object of a predicate not marked by $-'at$ PASS can be subject of its $-'at$ -marked counterpart. The second function of $-'at$ is to indicate that the affixed nominal is an oblique agent. In such a context, $-'at$ must follow $-(q)h$ SIM.

- (154) *mawičh?atiš* It was done by the deer
/mawič-(q)h-'at-?i-š/ deer-SIM-PASS-IND

The third function of $-'at$ is to indicate inalienable possession (of body parts only). Because a body part cannot be an agent, the two functions of $-'at$ when affixed to a nominal are in complementary distribution. As an indicator of body part possession, $-'at$ can always be replaced by $-uk$ POSS. For example, 'his foot' can be expressed as either *níškin'at* or *níškinkʷ*.

4.3.5. Possessive

The normal genitive in Kyuquot is expressed by $-uk$ ($\sim -'akw$) POSS, each stem being associated with one of the possessive allomorphs. In Kyuquot, it is the possessee, or modifier of a possessee nominal, which is affixed by $-uk$.

- (155) *sa^a-sin sit^a?k* a hummingbird's tail
/.. sit^a-?ak/ hummingbird tail-POSS

The possessor is indicated pronominally by the following paradigms.

| | POSSESSIVE | DIACHRONIC SOURCE | PAST POSSESSIVE | SOURCE |
|------------------|---------------|--|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| I | -uk-q-s | -uk -qa ^a -s | -uk-na-q-s | -uk-na-qa ^a -s |
| II | -uk ?it-k | -uk-?i ^a t-qa ^a -k | -uk-na-k | -uk-na-(qa ^a -)k |
| III | -uk | -uk | -uk ^w -int | -uk-int |
| I _p | -uk-q-in | -uk -qa ^a -in | -uk-na-q-in | -uk-na-qa ^a -in |
| II _p | -uk ?it-q-su: | -uk-?i ^a t-qa ^a -su: | -uk-na-q-su: | -uk-na-qa ^a -su: |
| III _p | -uk ?at | -uk -?a ^a t | -uk ^w -int-?at | -uk-int-?at |

The possessive is clearly composed of a mixture of paradigmatic elements: the relative *-?i^at-* in second person, the subordinate *-qa^a* in first and second person, and the absolute in at least third person. In the past tense version, used when the possessee is deceased, lost, or destroyed, this divergence of moods results in a divergence of past tense markers. In first and second person, the presence of a subordinate or relative mood requires the *-na* allomorph of the past marker; in third person, the absence of a mood marker (i.e. the absolute mood) requires the *-int* allomorph. These possessive-mood-pronominal sequences are found only in a nonpredicative stem, one which is either a nominal, a NP modifier, or an implicitly-derived nominal, as the three following examples illustrate.

- (156) *Sini^añk^wqs.* my dog
/sini^añ-uk-q-s/ dog-POSS-SUB-I
- (157) *ñutuk^wqs* (*sini^añ*) my good one (dog)
/ñut-uk-q-s .../ good-POSS-SUB-I dog
- (158) *hapta^a?kqs* what I hid, my hidden thing
/hapt-(y)a^a-?ak-q-s/ hide-CONT-POSS-SUB-I

The possessive *-uk* denotes a number of relations such as legally- or socially-recognized ownership as in (156), physical adjacency or association as in (155) or (159), and social relationships as in (160).

- (159) *qu[?]as t[?]ay[?]askw*
 /.. t[?]as-[?]as-uk/
 (160) *?um[?]i[?]qskitk*
 /?um[?]i-?i[?]qsa-uk-?i[?]t-k/

a trail for humans
 adult trail-outside-POSS
 your mother
 mother-. . . kin-POSS-REL-II

The possessive is not obligatorily marked in Kyuquot, especially when the possession signifies ownership or kin relationship.

- (161) *pintšit ?u[?]kw[?]t k[?]ahaqs ha[?] čakupi* He painted the guy's box
 /pint-ši(k) čakup-?i[?]/ paint-MOM to box the male-DEF
 (162) *ha[?] ?um[?]i[?]qsa haw[?]iti* the chief's mother
 /.. ?um[?]i-?i[?]qsa-?i[?] haw[?]it-?i[?]/ the mother-. . . kin-DEF chief-DEF

Only a few of these unmarked possessive NP's are attested. If presented out of discourse context, they are 'corrected' to an -uk-marked structure. If presented in the discourse context, they are accepted as grammatical.

Within the predicate, -uk signals that either a third person subject or a nonsubject patient is possessed. The following chart indicates the privileges of occurrence of -uk in predicates. The person of the possessor is identified by row, and the role of the pronominal affix by column. The first and second columns are for predicates with third person subjects (active and passive respectively) and pronominal affixes coreferential to possessors. The third, fourth, and fifth columns are for predicates with first, second, or third person subjects, pronominal affixes coreferential to the subjects, and possessed objects.

TABLE 14: THE ROLE OF -uk IN PREDICATES

| Possessor | Pronominal = Possessor | | Pronominal = Subject | | |
|-----------|------------------------|--------------|----------------------|------|-------|
| | III | IIIPASS | I | II | III |
| I | V-uk-I | V-'at-uk-I | V(-uk)-I | V-II | V-III |
| II | V-uk-II | V-'at-uk-II | V-I | V-II | V-III |
| III | V(-uk)-III | V-'at-uk-III | V(-uk)-III | V-II | V-III |

Optional presence of -uk in predicates is indicated above by (-uk). Marking of possession in a possessee adjunct is optional if the predicate is marked for possession and the pronominal affix in the predicate is

coreferential to the possessor rather than the subject.

The information presented in the above chart can be summarized as follows. First, the possessor of a third person subject (active or passive) is indicated within a predicate by the discontinuous sequence -uk... pronominal affix. Tense and mood morphemes can intervene and the shape of the pronominal suffix is a function of the cooccurring mood (which is not a possessive mood). The examples below are ordered by possessor person.

- (163) *hapta[•]?ks pu* My gun is hidden
 /hapt-(y)a[•]-?ak-s .../ hide-CONT-POSS-I gun
- (164) *ku[•]wibatk^wintin sini[•]x(k^wqin)* Our dog got stolen
 /ku[•]wib[•]at-uk-int-in sini[•]x-uk-q-in/
 steal-PASS-POSS-PAST-IP dog-POSS-SUB-IP
- (165) *y[•]a[•]qu^wac siq^winim* Your skirt is long
 /y[•]a[•]q-uk-a[•]c .../ long-POSS-II(IND) skirt
- (166) *ha[?]uk^watkinti[•]su* Yours got eaten
 /ha[?]uk^wat-uk-int-(y)i[•]-su:/ eat(DUR)-PASS-POSS-PAST-INDF-IIp
- (167) *ta[?]itk^w* Lucy t[•]an[•]a[•]s Lucy's child is sick
 /ta- it-uk .. t[•]an[•]a-?is/ drift-in house-POSS .. child-DIM
- (168) *?u[•]ta[?]at^watk^w ?inhi* His alone was prepared
 /?u-taq[L]-?at^w-at-uk ?in-hi/ it-work on..-TEM-PASS-POSS only-DUR

The possessor-marked predicate need not be a matrix predicate.

- (169) *hami[•]pinti[•]s [ya^watk^witq qahsa[•]p^wt]* I knew whom he was killed
 by
 /hami[•]p-int-(y)i[•]-s yaq^w-at-uk-?i[•]tq qah^w-sa[•]p^wat/
 know-PAST-INDF-I which-PASS-POSS-VEL die-MOMCAUS-PASS

The possessor-marked predicate construction is the most common structure used to indicate possession in Kyuquot.

- (170) *mu[•]?aks "qa[?]u^wcm^winh* I have four baskets
 /mu[•]-?ak-s qa[?]u^wc-m^winh/ four-POSS-I basket-PL

In passive clauses, possession marking also indicates that the possessor is a benefactee (in either a positive or negative sense) as in

(164), (166), (168), and (171).

- (171) *?ukʷi·ratkwint Bill huquma* Bill's mask was made (for him)
/?u-(č)i·at-uk-int .. huq-um-?i·/
 it-make..-PASS-POSS-PAST Bill hollow vessel-NOM-DEF

In predicates whose object is possessed, possession is marked in the predicate only if the subject is first person and the possessor is not second person. If the possessed NP cooccurs as object adjunct, its possessive inflection must be present regardless of whether the predicate is marked by *-uk* or not.

- (172). *hisšik(kʷ)inti·s ɿini·xkʷ* I hit his dog
/his-ši(x)-uk-int-(y)i:-s ɿini-x-uk/
 hit-MOM-POSS-PAST-INDF-I dog-POSS

Recall that inalienable possession can be signalled by *-at* PASS. When a possessed body part is (third person) subject, *-at* plus a pronominal affix identifying the possessor's person and number can be affixed to that subject's predicate even if the predicate is intransitive.

- (173) *tuxʷa·?ti·s ti·čma* My heart is fluttering, erratic
/tux-(y)a·-at-(y)i:-s ti·č-ma/ hop-CONT-PASS-INDF-I alive-NOM
- (174) *t'i·?at·t* His (limbs) fell down
/t'i·-?atu-at/ sink-down-PASS
- (175) *qaħak ak' tiš qa·y'ipt* His leg was paralyzed
/qaħ-akʷ-ak'-at-?iš .. / die-DUR-TEM-PASS-IND

In summary, a predicate generally indicates possession when the subject is first person or the possessee is third person. A possessor pronominal affixed to a predicate with third person subject behaves like a formal subject in that the possessor pronominal is found in subject position and can have a coreferential pronominal adjunct which is in subject, not possessor, form.

- (176) *y'ap'icukkwi·s siy'a·q* Mine is blue!
/y'ap'ic-uk-uk-(y)i:-s .. / blue-DUR-POSS-INDF-I I

The possessor form of a first person pronominal would be *siy'a·s* 'mine'.

4.3.6. -?is and -?ka· and -?i·

Inflectional morphology in Kyliquot includes a diminutive -?is (~ -?ic-) DIM, a nonderivational iterative -?ka· 'again', and a definite -?i· DEF ('the, a certain'). The diminutive is occasionally present in predicates. It is found there when associated with one of a set of adjectives expressing the lesser of two polar quantities or qualities (e.g. 'little' as opposed to 'big'): ?ana- 'only', ?a·na- 'near', ?anah- 'little', ?anah-p-t- 'short (person)', ?it- 'soft, malleable', kum'a- 'little, few', n'i·c- 'short', pu·k- 'thin'. Because some adjectivals, such as y'učk- 'narrow', denote the lesser of a polar opposition but do not have to be associated with -?is, the obligatory association of -?is with the above adjectivals is considered to be indicated as part of their lexical specification, e.g. n'i·c-...-?is 'short'.

The diminutive also occurs in predicates whose stem is a diminutively-marked nominal as in (177) or whose subject is small in size and/or stature as in (178) and (179).

- (177) t'an'a·?sintiš nu·tkšiñ It was a CHILD that circled it
 /t'an'a-?is-int-?i·š nu·tk-šiñ/ child-DIM-PAST-IND circle-MOM

- (178) t'iqʷitís A midget was sitting in the house
 /t'iqʷ-čit-?is/
 sit-in house-DIM

- (179) ci·qci·qa?ic'k The small one started to talk
 /CVC#ciq-[L]-(y)a-?ic'-ak/
 IT-speak-GRAD-REP-DIM-TEM

It appears that the diminutive morpheme is becoming restricted to non-predicative constituents, except when a predicate is an adjectival stem obligatorily associated with -?is or is a nominal coreferential to the diminutive referent. In nonpredicative NP's, -?is indicates that the referent is small, endearing, and/or young. The diminutive normally follows -m'inh PL and precedes the modal affixes.

- (180) ſini·ñm'inhismatki the little ones appearing to be dogs
 /ſini·ñ-m'inh-?is-matak-?i-/ dog-PL-DIM-PROB-DEF

The iterative morpheme -?ka· follows all other inflectional morphemes. It can be interpreted to mean 'again, either, as well, in addi-

tion, etc'. The addition indicated can be the recurrence or the introduction of an event or a participant.

- (181) *wikmatkha sutit ka·pap* I think he doesn't like you either
/wik-mata-kha· sut-(č)it [L]../ not-PROB-also you-do to.. like
- (182) *qwi·i·c'a·qni·kha* I wonder what else you'll eat
/qwi-·i·c-a-qn-(y)i:-k-ha·/ what-eat..-FUT-INDF-II-also
- (183) *?ukwi·?maqni·sha* I want to make one also/again
/?u-(č)i·t-maqn-(y)i:-s-ha·/ it-make..-want to..-INDF-I-again
- (184) *Supa·k : wik'i·tha qu·?as* It was calm; besides there were no people
/Sup-a·k· wik-i·t-ha· .. / calm-DUR not-absent-again adult

Within the NP, *-ha* denotes 'other, rest of' (185).

- (185) *ti·č'ahsp tu·cma·sha* He saved another little woman
/ti·č'-ahs.-'ap tu·cma-?is-ha·/ alive-in vessel-CAUS woman-DIM-again

The definite morpheme *-?i* can be affixed only to a constituent of a NP and it is questionable whether this includes a constituent of a predicative NP which is not clausally-inflected.

- (186) *?nita·?s čakupi* There's the handsome man

In such a sentence, the non-NP predicate reading, 'the man is evidently handsome', is chosen as appropriate. The definite is, hence, an affix restricted to nonpredicative constituents.

4.3.7. Plural

The suffix *-m'inh* PL denotes plurality, specifically a collective and potentially partitive plurality. This suffix precedes all other inflectional affixes including modes and the diminutive as in (180). When attached to intransitive or passive predicates, it indicates that the subject is plural and often that this plurality is new information.

- (187) *tuhukm'minh* A bunch of them are afraid
/tuh-uk-m'minh/ There's a bunch of scared ones
afraid-DUR-PL

- (188) *akahom'inh*
/akə-ho-m'inh/

There's a bunch doing it now
now-TEM-PL

- (189) *qahsa•p' tm'inh*
/qah-sa•p'-at-m'inh/

A bunch of them were killed
die-MOMCAUS-PASS-PL

The identity of the 'bunch' is, in such sentences, not yet specified. In addition, *-m'inh* is not necessarily anaphoric to a subject. Consider an ambient predicate such as *si•w'a•qm'inh* 'There you(p) are!' which has no pronominal affix. In its partitive role, *-m'inh* can be accompanied by first or second person plural pronominal suffixes.

- (190) *?ača•qm'inhakhsu ka•pap* Who among you likes him?
/?ača•q-m'inh-ak-ha-su: .../ who?-PL-TEM-QUE-IIp like

It cannot, however, render a singular pronominal, i.e. *-s* 'I' or *-k* 'you', plural.

There is a second plural affix, *-?a•t* PL, which indicates a plurality of third person participants whose identity is old information. Contrast the following nominal predicates: *c' imt'u•m'inh* 'There's a bunch of squirrels!' and *c' imt'u•?at* 'They are squirrels (used in answer to 'What are they?')'. When *-m'inh* and *-?a•t* cooccur in an intransitive predicate, the predicate cannot be ambient (due to the presence of *-?a•t* which must refer to a NP with a grammatical relation to the predicate) and the antecedent of *-?a•t* is a member or subset of a definite class (due to the presence of *-m'inh*), as in *c' imt'u•m'inhat* 'THOSE are squirrels' or (191).

- (191) *?acšim'minhintatas* Those (men) went out fishing
/?ac-ši(x)-m'inh-int-it-?a•t-s/ go out-MOM-PL-PAST-IND-PL-IND

These interpretations of *-m'inh* and *-?a•t* hold whether or not a subject NP is present and whether or not the NP is affixed by a plural morpheme.

Passive predicates are associated with an agent oblique as well as a subject. The affix *-?a•t* is not required to be coreferential to the subject of a predicate and can be coreferential to object or oblique NP's instead. In passive predicates, the presence of *-?a•t* indicates either that the subject is plural (if no first or second person suffix cooccurs) or that the oblique agent is plural.

(192) *hupa^{-?tat}**/hupi⁻at-^{-?a^{-?t}}*

They were helped
He was helped by them
help-PASS-PL

First or second person affixes must be subject (except in imperative clauses). Hence, if one of them occurs with $-?a^{\cdot}t$ in a passive predicate, $-?a^{\cdot}t$ must refer to the oblique agent.

(193) *hupa^{-?tinti^{-s^{-?at}}}**/hupi⁻at-int-(y)i:-s-^{-?a^{-?t}}*

I got helped by them

help-PASS-PAST-INDF-I-PL

The above interpretation of plural morphemes holds regardless of whether or not a subject or agent is also present in a clause. Interpretations contradicted by an adjunct-sited plural morpheme are, of course, disallowed. So, for example, if the predicate in (192) were accompanied by the subject NP *čakup* 'man', the sentence could mean either 'The men were helped' or 'The man was helped by them' (plural not being obligatorily marked in Kyuquot). However, if the same predicate were accompanied by *čakupm'inh* 'men', then the sentence would have to be interpreted as 'The men were helped'. Plurality is fully optional for both predicates and NP's in Kyuquot.

Consider now transitive predicates, which can have a plural subject and/or a plural object. The chart below summarizes the possible interpretations of predicate plural morphemes as indicating plural subject, object, or subject and object when the predicate is associated with

1. no adjuncts;
2. a subject adjunct, marked plural (Sm') or not (S);
3. an object adjunct, marked plural (Om') or not (O); or
4. both a subject and object adjunct, with either marked plural ($Sm' + O$, $S + Om'$), both marked plural ($Sm' + Om'$), or neither marked plural ($S + O$). The chart indicates for which of the above cases, barring contradictions arising from an interpretation of nonplural for a NP which is marked plural, a predicate can be interpreted as having a plural subject only (cf. Column 1), a plural object only (cf. Column 2), or both a plural subject and a plural object (cf. Column 3).

TABLE 15: INTERPRETATION OF PREDICATE PLURAL MORPHEMES

| Predicative Marking | Subject Plural | Object Plural | Subject and Object Plural |
|---------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| -?a ^z | all cases | all cases except (S +) O(m') | all cases except Sm' + O |
| -m'inh | all cases | all cases except S + O | all cases except S(m') + O |
| -m'inh...-?a ^z | all cases | no case | all cases except Sm' + O |

As the chart's left-most column (i.e. the Subject Plural column) indicates, any predicate plural marking, -?a^z, -m'inh, or -m'inh...-?a^z, coupled with either or both of the NP's can always be interpreted as indicating plural subject only, unless contradicted by a plural-marked object.

- (194) qahsa^p(m'inh)...(?a^z) (čakup(m'inh)) (murič). They (the men) killed it (the deer)
/qah-sa-p-m'inh-?a^z čakup-m'inh .../
 die-MOMCAUS-PL-PL male-PL deer

The parentheses indicate that the enclosed elements can be present or absent without affecting the possibility that the sentence be interpreted as indicated above. In particular, observe that -m'inh can be attached to both the predicate and the subject and, therefore, cannot have arisen in the predicate due to movement.

The interpretation of a plural-marked predicate as indicating a plural object only is less commonly possible. A predicate affixed by -?a^z (but not -m'inh or a pronominal affix) can be interpreted thus only if no NP or only a nonpluralized NP subject is present.

- (195) qahsa^p?a^z (čakup) He (the man) killed them

A predicate affixed by -m'inh (but not -?a^z) can be interpreted thus in any noncontradicting case except that of cooccurrence of both nonpluralized subject and object NP's.

- (196) qahsa^{pm'inh} čakup murič The men killed a deer
 *The man killed the deer(p)

A predicate affixed by both -m'inh and -?a^z can never be interpreted as

having only a plural object regardless of what adjuncts (pluralized or not) are also present. That is, a predicate affixed by both $-mink$ and $-?a\cdot t$ is always interpreted as having at least a plural subject. On the other hand, if $-?a\cdot t$ follows a pronominal affix, it must be interpreted as nonsubject, i.e. as either object or oblique.

- (197) *cassā;?x̥in?at* We chased them
 /*cas-ši(x)-?at-in-?a-t/* chase-MOM-IP-PL

Finally, consider the cases in which both the subject and object are interpreted as plural (cf. Column 3 in the chart). This interpretation is impossible if, although the predicate is marked plural by $-m'inh$ and/or $-?a^{\circ}z$, both NP's are present and only the subject is marked plural, i.e. $Sm' + O$. Evidently, in such contexts precedence is given to plural subject only. Also, when a predicate is affixed by $-m'inh$ alone and subject and object NP's (neither marked plural) cooccur, plurality is assigned only to the subject.

- (198) qahsa·pm' inh čakup(m-inh) mawič The men killed a deer
*The man killed a/some deer

- (199) qahsa*p(m'inh)?at čakupm'inh mavič The men killed a deer
*Thè man killed a/some deer

In the vast majority of cases, a predicate can be interpreted as having both a plural subject and a plural object, even if the object serves as the base for the predicate as in (200).

- (200) *saʃiʔn'ah* He/they sought a cave/caves
 /*saʃiʔ-n'a•h/ cave-seek..*

The above analysis obscures an important difference in the interpretation of $-?a\cdot\#$ and $-m'inh$. This is the priority of interpretations. Evidently, in nonbiasing transitive contexts, $-?a\cdot\#$ has priority as a subject marker (where no pronominal cooccurs) and $-m'inh$ has priority as an object marker. Priority is rated in the following glosses from most likely (1) to least likely (2) or (3).

- (201) *Ric'a·pm'inh*

 1. He was lifting a bunch of things
 2. A bunch of them lifted it
 3. A bunch lifted a bunch of things

(202) ?i·č'a·p?at

1. They're lifting it
2. He's lifting them
3. They're lifting a bunch of them

For predicates such as č'ay'ix 'pick berries' and simt- 'roast'fish' which specify an implicit object but do not associate with an object NP, the dichotomy of -m'inh (plural object) and -?a·t (plural subject) is stronger.

(203) simta·m'inh

1. He was roasting a bunch of fish
2. A bunch were roasting (a) fish

(204) simta·?t

They were roasting (a) fish

*He was roasting a bunch of fish

This may be because -?a·t must be coreferential to a NP adjunct (subject, object, or oblique) and there is no object associated with such intransitive predicates.

A similar distinction of interpretation of -m'inh and -?a·t occurs for predicates which are intransitive but which can be associated with either an agent (marked plural by -?a·t) or patient (marked plural by -m'inh).

(205) si·ka·m'inh

A bunch (of boats) are sailing
*He is sailing a bunch of boats

(206) si·ka·?t

1. A bunch of people are sailing
2. A bunch are sailing a bunch of boats

Finally, given intransitive predicates which can be transitivity by affixation of a causative morpheme, -?a·t is primarily associated with the agent subject (of the transitive predicate) and -m'inh with the patient subject (of the intransitive predicate).

(207) k'iñsa·p?at

/k'iñ-sa·p-?a·t/

They broke it

break-MOMCAUS-PL

(208) k'iñsiñm'inh

/k'iñ-si(n)-m'inh/

A bunch of them broke

break-MOM-PL

That is, given an intransitive predicate which can be transitivity, the subject's semantic role (as agent or patient) can be identified by the choice of plural marker.

We turn now to the use of *-m'inh* in NP's. The plural *-m'inh* can not be present in a word pluralized by *-h*[L] or *-i:h*[L] or *-t-l-i:h*[L], all noninflectional plural markers.

(209) *ča·kuphm'inh*

It can, however, occur with these plural markers in the same NP if the two plural morphemes are found in different words.

(210) *?i·hm'inh i·čakup* a bunch of big men

/?i:h^w-m'inh-i· čakup -h[L]/ Big-PL-DEF male-PL

Within NP's, *-m'inh* can serve as the only plural marker or as one of a set of plural markers found either in different words as in (210) or in the same word as in (211) below, where the distributive morpheme serves as a plural marker.

(211) *?i?i·hm'inh čakup* a bunch of men all over the place
/CV#?i:h^w-m'inh .. / distrib-big-PL male

As mentioned earlier, *-m'inh* signifies plurality, specifically collective or partitive plurality. It can denote a group or a bunch of potentially countable entities, e.g. *p'atqukm'inh* 'a big pile of goods' or *?um?i·qsm'inh* 'a group of mothers'. It can also denote a large amount (mass) of a noncountable entity, e.g. *sup'icmism'inh* 'a lot of sand' or *tuha·m'inh* 'a lot of flowing (water)'. Finally, it can denote either a quantity or a plurality of an entity which can either be counted or not, e.g. *čip'u·qsm'inh* 'a bunch of copper (as an element), a bunch of coppers (as ceremonial carved shield-like objects)'. In all the above cases, *-m'inh* designates a large quantity which is a subset of the referent entity, be it men, big books, mothers, sand, or copper.

This partitive interpretation has two correlates. First, *-m'inh* is never found in generic NP's. Second, *-m'inh* can denote a subset of a definite class, as in *čakupm'inh* 'a bunch of the men (a subset of those men), that bunch of men (a subset of all men)' or *?atam'inh* 'two of them, two of each (e.g. of cups, plates, etc.)'.

To a certain extent, *-m'inh* appears to have a nominalizing function. Adjectivals can serve as nominal-less NP's only if *-m'inh* (or *-?i-* DEF)

is present, as in *'aqaq'qkm'inh* 'bunch of green ones' or *ñutm'inh* 'a bunch of nice ones'. This appears to be due to an analogical extension based on the common occurrence of modifiers affixed by *-m'inh* in nominal-headed NP's such as *ñutm'inh pu* 'a bunch of nice guns' and the occasional occurrence of uninflected adjectivals as one-word NP's.

- (212) *watšix ?i·h* A big one went home
/wat-ši(ñ) .../ go home-MOM big

The nominalizing function of *-m'inh* is restricted to adjectivals. Uninflected quantity or quantifier stems are free to serve as one-word NP's. Temporal stems never serve as NP's and locative or verbal stems must be affixed by *-?i·* in order to serve as NP's. While it is true that *-m'inh* does emphasize the participants of a predicate (as a bunch) as in (213), a verbal or locative stem affixed by *-m'inh* is ungrammatical in nonpredicative contexts (unless affixed as well by *-?i·* DEF or embedded within a relative clause as in (215) and (216) respectively).

- (213) *?acšiñm'inh* A bunch (of them) went out fishing
/?ac-ši(ñ)-m'inh/ There's a bunch who went out
SOME of them went out fishing
go out-MOM-PL
- (214) *huqsa·?ñ ?acšiñm'inh* They capsized and went out fishing
/huq-ši(ñ)-ñ ?ac-ši(ñ)-m'inh/ (NOT The ones who went out capsized)
spill-MOM-TEM go out-MOM-PL
- (215) *huqsa·?ñ ?acšiñm'inh* The bunch out fishing capsized
- (216) *huqsa·?ñ yaqi· ?acšiñ* Whoever was out fishing capsized

4.3.8. Nonpredicative Inflection

In the above sections, there have been indications that nonpredicative inflection was different from predicative inflection. This distinction is not a function of semantic class (or part of speech) but rather of grammatical category, i.e. of predicate versus adjunct or oblique. Recall that even nonmatrix oblique predicates are inflected differently from matrix ones. Mode, tense, mood, and pronominal affixes are prohibited in one type of complement oblique and in NP-relating obliques. In oblique predicates where such inflection is acceptable, the

mood must be indefinite, conditional, subordinate, or absolute.

Inflection is most severely restricted in the NP adjunct or oblique. If the NP is or includes a relative clause, the relative predicate is affixed by a relative mood which can be accompanied by any mode, tense, or pronominal affixes. If a NP is or includes a possessed element, the possessed element or its modifier can be affixed by the possessive -uk; the possessive mood affixes, and appropriate pronominal affixes.

- (217) *maht' a[?]qñk^wqs* my house-to-be
/maht' i-?a:qñ-uk-q-s/ house-FUT-POSS-SUB-I

NP-level inflection can attach to the nominal head or to any nonnominal modifiers. Hence, inflection appropriate to a possessee cannot be attached to a possessor nominal cooccurring in the same NP.

- (218) *t'ar'a[?]s sini^wñm'inhk^w* a kid's dogs (*kids' dog(s))
/t'ar'a-?is sini^wñm'inh-uk/ child-DIM dog-PL-POSS

Apart from where the NP contains a relative clause or a possessee nominal, a non predicative NP includes no pronominal affix.

Two other moods (besides one associated with relative clauses or possessee NP's) are found affixed to NP constituents. These are the inferential -č and the conditional -qu:. The inferential mood is optionally present when the existence of the referent or the veracity of some attribute within a NP is based on indirect, second-hand knowledge or is controversial either because the listener is not likely to agree with the speaker's assertion or because the speaker doubts the existence or veracity of some element of his own assertion.

- (219) *wikints ?uwa[?]ñ^wihukč boat* I never found a supposedly red boat
/wik-int-s ?u-a-wi(ñ) [L] -'ñ^wih-uk-č .../
 not-PAST-I, it-find..-TEM red-DUR-INF ..

- (220) *wikhtina[?]s qu^wišim^w tintč* That old Raven was obviously crazy
/wik-htin-a[?]s qu^wiš-in-m^wi-t-int-č/
 not-made of..-EVID raven-NOM-mythical male..-PAST-INF

The conditional mood is present when the NP referent or its modifier is irrealis because the NP is indefinite, nonparticularized and non-

generic, or hypothetical, or object of a negated predicate.

- (221) *?ukwi·ti qa?u·cisqu* Make a little basket!
/?u-(č)i·t-i qa?u·c-i-s-qu:/ it-make...-IMPV basket-DIM-COND
- (222) *?un'a·hi·s kütqu· tu·cma* I'm looking for a good woman
/?u-n'a·h-(y)i-s küt-qu: .../ it-seek..-INDEF-I good-COND woman
- (223) *wikyu·?aks ?u·wik pi·šmanqu* I haven't found a fisherman
/wik-yu-·?ak-s ?u-a-wi(?)L] pi·šman-qu:/
 not...-ed-TEM-I it-find... fisherman-COND

Inflection of mood within the NP cannot be considered as an entity independent of a particular constituent. The unrealis -*qu:* COND, for example, can be affixed only to an unrealis constituent and not to any constituent of an unrealis NP. In example (224), only the modifier is unrealis if the speaker has seen crows of other colours.

- (224) *wikyu·?aks n'aci·či k'isukqu k'a·?in* I've never seen a white crow
/wik-yu-·?ak-s n'ac-i·či(?) k'is-uk-qu: .../ not...-ed-TEM-I see-INC white-DUR-COND crow

In such a context, it would be ungrammatical to have -*qu:* affixed to *k'a·?in* 'crow' instead. Individual constituent inflection of mood also results in NP's multiply inflected for mood.

- (225) *?uh?ap· čusukqu kütqu· tiħat* Let there be the newest, finest mats!
/?u-h-·ap čuš-uk-qu: küt-qu: .../ it-ABS-CAUS new-DUR-COND nice-COND

Similarly, a NP can be multiply inflected for the diminutive or the iterative.

- (226) *küt?is: boat?is* a nice little boat
/küt-?is boat-?is/ nice-DIM boat-DIM

The tenses found in nonclausal NP's are future -*?a:qč* and past -*int*. The past affix can be attached to a nominal without the presence of -*i*·DEF. This is possible, however, only when the nominal is uniquely identified.

- (227) *mukwintč* Maquinna (now deceased)
/mukwina-int-č/ Maquinna-PAST-INF

- (228) *quta-ykint*
-/xuta-y-?ak-int/

her (Granny's) old knife (now lost)
knife-POSS-PAST

The possessive paradigm (at least in the third person) can occur with
-?i· DEF.

- (229) *tučmu-pisk'i*
/tučmu-p-?is-uk-?i/

his little sister
male's sister-DIM-POSS-DEF

When -?a:qñ FUT is affixed to a nominal and when either -?a:qñ or -int is
affixed to a nonnominal, the stem must also be affixed by -?i· DEF if it
is to be interpreted as a nonpredicative NP or NP constituent.

Tense is more commonly indicated in Kyuquot NP's than in English
NP's although tense is never obligatorily specified in NP's. The past
morphe occurs in NP's when the referent is lost as in (228), deceased
as in (227), or destroyed as in (230).

- (230) *x'ihci-pscinti*
/x'ihci-p-sa-ca-int-?i/

the (smashed-up) vase
flower..container-PAST-DEF

Evidently, in Kyuquot, the use of -int in NP's coreferential to deceased
individuals is becoming optional. The future morpheme is present in NP's
when the future occurrence of an entity or of a certain state of that
entity is factual and subject to someone's volition or control as in (217).
When the future occurrence of a NP referent or its state is factual but
is not controlled, the futurity is normally indicated by the inceptive
aspect as in (231) or by a prospective noninflectional affix.

- (231) *?um?i-qsički*
/?um?i-?i-qsa-či-či(x)-?i/

the mother-to-be
mother..kin-INC-DEF

The only mode found in nonpredicative nonclausal NP's is -matak.

- (232) *qaħsa-pmatk?a-qxi*
/qaħ-sa-p-matak-?a:qxi-?i/

the one who might kill him
die-MOMCAUS-PROB-FUT-DEF

Irrealis NP's or NP constituents are identified by -qu: COND but not by
-aħ IRR. Evidential NP's or NP constituents are identified by -č INF
but not by -ckwa* MUST. A counterpart of -cim POSS which would be found
in NP's is not known.

There is one inflectional morpheme which is found only in non-

predicative NP's. This is the particularizing marker $-?i$ DEF which follows $-int$ PAST as in (230) and precedes ka 'again' as in (233).

- (233) *hissa \cdot ?kqu \cdot s h̄a \cdot ka \cdot u \cdot ?i \cdot ka* I would hit the other one
/his-ši(?)-ak-qu:-s .. ka?u.-?i.-ka./
 hit-MOM-TEM-COND-I the other-DEF-again.

Contrast the meanings of the stem *čakup* when affixed and not affixed by $-?i$: *čakup* 'a man, males (generic), the man (old information), some men (indefinite)' and *čakupi* 'a/the certain man'. A definite and particular referent can be indicated as such by the presence of both an article or deictic and the $-?i$ suffix as in *ha \cdot čakupi* 'the/that man'.

The presence of $-?i$ depends on the semantic class of NP constituents. Pronominal or proper name stems are not affixed by $-?i$. One cannot say *nua \cdot a \cdot qi* (we-DEF) or *cineini* (Chihchin-DEF). Nor can one-word quantity class NP's be affixed by $-?i$ unless some suffix follows the quantity base. This suffix could be a restrictive noninflectional one as in (235) or a mode (or tense) suffix as in (236).

- (234) *nu \cdot a \cdot kmatki \cdot s mu \cdot (*?i \cdot)* I think I found the four
/nu-na \cdot ka \cdot matak-(y)i:-s .. /
 it-have..-PROB-INDF-I four
- (235) *hitint \cdot ?axisi* The two on the beach were there.
/hit-int \cdot ?ak-Pis-?i/
 there-PAST two-at-beach-DEF
- (236) *mu \cdot mataki.* the possibly four
/mu \cdot -matak-?i/
 four-PROB-DEF

NP's are capable of being, but are not obligatorily, specified for particularity of referent by $-?i$ if the NP is composed solely of a nominal, quantifier, or adjectival.

- (237) *watšik \cdot ka \cdot u \cdot (?)* Another went home
/wat-ši(?) ka?u.-?i/
 go-home-MOM other-DEF
- (238) *wa \cdot ak \cdot ?u \cdot k \cdot ?i \cdot č \cdot a \cdot s* He called to the one going up
/wa \cdot -ak \cdot ?u-(č)it [L] ?i \cdot č \cdot a \cdot as/ call-TEM it-do to... go up-about to.

NP's are also capable of being specified for particularity of referent if an adjectival, quantity, or quantifier modifier accompanies a nominal.

or an adjectival.

- (239) *?aya xutm'inh* many nice things
/.. xut-m'inh/ many nice-PL

NP's are obligatorily specified by *-?i* if a tense morpheme is present (unless an otherwise particularized nominal is present) as in

(240), if a nominal head has an object as in (240), or if a multi-morphemic or phrasal modifier is present as in (241).

- (240) *qa'u*c' ?uč'ik'i* the thing used for baskets
/... ?u-č'ikʷ-?i/ basket it-instrument-DEF
- (241) *ha wikel-čidmahsay (qu-?as)* the guy who wanted to not go a certain way
/.. wikel-c-?i:-ši(x)-mahsa-?i.../ the not-at-go to-MOM-want to-DEF adult

Even bimorphemic modifiers require the presence of *-?i* if the affix in the stem is derivational but not aspectual. Finally, the NP is obligatorily specified for particularity if it includes a temporal, locative, or verbal stem not following the nominal head.

- (242) *ta'kški huhu'n'i·h* the ones always out whaling
/tak-[L]-ši(x)-?i· hu-n'i-i:h [R]/ each-GRAD-MOM-DEF whale-pursue..
- (243) *t'iqasi qu-?as* a/the person sitting outside
/t'iqʷ-as-?i .../ sit-outside-DEF adult

When a locative or verbal stem follows a nominal head, it cannot be affixed by any NP-level inflectional affixes and it is interpreted as an oblique modifier. In such NP's, *-?i* need not be present.

- (244) *n'acičk iu'ema č'ita* he saw a woman clam-digging
/n'ac-ičči(x) .. č'it-(y)a/ see-INC woman clam-dig-CONT

- (245) *... qu-?as hi's hitinqs* ... a (certain) man at the beach
/... hit-čis hita-n'aq-čis/ there-at beach there(MOM)-slope-at beach

Nominals which are implicitly derived from stems which are morphologically verbal, e.g. *hu'thu'č* [dancer (from 'dancing repeatedly')], need not be formally particularized by *-?i*:

In summary, words of certain semantic classes (i.e. temporal, verbal, and locative) can very rarely if ever serve as heads of NP's without affixation by $-?i$. Adjectivals rarely occur as NP heads without the presence of $-?i$ and/or $-m'inh$. In a sense, these affixes could be said to 'nominalize' a constituent. However, nonnominals such as adjectivals, quantities, or quantifiers can serve as NP heads without the presence of either of these affixes. Hence the NP constituent cannot be equated with a nominal.

Secondly, $-?i$ attaches to one word of a clause serving as either a NP or a modifier within a NP.

- (246) $?u'u'i:hi \chiims$
 $/?u'i:h[R]-?i .. /$

the one going out after bears
 it-pursue..-DEF brown bear

- (247) $muksu\cdot pi \check{c}akup$
 $/muk-suip-?i .. /$

the guy who killed a deer
 deer-kill..-DEF male

If $-?i$ nominalizes only the *muksu·p* stem in (247), then NP's with verbal or adjectival modifiers must evidently be epithetic phrases consisting of appositive nominals. But this is contradicted by cases such as (243) which can also be expressed as *t'iwas qu·?asi* with no change in meaning or privilege of occurrence. A nominalization analysis is also contradicted by (246). In that phrase, $-?i$ must have within its scope a clause (predicate plus object). Therefore, $-?i$ cannot be considered truly derivational, if by that is meant 'capable of changing a word's part of speech'.

4.3.9. Summary

Two other topics conclude this examination of Kyuquot inflection: inflection ellipsis and the morphological status of inflectional affixes.

Recall that pronominal affixes can be absent if the prior (or less commonly, subsequent) discourse context can render the elliptical NP's antecedent recoverable (cf. section 3.5.1). In fact, pronominal ellipsis is a part of inflection ellipsis which typically involves mode, tense, mood, and pronominal affixes. Although these inflectional affixes can recur in coordinate clauses as in (248), they do not have to (as is exemplified in (249) and (250)).

- (248) ?uci-ča?čat : ~ihsa?čat They went off and paddled away
 /?u-c-?i:-ši(?)-?ak-?a-t ~ihs-ši(?)-?ak-?a-t/
 it-at-go to...-MOM-TEM-PL paddle-MOM-TEM-PL

- (249) watša?čac : ya-cukšk You'll go home; you'll walk!
 /wat-ši(?)-?ak-a-e yac-[L]-uk-ši(?)/
 go home-MOM-TEM-II(IND) step-GRAD-DUR-MOM

- (250) matsik : ti-č'ak-ička He flew off; he'd come to life again
 /mat-ši(?) ti-č-?ak-(y)i:-č-ka/ fly-MOM alive-TEM-INDE-INF-again

This inflection ellipsis is independent of other types of ellipsis. For example, NP and inflection ellipsis can occur in coordinate clause-mates.

- (251) mat'i-ki-č i hu ; hini-k č'ikna-m'ti
 /mat-?i-(?)-(y)i:-č .. hin.-?i-(?) č'ikna-m'i-t/
 fly-outside(MOM)-INDE-INF there there(MOM)-outside(MOM) sparrow-
 mythical male..
 Sparrow flew out; he flew right out of there

Inflection ellipsis also occurs in one-clause sentences. The mode, tense, mood, and person are either understood as equivalent to a previously specified (or anticipated) mode, tense, mood, and person as in (252) or are understood as inflectionally unmarked, i.e. realis, nonfuture, absolute, and third person (singular) subject.

- (252) ~ihsa?čin We paddled on
 /~ihs-ši(?)-?ak-in/
kwi-saqsk We went to the other side
 /kwi-?-(w)aqsa [L]-?/
 different-stream bank-MOM

The second topic concerning inflection is the morphological status of inflectional morphemes. It is asserted here that inflectional morphemes are affixes generated as part of a word rather than as clitics forming a unique syntactic constituent type. Although inflection does tend to occur after the first word in the constituent it modifies, inflectional affixes do not have an obligatory constituent position. An adjunct can precede the clausally-inflected predicate. A qualifier can precede clausally-inflected predicates and clausally-inflected qualifiers

can follow predicates. NP inflection can affix to a nominal or modifier which follows a modifier or nominal (i.e. Mod N-INFL or N Mod-INFL) and NP-level inflection can be distributed over more than one constituent of the NP as in (253) and can even be repeated within the same NP.

- (253) *?akisi hu·n' i-m'inh tani* the two whales on the beach
/?ak-^{cis}-?i· hu·n' i-m'inh .. / two-at beach-DEF whale-PL really

A second reason why inflectional affixes are assumed to be affixes is that at least some of them depend, for their interpretation, on the particular stem they are affixed to. The past morpheme *-int* can be interpreted as 'deceased' when attached to nonpredicative animate nominals. The passive *-at* can be interpreted as 'possessor of' when affixed to a body part nominal or to a limited set of intransitive verbal predicates. The plural *-m'inh*, normally translated as 'a bunch of', can be interpreted as 'each' when affixed to quantity stems (in addition to having its regular collective interpretation); for example, 'two each (of each type of object)' as well as 'two (of them)'. Finally, the diminutive *-?is*, although normally interpreted as 'small, endearing, young', obligatorily accompanies certain adjectival stems such as 'narrow', 'only' etc. whose object of attribution can be neither small, endearing, nor young.

On the basis of such evidence, it appears that inflectional affixes are generated with the stems that they will accompany in surface structure, stems which do not have one obligatory surface constituent position.

4.4. Aspect

4.4.1. Introduction

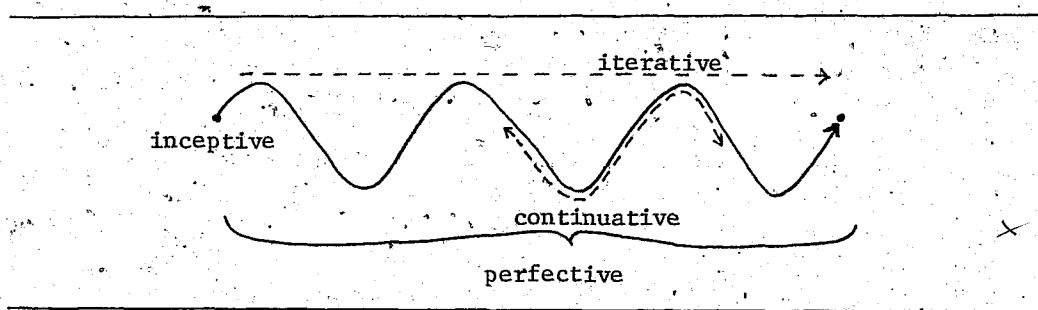
Kyuquot has noninflectional morphemes of three types: aspectual, governing (i.e. derivational but nonaspectual), and restrictive (i.e. non-derivational). In this section, aspectual morphology and aspect in general are discussed. As Comrie (1976:3) points out, a language's aspect system consists of morphemes which provide different viewpoints of a situation's internal temporal constituency. It is important to make a terminological distinction between aspectual categories ('aspects') and the specific aspectual morphemes of a given language. An aspect, such as

'inceptive', can be indicated by more than one aspectual morpheme. In this work, terms for aspects are written out in full, e.g. 'inceptive', and terms for aspectual morphemes are capitalized and abbreviated, e.g. 'INC'.

Aspects commonly referred to lexically or morphologically in a language include the perfective, in which a situation is portrayed as a blob, having no internal phases or structure as in *He ran*, *He tied it up*, or *He coughed*; and the imperfective, in which a situation is portrayed as having internal phases and structure. An imperfective situation can be further specified as inceptive if the initiatory phase of a situation is focused upon as in *He started to run* or *She turned red*; iterative if the situation is composed of a series of recurring events as in *She laughed and laughed*; habitual if the situation occurs over an extended period of time (could be simultaneously iterative, continuative, or durative as well) as in *He used to run every day*; or continuous if the situation continues through time, in either a static (durative) sense as in *It's red* or a dynamic sense, which can be either progressive as in *She is getting (more and more) patient* or nonprogressive as in *He's running*.

The following diagram illustrated different aspectual viewpoints.

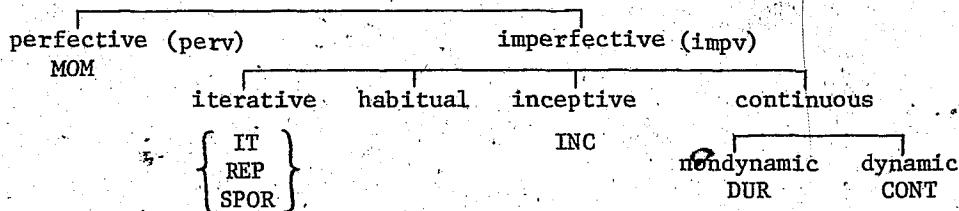
FIGURE 3: ASPECTUAL VIEWPOINTS



In Kyuquot, the primary aspectual morphemes are -*ši(ñ)* MOM (momentaneous), -*iči(ñ)* INC (inceptive), CVC# IT (iterative), -*š* (~ -*ič*) [L + S] SPOR (sporadic iterative), -(y)a CONT (continutive), -(y)a REP (repetitive iterative), -akw DUR (durative), and [L] GRAD (graduative). There are other affixes and stems contributing aspectual information to

• constituents of the Kyuquot clause. These are discussed once the primary aspectual morphemes are presented. In the following figure, these primary morphemes are written below the aspect they can denote.

FIGURE 4: PRIMARY KYUQUOT ASPECT MORPHEMES



Aspect is central to Kyuquot word formation. Every root, base, and stem has an aspect. The base's aspectual value, which is equivalent to that of its right-most derivational morpheme, is explicit if that morpheme is aspectual and implicit if it is nonaspectual. There are only two implicit aspects for roots and governing suffixes: imperfective for nonverbal ones and nondurative for verbal ones. For example, the stem *?una·kš̥* has an explicit momentaneous (perfective) aspect and its base, *?una·k* 'having it', has an implicit imperfective aspect.

- (254) ?una·kšn He got it
 / ?u-na·k-w-ši(x) / it-have..-MOM

The aspectual morphemes are not found in all types of bases and the same aspectual value cannot be assigned to an aspect morpheme in all contexts. There are classes of roots and stems associated with certain aspect morphemes and certain aspect values for those morphemes. In the following table, these classes constitute the highest row. Capital letters refer to semantic classes. The *T* and *Q* refer here to temporal and quantity roots. V_4 and V_5 are classes of roots or bases affixed by aspectual morphemes, V_4 by $-ak^w$ DUR, $-\check{s}$ ($\sim -i:i:\check{t}$ [$L + S$]) SPOR, $-c_i \cdot \check{c}_i(\check{\pi})$ INC, or $-\check{s}i(\check{\pi})$ MOM; V_5 by $-(y)a$ CONT. A_4 is composed of stems consisting of an adjectival root plus $-ak^w$ DUR. The class designated as 'OTHER' includes all stems except those derived by aspectual morphemes; all combinations of roots plus restrictive suffixes (except V-uk); and all nominal, quantifier, and locative roots. The rows indicate the aspectual value of the non-

occurrence of a given aspectual morpheme (indicated by one of its allo-morphs) for a particular class. Not all members of a class are found to associate with all the aspectual morphemes. However, those occurring will have the aspectual value indicated below.

TABLE 16: KYUQUOT ASPECTUAL VALUES BY CLASS

| Morpheme | V ₁ | V ₂ | V ₃ | A ₁ | A ₂ | A ₃ | T | Qy | OTHER | A ₄ | V ₄ | V ₅ |
|----------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----|------|-------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| -akʷ | dur result | - | - | dur state | dur state | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| -(y)a | cont prog | → | - | inc prog | cont | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| CVC# | iter | → | - | impv inc it | → | iter | → | inc | iter | iter | - | - |
| -ci(χ) | inc | → | - | impv | → | inc | → | - | - | - | - | - |
| -si(χ) | perv | → | - | perv inc | → | perv | inc | → | perv | inc | - | - |
| [L] | grad | → | - | - | - | grad | - | grad | → | - | - | - |

V₁, V₂, and V₃ refer to classes of verbal roots. V₁ roots occur with -akʷ DUR and with -(y)a* CONT (not simultaneously); V₃ roots with neither -akʷ nor -(y)a*; and V₂ roots with -(y)a* but not -akʷ.

(255) matuk He was in flight

/mat-uk/
fly-DUR

mata He was flying

/mat-(y)a*/
fly-CONT

(256) susa He was swimming

/sus-(y)a*/
swim-CONT

*susuk

(257) *n^aamat He tried

*n^aamatk, *n^aamata

Verbal roots, most of which are V₂, have a momentaneous (perfective) aspectual value when affixed by -si(χ) MOM.

In contrast, adjectival roots combine with -si(χ) to form stems having an inceptive aspect. A₁ roots occur with -akʷ DUR and -(y)a* QNT; A₂ roots with -(y)a* but not -akʷ; and A₃ roots with or not with -akʷ.

but never with -(y)a..

(258) *χ'ipuk*

/χ'i^w-uk/

χ'ihā

/χ'i^w-(y)a*/

It's red

red-DUR

It's getting red

red-CONT

(259) *m'atba*

/m'a^b-(y)a*/

**m'atuk*

It's cold

cold-CONT

(260) *χut*

It's nice

**χutuk*, **χuta*

Each aspectual morpheme is introduced below. The morpheme's privileges of occurrence and aspectual values and other morphemes with similar aspectual values are presented.

4.4.2. Momentaneous

The momentaneous morpheme *-χi(χ)* has the greatest range of occurrence of any aspectual morpheme. When affixed to verbal or temporal roots, it denotes a perfective (momentaneous) aspect as in *qahχix* 'He died', *hisχix* 'He hit it', *huhtikχix* 'He knew it', and *qiχix* 'It went on for a long time'. The action is portrayed as a blob, an entity without internal phase-structure. Such perfective-marked stems can occur with any tense morpheme.

When affixed to bases other than verbal or temporal class roots, *-χi(χ)* denotes an inceptive aspect as in *χ'ihχix* 'It reddened', *m'atχix* 'It grew cold', or *siχix* 'It went rotten'. If both *-χi(χ)* and *-iχi(χ)* can attach (not simultaneously) to a base, then *-χi(χ)* indicates the perfective inceptive aspect and *-iχi(χ)* the imperfective inceptive aspect as in *y'imhχix* 'He became ashamed' and *y'imhiχix* 'He was becoming ashamed'. If only one of these morphemes can attach to a base, then the resulting stem has a general inceptive meaning as in *t'abkχix* 'It softened (A₁)' or *χ'uqiχix* 'He developed broad (shoulders) (A₃)'. The use of a perfective morpheme to indicate inception is not uncommon in languages and is especially common for stative verbs. In Nootka, the momen-

taneous morpheme indicates inception for all roots which are neither verbal nor temporal and for verbal roots and bases already specified for perfectivity by a momentaneous, iterative, or verbal derivational affix.

A small number of verbal and adjectival roots have some other perfective allomorph for the momentaneous morpheme: *-inu(ñ)* as in *k'ama·ñk* 'It filled up', *-'u(ñ)* as in *wi·nap'uk* 'He stayed', *-i(ñ)* as in *nasiñk* 'He tried', and *-'i(ñ)* as in *ku·w'iñk*, /*ku·w'it-'i(ñ)*/ 'He stole it'.

Verbal (V_4) and adjectival (A_4) bases can be further affixed by *-ši(ñ)* to indicate inception when they result from the affixation of aspectual morphemes. Such bases include:

1. a root affixed by *-ši(ñ)* MOM as in *k'wissiñk* 'It's just starting to snow now', *matsiñk* 'He just flew off', *Sičsiñk* 'It's just starting to go rotten', and *čakupšiñk* 'He's on the verge of marrying';
2. a root plus *-c'i·či(ñ)* INC as in *mati·čkñ* 'He just learned to (began to) fly', and *y'imhi·čkñ* 'He was becoming more and more ashamed';
3. a root plus iterative morphemes (cf. section 4.4.7) as in *naqnāqššñ* 'He's started to drink every now and then', and *tu·pktu·pkšñ* 'It was becoming blacker and blacker (time after time); or
4. a root plus *-ak'* DUR as in *mahakšñ* 'It started to become worn out', *ñihukšñ* 'The object turned red', and *qaħakšñ* 'It (the battery) went dead'. The presence of *-ši(ñ)* after a root plus *-ak'* emphasizes the inception of a resultant state, i.e. 'began to be a ...-ed thing'. In contrast, affixation of *-ši(ñ)* to a root emphasizes the process of inception itself as in *mahiñk* 'It became old', *ñihsiñk* 'It became red', and *qaħsiñk* 'He died'.

In addition, there are roots and bases which can be affixed by *-ši(ñ)* or by *-c'i·či(ñ)* but not by both. This class includes some adjectival roots, all the quantity, quantifier, nominal, and locative roots, roots followed by restrictive suffixes; and bases not formed by affixation of an aspectual morpheme. The presence of either *-ši(ñ)* or *-c'i·či(ñ)* in these contexts indicates the perfective inceptive (or inceptive): *ñuqi·čk* (A) 'He developed broad shoulders', *?ayačk* (Qy) 'There came to be a lot', *ña?u·k'wñk* (Qr) 'There came to be another one', *wiki·čk* (Qr).

'He no longer...', *č'apičšk* (N) 'It turned out to be a canoe', *qu·ti·čk* (N) 'He became a slave', and *?ah?a·čk* (L) 'He got to be there'. The perfective/inceptive morpheme associated with a given root or base is not fully predictable by semantic class or phonological shape although certain principles do exist. For nominal roots, those ending in a vowel, *t*, or *s* are affixed by *-či(čk)*; those ending in other consonants are affixed by *-ši(čk)*. No such principle has been found for other semantic classes.

For multi-morphemic bases, the choice of a perfective/inceptive morpheme is more varied and depends in part on the last phoneme of the base's final morpheme. Most consonant-final morphemes have *-ši(čk)* as their perfective/inceptive suffix and most vowel-final morphemes have *-inu(čk)*.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (261) <i>?uk'upšk</i> <i>/?u-k'up-ši(čk)/</i> | He started to like it it-like..-MOM |
| (262) <i>t'ip'ičšk</i> <i>/t'i-p'ič-ši(čk)/</i> | He took a fall overboard sink-at edge-MOM |
| (263) <i>m'atate'int</i> <i>/m'at-a-ta'-a-inu(čk)/</i> | He tied it up tie-at upright surface-MOM |
| (264) <i>?u·chi·nč</i> <i>/u-chi [L]-inu(čk)/</i> | He got married it-married to..-MOM |

There are two major exceptions to the above principles of morpheme choice. Virtually all *s*-final suffixes have *-čk* as their perfective/inceptive morpheme.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (265) <i>hiy'ahšk</i> <i>/hiy'-ahš-čk/</i> | He got into the canoe there-in vessel-MOM |
|---|--|

Virtually all suffixes ending in *u(·)č* or *Cč* (where *C* denotes 'consonant') have *-uvi(čk)* as their perfective/inceptive morpheme.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (266) <i>qu·šiny'uč</i> <i>/quš-(w)int [L]-uvi(čk)/</i> | Her neck stiffened up stiff-at neck-MOM |
|--|--|

There are about another fifty suffixes (less than fifteen percent of all suffixes) whose associated perfective/inceptive morpheme is not

predictable on the basis of the above principles. First, a few suffixes have idiosyncratic momentaneous forms which replace the suffix rather than follow it (as in all other cases): -'i·(x) 'at the rocks (MOM), outside (MOM)' for both -'a·?a 'at the rocks' and -'as 'outside, on the ground' and -'ipi(x) 'inside the house, enclosure (MOM)' for -'it 'in the house, enclosure'. The other unpredictable perfective/inceptive morphemes are:

1. -'xi(x) (rather than the expected -inu(x) -'uui(x), or -x) for -c 'at', -caqa [L] 'preparing..', -'atsimhi [L] 'liking..', -?i· 'go to..', -'ihta 'at nose, point', -mhi [R] 'able to..', -p'u·qs 'smelling like..', -(q)hsı· 'one who..', -u·z 'place', and -y'i·ha 'suffering from..';
2. -'ci·xi(x) (rather than the expected -inu(x) or -xi(x)) for -(?a)kwa 'completely (destroyed)', -?a·ta 'lacking..', -hsa· 'wanting to eat..', -hta 'go downstream, seaward', -inwa 'for..reason', -?i·qsa '..kin', -ma '..thing', -mahsa 'want to..', -mi·h 'sore in..', and -sahi '..wrong';
3. -x (rather than the expected -xi(x) or -inu(x)) for -(c)sit [L] 'at water-level', -(c)suk [L] 'at septum, nose', -c'u· 'at container', -(c)i·t 'at body, side of canoe', -(?)i·č 'covered in..', -?i:kw [R] 'given to..', -i:n [L] '..suspension', -(kw)a·št 'dried..', -(q)hta [R] 'at foot', -qu· 'at point', -si.kw 'finish..', -t'i:na 'slightly', and -w'in 'at middle';
4. -'i(x) (rather than the expected -xi(x)) for -a·wi(t) [L] 'expect..', -a·p'i(t) 'at the back', and -in'uk [R] 'at hand'; and
5. -sx (where the previous suffix's final x is deleted) for -(c)su·qx 'at guts' and -ma·aqx 'want to..'.

The aspectual value of momentaneous or inceptive morphemes following a suffix is as follows. It denotes perfective inceptive aspect if the preceding suffix is governing (i.e. derivational) but not temporal as in (267), (268), and (269).

(267) /?um?i·qsič/ She became a mother.
 /?um?i-?i·qsa-či·xi(x)/ mother-..kin-INC

(268) /?u?uk'ukš/ He came to resemble him.
 /?u-R'uk [R]-xi(x)/ it-resemble..-MOM

- (269) *?ukʷi·tšk*
/ʔu-(c)i·t-ši(ʔ)/

He started to make it
 it-make...-MOM

If the governing affix is temporal, an affixed perfective/inceptive morpheme indicates the perfective aspect.

- (270) *?akʷitšk*
/ʔak-p'it-ši(ʔ)/

He did it twice
 two-for..times-MOM

If the preceding affix is restrictive (i.e. nonderivational), the perfective/inceptive morpheme generally denotes the perfective aspect.

- (271) *hitacwink*
/hita-(c)swi·inu(ʔ)/

He went through
 there(MOM)-through-MOM

- (272) *tuxmi·šk*
/tux-mat-čis-ʔ/

He hopped on the beach
 hop-move about-at beach-MOM

Other ways in which suffixes influence aspect interpretation are discussed with respect to suffix types in the section following the presentation of the aspect system (cf. particularly section 4.8.1).

4.4.3. Continuative

The continuative morpheme *-(y)a^{*}*, which is restricted to verbal and adjectival roots, indicates that a dynamic situation (i.e. a process or event) is enduring through time. V₁ and V₂ verbal roots affixed by *-(y)a^{*}* CONT have a continuous, dynamic but nonprogressive aspectual value as in *mata* 'He's flying', *yaca* 'He's walking', or (273).

- (273) *casa·ntin*
/cas-(y)a^{}-int-in/*

We were chasing him.
 chase-CONT-PAST-IP

The long version of *a^{*}* in *-(y)a^{*}* is found in surface forms only in second syllable when protected by a following phoneme. The *y* surfaces only following a vowel as in *p^čaya* 'potlatching'. V₃ verbal roots are typically multi-syllabic and stative, and can indicate continuativity without *-(y)a^{*}*.

- (274) *?a·k'utinti·s*
/ʔa·k'ub-int-(y)i:-s/

I borrowed/ was borrowing it
 borrow-PAST-INDF-I

A_1 and A_2 roots occur with $-(y)a^*$ CONT. Attached to A_1 roots, $-(y)a^*$ indicates a progressive and inceptive aspectual value as in $\dot{x}iha$ 'reddening', $t'atka$ 'softening', or $?ucqa$ 'becoming foggy'. At least one root, $qah-$ 'die', is difficult to classify because of its influence on aspectual interpretation. It can be affixed by $-ak^w$ DUR and is therefore V_1 or A_1 . Its durative form $qahak$ 'dead' is resultant, classing $qah-$ as V_1 . However, its continuative form $qaha$ 'dying' implies change resulting in a final state and is, hence, progressive, classing $qah-$ as A_1 . The classification and interpretation of roots and aspects in Nootka requires further investigation.

A_2 roots affixed by $-(y)a^*$ indicate a continuative but not necessarily progressive aspect as in $\dot{x}upa$ 'It's hot' or $m'ata$ 'It's cold'. It cannot be claimed that Kyuquot speakers assume temperature to always be in flux. For example, on a cold day which is less cold than a previous one, a speaker could still say $m'ata$ 'It's cold' (but not 'It's getting cold/colder').

Other adjectival roots (i.e. A_3 roots such as $\dot{x}uq$ 'broad' or $\dot{x}ub$ 'nice') and all other nonverbal roots and bases cannot be affixed by $-(y)a^*$ CONT and must express the aspectual values of $-(y)a^*$ as follows. The continuative aspect is part of the implicit aspect of any nonverbal element. The progressive inceptive aspectual value is indicated for most elements by whatever morpheme indicates imperfective inceptive (or inceptive, if the distinction of perfective and imperfective is not made for that element). For most elements, this morpheme will be $-i\cdot ci(\dot{x})$ INC, or $-si(\dot{x})$ MOM if $-i\cdot ci(\dot{x})$ cannot attach to that element.

Excessive continuity is expressed by the affix $-y'i\cdot ha$ 'excessively'. This morpheme attaches only to roots as in $cipy'i\cdot h$ 'talking too much, ALL the time', $m'idy'i\cdot h$ 'raining again and again without letup', $ha\cdot w'ity'i\cdot h$ 'ALWAYS being the (elected) chief', or (275).

(275) $\dot{s}ih\cdot y'i\cdot hintis$ He was REALLY crying on and on
 $/sih\cdot y'i\cdot ha\cdot int\cdot ?i\cdot s/$ cry-excessively-PAST-IND

Continuity of an event can also be indicated by a predicate which dominates the one expressing the event itself. The higher predicates, $n'up'inq$ 'continually', $taksik$ 'always', and $sac'i-$ 'unceasingly',

can dominate a predicate which is aspectually continuative, durative, momentaneous, iterative, etc.

- (276) *n'up'inq k'wisa*
/n'up-p'inq k'wisi-(y)a'/

It was continually snowing
 one...time around snow-CONT

- (277) *takšik ha?ukʷk*
/tak-ši(ñ) ha?u-ši(ñ)/

He always answered
 each-MOM back-MOM.

4.4.4. Durative

The durative morpheme, *-akʷ* (~*-uk*) DUR, indicates a stative aspect. The distribution of the allomorphs is largely unpredictable except for the following principles. Each root can occur with only one of the two allomorphs. CV- roots are affixed by *-akʷ* as in *m'u?ak* 'burning' and roots ending in a labialized consonant or a sequence of *u* plus one consonant (i.e. ..Cʷ- or ..uC-) tend to occur with *-uk* as in *ñeihuk* 'red' /*ñeihʷ-uk*/ or *qušuk* 'stiff'. The presence of the durative morpheme is restricted to A₁ and V₁ roots. When it is difficult to determine if a root is V₁ or A₁, the decision is based on the aspectual value of the stem composed of the root plus *-ši(ñ)* MOM. If it is inceptive as in *ñeihšik* 'It reddened', then the root is A₁; if it is perfective as in *matšik* 'He flew' or *yacšik* 'He stepped', then the root is V₁.

Nonperfective stems based on A₁ roots always denote an enduring state whose inception is inseparable from the inception of the entity which is asserted to be in that state as in *ñeihuk* 'red (blood, rock, etc.)', *p'išak* 'bad', or, *t'abkak* 'soft'. In contrast, morpheme sequences composed of V₁ roots plus *-akʷ* DUR are resultant and denote a state resulting from a process as in *matuk* 'in flight', *qahak* 'dead', *ñihuk* 'in tears (from crying)', *p'a?ak* 'potlatching', and *?učqak* 'foggy'. No other class of roots and no multi-morphemic base can be affixed by *-akʷ* DUR. In summary, all nonperfective roots and bases (except A₁ roots) are implicitly imperfective, with *-akʷ* DUR used to designate an A₁ state and a V₁ resultant state.

4.4.5. Completive

In Kyuquot, the perfective morpheme *-ši(ñ)* MOM can also denote

completion if attached to a root whose unmarked or durative form (X or X-ak) indicates a state and/or whose continuative form (X-(y)a^{*}) indicates progression towards a point of completion.

If the root is verbal, affixation by -(y)a^{*} can indicate continuation of an event and/or progression toward a completion point. Contrast the following two sets of V₅ stems:

1. *susa* 'swimming', *χ'i-xwa* 'laughing', *casa* 'chasing';
2. *qaha* 'dying', *waba* 'going home', *nu-tka* 'making a revolution'.

Roots of the first type, termed 'atelic', refer to events which are not directed to some completion point. If affixed by a perfective morpheme, they can denote a complete event as in *sus̥ik* 'He swam'; *χ'i-x̥ik* 'He laughed', or *cass̥ik* 'He chased it'. This is so even if the activity is cut short, e.g. by a storm, a thump on the back, or the escape of the hunter's prey. In contrast, roots of the second type, termed 'telic', refer to events which include a completion point. The affixation of -(y)a^{*} to telic roots denotes progression toward that point and the affixation of -xi(χ) expresses completion. If the event is terminated before completion (or perhaps climax), the perfective aspect morpheme cannot be used: *qah̥ik* 'He died' (but NOT 'He was dying but didn't die'), *wat̥ik* 'He went home' (but NOT 'He was on the way home but didn't make it'), or *nu-tks̥ik* 'He made a revolution' (but NOT 'He made part of a revolution). The inceptive morpheme can be used for initiated events, whether completed or not.

There are three suffixes which express completion of an event, -ak^w DUR, -yu^{*} '...-ed', and -(?a)kwa^{*} 'destroyed (completely)'. The first two express completion as a state. The durative -ak^w has already been discussed. It expresses a resultant state when affixed to a V₁ root. The second suffix, a derivational morpheme, is the more productive affix, although by no means fully productive. Adjectival, verbal, or quantifier roots or bases derived by nonaspectual morphemes can be affixed by -yu^{*} to indicate a state resulting from the completion of a process or action (similar to that indicated by the past participle in English) and not necessarily controlled by an agent, e.g. *m'ikyu* 'rained-on', *watkyu* 'at home', *χ'ikyu* 'punched', *kuqyu* 'spilled', *tukkyu* 'blackened',

ñ'upču 'heated up', *n'ikču* 'pecked at', and *naqču* 'drunk' (the latter seemingly a loan translation). In third or later syllables, *-yu* has the allomorph *-ya* as in (278).

- (278) *?u·šp'atya* He's amazed
/?u·š-p'at-ya/ some-looking on at....-ed

For A₁ roots, a formal distinction is generally made between states which have a known inception-point (*X-yu*), and ones which have either had no inception apart from that of the entity in that state or have been in a steady state for a long time or during the period of recognition by salience for, or value to the speaker (*X-akw*). Contrast, for example, *ñ'ihyu* 'reddened', used to refer to a rusted or bloody knife, an autumn leaf, or a berry-stained container, with *ñ'ihuk* '(inherently) red', used to refer to blood, fire, or a berry (even if not red when immature).

The affixation of *-yu* to *wik* 'not' yields a stem used to denote aspectually perfect events, i.e. events occurring in the past but with an effect upon a subsequent time period.

- (279) *wikyu·yi·s hissi·k* I haven't finished (making) it yet
/wik-yu-(y)i:-s hiš-si:k/ not...-ed-INDF-I all-finish..

There is no parallel in nonnegative sentences.

The third suffix expressing completion of an event is *-(?a)kwa*. It occurs with certain verbal and adjectival roots and denotes an event having an end-point which must be reached. If the end-point is not reached, the use of *-(?a)kwa* is inappropriate. Contrast the following two stems.

- (280) *c'uxsik* He chopped at it (with a knife)
/c'ux-ši(ñ)/ stab-MOM

- (281) *c'uxkʷa·?p* He chopped it all up.
/c'ux-(?a)kʷa-?p/ stab-completely-CAUS

In a sense, *-(?a)kwa* renders an event telic.

This suffix (whose bracketed portion occurs only postvocalically), which cannot be stem-final, must be further affixed by *-i·ši(ñ)* INC to indicate perfective intransitive, or *-ap* CAUS to indicate perfective

transitive, or *-içya* (possibly from *-i-çi(ñ)-yu* historically) '*-ed*' to indicate a resultant state as in *sa?akwicya* 'all scratched up, all damaged'. One of the peculiarities of *-(?a)kwa* is that sequences of a root plus that morpheme must be explicitly marked for transitivity even when the root is inherently transitive and would not require being affixed by a causative morpheme if *-(?a)kwa* were not present. For example, the root *his-* 'hit' is implicitly transitive as in *hisix* 'He chopped it, chopped at it'. The completive or telic form is *hiskwā?*p. 'He chopped it up (completely)', the nontransitivized **hiskwicx* /*his- (?a)kwa-t-çi(ñ)*/ being ungrammatical. A root which is inherently intransitive, such as *m'u-* 'burn', can be affixed by *-(?a)kwa* plus either *-i-çi(ñ)* INC or *-ap* CAUS to produce the stems *m'u?akwicx* 'It burned up, completely, down to the ground' and *m'u?akwā?*p 'He burned it completely'.

The fact that *-(?a)kwa* means 'destroyed' as well as 'completely' is not illogical. Once an entity has fully undergone a destructive process, the process is clearly completed because the entity no longer exists or is too modified to undergo the process. In fact, *-(?a)kwa* tends to occur with destructive verbal roots such as *či-* 'rub', *či-* 'cut', *his-* 'hit', *m'u-* 'burn', *sic-* 'rot', *sas-* 'break (rope)', *ñ'ik-* 'punch', *tac-* 'chew', *hug-* 'spill', *k'wa-* 'break', *sa-* 'damaged', *c'ux-* 'stab', and *n'ik-* 'pack, scrape, scratch'. The morpheme *-(?a)kwa* also attaches to nominal roots, or to quantity, adjectival, or quantifier roots modifying a nominal.

- (282) *q'iskwicx* > A dog was destroyed
/sic- (?a)kwa-i-çi(ñ)/ dog-destroyed-INC

- (283) *mu?akwā?*p He destroyed four (of them)
/mu- (?a)kwa-ap/ four-destroyed-CAUS

The destructive sense is more obvious in such stems.

Other cases of *-(?a)kwa* seem figurative because the event expressed is only metaphorically telic (i.e. completive), e.g. *kucakwā?*p 'tickle too much, to death' or the following stem.

- (284) *yim?akwicx?* They had all been in mourning
/yim- (?a)kwa-i-çi(ñ)-ak/ unsatisfactory-destroyed-INC-TEM

Several stems indicate completion and can dominate a predicate having any aspect except the inceptive. Examples are *hawi-* 'finish', *hišit* 'do all', and *hišsičk* 'finish up'.

- (285) *hišitint hisa* He was hitting them all
/hiš-(č)it [L]-int his-(y)a/ all-do to..-PAST hit-CONT
- (286) *hišsičk hiskwa·?p* He chopped up one piece after another. He finished chopping them
/hiš-si:kw his-(?a)kwa-ap/ all-finish.. hit-completely-CAUS

4.4.6. Inceptive

The inceptive morpheme *-čiči(č)* INC always indicates an inceptive aspect in one of the three following capacities. First, *-čiči(č)* can indicate both inceptive and perfective aspect for roots or bases which can not be affixed by any momentaneous morpheme (cf. section 4.4.2). Second, *-čiči(č)*, when affixed to V₁ or V₂ roots, indicates an inceptive aspect wherein the inception of an event is treated as an event itself. This contrasts with the function of *-šči(č)* MOM which indicates a perfective aspect for verbal roots and treats the whole event (including inception) as a phaseless entity. Contrast the following pairs: *citsik* 'He raised his eyebrows', *cithičč* 'He started to raise his eyebrows'; *matsik* 'He flew', *matičč* 'He started to (learned to) fly'; *čikšik* 'He punched him', *čikičč* 'He began to punch him'. Third, *-čiči(č)*, when affixed to adjectival roots, indicates the imperfective inceptive. That is, it indicates that the state resulting from the inceptive event no longer holds or that the inception is ongoing and progressive. This contrasts with the function of *-šči(č)* MOM which indicates the perfective inceptive for adjectival roots. Contrast the following pairs: *čihišik* 'It went red', *čihičč* 'It was reddening'; *čigšik* 'It went rotten', *čigičč* 'It is/was going rotten'; *matišik* 'It became cold', *matičč* 'It has been/was/is getting cold'.

There are several ways of emphasizing the period immediately prior to the occurrence of an event. The aspectual view of an event is termed 'prospective' and is expressed in Nootka by at least three affixes, *-w'it as* 'about to...', *-pitk [R]* 'about to...', and *-čičč* 'on the verge,

prospectively'. The first affix is common and attaches to a base formally specified for aspect.

- (287) *qa[•]hsikw'ic'*
/qah-[L]-ši(ñ)-w'it-as/

He's about to die,
die-GRAD-MOM-about to..

The second affix, *-?ith [R]*, is less common and seems to be restricted to following verbal roots.

- (288) *huhuq^{w?}ithša?ñ*
/huq-?ith [R]-ši(ñ)-ax/

It started to tip over
spill-about to..-MOM-TEM

- (289) *?a[?]ac[?]ithšax*
/'ac-?ith [R]-ši(ñ)-ax/

He just started to go out fishing
go out-about to..-MOM-TEM

This morpheme seems related to *-?a[?]th ([R])*, 'lying in wait for..!'

The third prospective morpheme, *-?ix*, does not seem to be derivational. It can occur with nominal or temporal bases as an indicator of future tense as in the following stems:

- (290) *?athi[?]?xi*
/'ath-(y)i-?ix-?i/

tonight
night-..time-prospectively-DEF

- (291) *?u[?]ik[?]ink*
/?u-?ik[?]-?ik-uk/

his future tool
it-..instrument-prospectively-POSS

- (292) *wik[?]ixi[?]k m[?]uk^{w?}ax*
/wik-?ix-(y)i:-k m?u-ši(ñ)-ax/

You won't be on the verge of getting
burned (if you..)

not-prosp.-INDF-II burn-MOM-TEM

It also accompanies [L] GRAD in verbal stems (cf. section 4.4.9).

In addition, there is an adjectival predicate, *hi[?]k^{w?}at* 'almost', which can denote prospective aspect for a predicate within its scope.

- (293) *hi[?]k^{w?}atintin sihax*
/hi[?]k^{w?}at-int-in sih-ši(ñ)/

We were about to cry
almost-PAST-IP cry-MOM

There is no affix to indicate retrospective aspect, which is the aspect in a mirror-image relation to the prospective. However, the stem *nah* 'now, at the time, presently' can serve such a function.

- (294) *nahinti[?]s qa[?]u[?]c[?]*
/nah-int-(y)i:-s qa[?]u[?]c-(c)i-?/

I've just made a basket
now-PAST-INDE-I basket-make...

4.4.7. Iterative

The iterative aspect is one of the aspects most commonly indicated in Kyuquot by a morpheme. The shape of the morpheme is varied. The principle type of iterative aspectual value denotes sporadic occurrence of an event, not characterized necessarily by agentive control or evenly-spaced temporal intervals between occurrences. Such sporadic recurrence is typically glossed as 'every now and then', 'once in a while', or 'time and again' and will be indicated in examples here by the abbreviation *e.n.t.* Virtually all bases can be affixed by some morpheme indicating such an aspectual value. The other iterative aspectual value, repetitive iterative, is characterized by evenly-spaced temporal intervals between occurrences or numerous occurrences and by agentive control of the event by some participant. Repetitive aspect is less commonly indicated by affix and can be indicated by the principle (normally sporadic) iterative morpheme when a base cannot be affixed by a uniquely repetitive morpheme. Repetitive aspect is discussed in the section on gradutive aspect (section 4.4.9).

The principle iterative allomorphs are distributed as follows. One-syllable V₁, V₂, A₁, A₂, and T roots which can be affixed by -š(ʌ) MOM and are not otherwise reduplicated (i.e. due to presence of derivational suffix inducing reduplication) are affixed by a CV {C(ɔ)} # reduplicative morpheme (abbreviated as CVC#) plus the suffix -č SPOR. The ʌ in the reduplicative affix precedes a reduplicated CV- root; -č occurs as -č following a(·) or i(·), and as -k following u(·). The length of the root vowel is copied in the reduplicative vowel. Verbal and temporal roots thus modified have a perfective iterative aspect as in *p'akp'ac* 'He gave gifts away e.n.t.', *xwakxwakš* 'It expanded e.n.t.', *ksuk* 'She grabbed it e.n.t.', *qi·kqič* 'It took a long time (to do it) e.n.t.'. Adjectival roots thus modified are inceptive iterative as in *yimhyimhš* 'He became embarrassed e.n.t.' and *m'atm'atš* 'It became cold e.n.t.'

All other roots and bases have iterative aspect identified by one of a set of nonreduplicative allomorphs. Only one iterative allomorph can accompany any base except in the case of *qu?as* 'adult' (discussed

below). In general, the nonreduplicative iterative morpheme can be posited to be $-i:\ddot{t}$ [L + S] SPOR. This morpheme attaches to the affix indicating perfective aspect (i.e. either a momentaneous or inceptive morpheme) for a given base. Being a glottalization-inducing suffix, $-i:\ddot{t}$ [L + S] causes the deletion of the final $\dot{\kappa}$ of the preceding aspectual morpheme. Regular $\dot{\kappa}$ deletion and vowel elision take place, resulting in the iterative forms given below. The symbol [L + S] indicates that the first and second vowels of a stem are respectively lengthened and shortened.

TABLE 17: PERFECTIVE AND ITERATIVE FORMS

| | Perfective Form | Iterative Form |
|------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| MOM | $-si(\dot{\kappa})$ | $-si:\ddot{t}$ [L + S] |
| | $-i(\dot{\kappa})$ | $-i:\ddot{t}$ [L + S] |
| | $-'uwi(\dot{\kappa})$ | $-'uwi:\ddot{t}$ [L + S] |
| | $-inu(\dot{\kappa})$ | $-inu:\ddot{t}$ [L + S] |
| | $-'i(\dot{\kappa})$ | $-'i:\ddot{t}$ [L + S] |
| INC. | $-ci\cdot\ddot{ci}(\dot{\kappa})$ | $-'i\cdot\ddot{ci}:\ddot{t}$ [L + S] |

Bases attached by the different iterative forms are given below.

First, there are bases composed of a root plus

1. $-ci\cdot\ddot{ci}(\dot{\kappa})$: $ku\cdot yici\cdot\ddot{t}$ 'It becomes nice e.n.t.', $ma\cdot ht\cdot i\ddot{ci}\cdot\ddot{t}$ 'A house was built (came into existence) over and over', $ha\cdot wi\ddot{ci}\cdot\ddot{t}$ 'He drew near e.n.t.';

2. $-\ddot{si}(\dot{\kappa})$: $hu\cdot htik\ddot{si}\cdot\ddot{t}$ 'He learned about it e.n.t.', $\dot{\kappa}\cdot i\cdot haq\ddot{si}\cdot\ddot{t}$ 'He became skinny e.n.t.', $ti\cdot pinci\cdot\ddot{t}$ 'It became alternately a table and something else (e.g. a cupboard)', $?a\cdot ya\ddot{ci}\cdot\ddot{t}$ 'There would be a bunch of them e.n.t.';

3. some other momentaneous allomorph: $wi\cdot nap\cdot u\cdot\ddot{t}$ 'He stayed e.n.t.', $ku\cdot w\cdot i\cdot\ddot{t}$ 'He stole e.n.t.'; or

4. both $-ci\cdot\ddot{ci}(\dot{\kappa})$ and $-\ddot{si}(\dot{\kappa})$: $qu\cdot ?as\ddot{ci}\cdot\ddot{t}$ 'He's in and out of his senses' and $qu\cdot ?asi\ddot{ci}\cdot\ddot{t}$ 'He's coming in and out of his senses'. In this case (unique in Kyuquot), $-ci\cdot\ddot{ci}(\dot{\kappa})-i:\ddot{t}$ [L + S] indicates an inceptive iterative and $-\ddot{si}(\dot{\kappa})-i:\ddot{t}$ [L + S] a (simple) iterative.

Secondly, there are bases composed of a root plus at least one suffix preceding

1. -i·či(č) : ?u·mahsici·č /u-mahsa/ (it-want) 'He wanted it e.n.t.', ?u·m?iqsici·č /um?i-?i·qsa/ (mother..kin) 'She became pregnant e.n.t.';
 2. -xi(č) : ?a·yipši·č /aya-?i:p/ (many-obtain..) 'He started to get a lot of them e.n.t.', ?u·kvitsi·č /u-(č)i·č/ (it-make..) 'He started to make it e.n.t.';
 3. some other momentaneous allomorph: ?u·šchinu·č /u·š-chi/ (some-married to..), 'He married some e.n.t.', hi·nw'ittinu·č /hin-w'ikta/ (there(MOM)-go out of vessel) 'He got in and out of the canoe', ?i·hiny'uri·č /i·ih- -(w)inb/ (red-at neck) 'His neck reddened e.n.t.'.
- In the cases where a suffix is replaced by a perfective (momentaneous) morpheme, the iterative is produced (as predicted) by affixation of -i·č [L + S] to the perfective form.

- (295) hi·skmipi·č He stays with his in-laws e.n.t.
/hisk-mab-čipi(č)-i·č [L + S]/ stay with in-law-move about-in house(MOM)-SPOR.

Besides CVC# IT and -š (~ -i·č [L + S]) SPOR, other affixes which can indicate iterativity include -(?a)kʷa- 'completely (destroyed)', -y'i·ha 'excessively', and -(kʷ)a:w 'back and forth' as in p'atqʷa:w 'He went back and forth with burdens' or ?a:k'ub'a:w 'He borrowed it e.n.t.'. In addition, the distributive morpheme, CV#, occasionally indicates an iterative aspect as in ſiſihak 'He was crying e.n.t.', kakimtqšən 'He ran e.n.t.', and ku·ku·šš 'He stole e.n.t.' based on the roots ſiſh-, kamatq-, and ku·w'iž- respectively. The presence of -š SPOR without CVC# reduplication as in ku·ku·šš is extremely rare. None of these affixes are productive, at least in the iterative sense.

There is, however, a multi-word construction which is productive and commonly indicates iterative aspect. This is 'word-word' reduplication, in which a full stem is repeated (indicated in the following examples by a superscript 2). Inflection typically occurs in the left-most stem. Stems involved in word-word reduplication can have implicit aspect or can be marked for any aspect except -i·či(č) INC.

- (296) *?u·štaq ?u·štaq*
/?uš-taq [L]/²

He kept working and working on it
 some-work on..

- (297) *cipy·i·h cipy·i·h*
/cip-y i·ha/²

She was talking all the time
 talk-excessively

- (298) *m'ixa m'ixa*
/m'ix-(y)a/²

It rained repeatedly
 rain-CONT

- (299) *sihak sihak*
/sih-akw/²

She cried and cried
 cry-DUR

Iterativity of a dominated predicate can be indicated by the stems *?u·ši*, *?u·x?u·ši*, and *?um'acq.*

- (300) *?u·ši si·ti:t* He lied every now and then
/?u·š-(y)i· CYC#it-[L]-(y)a/ some-time IT-disbelieve-GRAD-REP

- (301) *?um'acq?at ?u·šma·c'* They gossiped every now and then
/?um'acq-?a·t ?u·š-ma·c' [L]/ occasionally-P1 some-gossip about..

4.4.8. Habitual

Although the basic aspectual system of Nootka includes no habitual affix, habituality is distinguished morphologically from continuativity or iterativity. There is an adjectival derivational suffix, *-i:kw[R]* (~ -*'ikw* [L]) 'given to, prone to...'. A habitual behavior is often expressed attributively as in *nanaši·k* 'He was given to drinking, He used to drink regularly' and *x'i:w'ik* 'He's given to laughing, He's always laughing', based on the roots *naq-* 'drink' and *x'i:xw-* 'laugh'.

There is also a particle, *?int* 'habitually', which always follows the predicate. It can accompany predicates of any semantic class with any aspectual value except the inceptive.

- (302) *haw'isint ?int*
/haw'it-int .. /

He was always chief
 chief-PAST

- (303) *his-a·nti:s ?int*
/his-(y)a:-int-(y)i:-s .. /

I used to be chopping it
 I've chopped wood before
 chop-CONT-PAST-INDE-T

- (304) *tupkakis ?int auk̥qu* It's typically black when it's good
 /tupk-akʷ-?i's .. auk̥-'ak̥-qu:/ black-DUR-IND .. good-TEM-COND

- (305) *ta·ksik ?int cimq̥* He's generally always happy
 /tak-[L]-ši(ə) .. cim.-'aq̥:/ each-GRAD-MOM .. satisfactory-inside

The habituality expressed by *?int* must be a feature of the predicate as a complete stem. That is, *?int* cannot refer to the habituality of an event expressed as an embedded root or base. Consider the following.

- (306) *x'i·xšitmaq̥ ?int* She was always wanting to laugh
 /x'i-xʷ-ši(ə)-maq̥ .../ laugh-MOM-want to..

In such a sentence, *?int* cannot refer to the habituality of the embedded base. That is, the sentence cannot mean 'She wanted to be habitually laughing'.

4.4.9. Graduative

The graduative morpheme [L], whose presence in a stem is indicated by a long vowel in the root (and the CVC# reduplicative morpheme, if present), is found only in stems which are verbal. Such stems can be composed of a verbal root as in *tapus-* '(whale). spouts', a base plus a verbal derivational suffix as in *his-kʷa-?p* 'chop up (completely)' or a root plus one or more derivational aspectual affixes. In addition, GRAD occurs with verbal roots affixed by *-akʷ* DUR. If *-akʷ* is considered to be a nonderivational imperfective aspectual marker, then bases composed of a verbal root plus it remain verbal. The morphological function of *-akʷ* requires further research. More complex stems, e.g. ones with embedded bases, cannot be modified by [L]. Perhaps this is because one could not determine which base the graduative aspect modified in such a context.

The graduative aspect morpheme points to or magnifies the gradualness, progression, and continuity (i.e. the imperfectivity) of the phases of an event even if it occurs in a stem marked for perfective (momentaneous) aspect as in the following sentences.

- (307) *hug-ši(ə)-?ak̥* It slowly/ gradually spilled out
 /hug-[L]-ši(ə)-'ak̥/ spill-GRAD-MOM-TEM

- (308)
- mi·tx̌sa·?ñ*

/mitx̌w-[L]-ši(ñ)-'ak/

He took time to turn/ slowly turned
He started to make a turn
turn-GRAD-MOM-TEM

The aspectual value of gradualness is paramount when [L] GRAD accompanies bases which are implicitly verbal as in *ta·puš* 'The whale was gradually spouting' or *hi·sǩa·?p* 'He gradually chopped it all up'.

When a stem is aspectually inceptive (inception being indicated by *-e i·či(ñ)* INC or by *-ši(ñ)* MOM, the latter morpheme being chosen if the base is either a nonverbal nontemporal root or a root affixed by *-ak* DUR or *CVC# IT*), the presence of [L] GRAD indicates that the inception is extended, gradual, or progressive. Examples include *ñ'u·qi·čk* 'He's slowly getting broader'; *na·qi·čk* 'He's just starting to drink', *ñ'u·psik* 'It's gradually getting hot', *ñ'i·ssik* 'It's slowly getting whiter and whiter', *mi·xtšik* 'He's finally getting old', and the stems presented in (309) through (312).

- (309)
- ya·čť-ča·?inti·s*

/yac-[L]-e i·či(ñ)-'ak-int-(y)i:-s/ step-GRAD-INC-TEM-ITEM-PAST-INDF-I

I was thinking of/ taking my time
to start going out

- (310)
- ñ'i·sukšk*

/ñ'i s.-[L]-uk-ši(ñ)/

The object was slowly turning white
white-GRAD-DUR-MOM

- (311)
- ya·cukšk*

/yac-[L]-uk-ši(ñ)/

He's just starting to walk better
step-GRAD-DUR-MOM

- (312)
- wa·twa·?šk*

/CVC#wat-[L]-ši(ñ)/

He's starting to go home repeatedly
IT-go home-GRAD-MOM

When inception is indicated in a stem by *-ši(ñ)* affixed to a base composed of a root plus *-ši(ñ)*, the presence of [L] GRAD indicates that the inception is prospective or retrospective.

- (313)
- qa·hšinšk*

/qah-[L]-ši(ñ)-ši(ñ)/

He's slowly dying (but near the end)
die-GRAD-MOM-MOM

- (314)
- ǩwi·sšimša?ñ*

/ǩwi s.-[L]-ši(ñ)-ši(ñ)-'ak/

It's just started/ starting to snow
snow-GRAD-MOM-MOM-TEM

Other examples include *ti·pinčiša?ñ* 'It's almost a completed table',

ci-qix̩ 'He's just learning to talk', *tupksix̩* 'It's just starting to get dark/black', and *si-hix̩sañ* 'He just started to cry'. The graduative morpheme does not occur with the sequence *-ci-či(ñ)-xi(ñ)* INC MOM, which has an incipient inceptive meaning 'just starting to'. The meaning of *-ci-či(ñ) [L]* INC GRAD is 'slowly starting to, thinking of'. Perhaps the ungrammaticality of *GRAD INC MOM is due to the presence of other morpheme sequences indicating the same aspectual value as it would indicate.

When a stem is identified as iterative by *CVC#...-š* IT SPOR, the presence of [L] GRAD indicates that the iterativity is more intense, frequent, or progressive as in *na'qna'qš* 'He's getting to be drinking more and more often', *mi-tami-txš* 'He circled every now and then (but he kept at it)', *?u'čq?u'čqš* 'It was getting foggier (by patchy ill-defined stages)', and *tupktu'pkš* 'It was gradually but sporadically becoming dark', based on the roots *naq-*, *mitx-*, *?učq-*, and *tupk-*. Perhaps the lack of occurrence of *CVC#...-š-xi(ñ)* IT SPOR MOM with [L] GRAD is due to the similarity of meaning such a form would share with one in which *CVC#...-š* occurs with [L], namely a progressive increase in frequency of occurrence of an event.

When a stem's iterativity is indicated by *CVC#...-(y)a* IT REP, the presence of [L] (which in this case is obligatory) indicates that the iterativity is regular, controlled, and progressive or habitual. The resulting morpheme sequence denotes the cyclical repetition of events and accompanies only verbal and adjectival roots, indicating perfective and inceptive repetitive aspect respectively. Examples include *?u'čq?u'čq* 'It's getting foggy again and again', *ni-hix̩i-h* 'It repeatedly reddens', *mi-tami-tx* 'He turned repeatedly', and (315) and (316) below.

(315) *t'a'bkt'a'bkan'inh*

A bunch are softening up here and there

/CVC#t'a'bkt-[L]-(y)a-m'inh/

IT-soft-GRAD-REP-PL

(316) *p'a'xp'a'yam'inh*

A bunch kept handing out gifts
(at a potlatch)

/CVC#p'a-(y)a-m'inh/

IT-potlatch-GRAD-REP-PL

The repetitive morpheme sequence commonly, but not necessarily,

implies that an event is under agentive control. In fact, when intransitive verbal roots (associated with patient subjects) are affixed by the repetitive morpheme sequence, the resulting stem is transitive and is associated with an agent subject. Contrast, for example, *k'iñšiñ* 'It broke' (not 'He broke it') with *k'iñk'iñ* 'He broke them all up, one after another, repeatedly'. Other examples of transitive repetitive stems include *ñ'a·ñ'a·ñ* 'He folded them up one after another', *qa·hqà·h* 'He killed them one by one', and *hu·qhu·q* 'He kept spilling it over and over again'; based on the intransitive roots *ñ'ac-*, *qah-*, and *huq-*.

The repetitive morpheme complex is peculiar in other ways. Some stems composed of a root plus the repetitive morpheme complex must be understood as lexical entries independent of the root. For example, contrast the following: *sit-* 'disbelieve', *Si·tSi·t-* 'lie (tell falsehoods)' or *ñ'ihw-* 'red', *ñ'i·ñ'i·h* 'lightning occurs' (the regular repetitive meaning, 'becoming red repeatedly', being part of the predictable aspectual variants of *ñ'ihw-*). There are also repetitive forms which have no root form, or have only a marginally-productive root form, e.g. *?i·š?i·š* 'chew gum', the root of which occurs only in *?iš-k'a·-?p* 'chewing gum up' and *?išci·p* 'gum'.

In addition, repetitive forms are commonly interpreted as having a plural participant. That is, the recurrence of an event can be due to the performance of a noniterated event by or on more than one participant, the subject (agent) if the root is inherently either transitive or intransitive, the object (patient) only if the root is inherently intransitive.

- (317) *hu·thu·t* He kept splashing and splashing
/CVC#hut-[L]-(y)a/ A bunch kept splashing

IT-splash-GRAD-REP

- (318) *ta·qta·q* He kept throwing the mushy thing
/CVC#taqw-[L]-(y)a/ over and over
 He threw more than one/once
 They each threw a mushy thing

IT-throw mushy thing-GRAD-REP

The nature of the repetitive morpheme *-(y)a* needs further discussion. It is at least diachronically related to *-(y)a*. CONT: Both these morphemes denote continuativity. Neither of them can be affixed by *-xi(x)*.

MOM or by any other aspect morpheme. The shortness of the *a* in -(y)a REP could result from its position in third or later syllables due to the presence of a reduplicative syllable as well as a root. However, there are roots which can be affixed by -(y)a REP but not by -(y)a CONT, e.g. *ʔʷač-* 'folded' and *ʔʷuh-* 'slap'. Hence, -(y)a REP is kept as a synchronically distinct morpheme here.

There are two affixes which are present in stems with lengthened root vowels and which indicates either slowness (-aya [L]) or immanence and prospectiveness (-i:ñ([L])). These are termed the 'slow gradutive' and 'slow prospective' morpheme complexes. The slow gradutive morpheme complex, which has an idiolectal variant, -i: [L], always follows a MOM or INC morpheme as in *miʷtšikay* 'He's slowly growing old', *waʷpitškay* 'It's gradually turning into a frog', or *ʔʷuʷqičkay* 'He's slowly developing broad (shoulders)'.

The prospective gradutive morpheme complex can affix to any verbal stem composed of a base plus momentaneous, inceptive, or repetitive morphemes.

- (319) *ʔʷi·h̥sinškʷit̥ñ* It's just on the verge of turning red.
/ʔʷih̥-[L]-ši(ñ)-ši(ñ)-i:ñ/ red-GRAD-MOM-MOM-prospective

- (320) *ci·qci·qškʷi·ñat̥* They're just on the verge of talking
/CVC#ciq-[L]-ši(ñ)-i:ñ-qškʷi/ They're slowly starting to talk
IT-speak-GRAD-MOM-prospective-PL

There are also two forms indicating that an event expressed as a predicate within their scope occurs slowly: *?u·sit* or *?u·t̥-*.

- (321) *?u·sit ha·šiššiči* It slowly got interesting
... hašitsa·ci·či(ñ)-aya[L]/ ... interesting-GRAD-INC-slow

- (322) *?u·šišiš tuxšik* He jumped slowly/easily
/?u·ši(ñ)-?i·ši(ñ)/ slowly-MOM-IND jump-MOM

Predicates dominated by *?u·sit* or *?u·t̥-* can be marked for momentaneous, continuative, inceptive; or repetitive aspect and can be optionally modified by -aya [L] 'slowly' or [L] GRAD.

4.4.10. Summary

Kyuquot has many morphologically-signalled aspectual distinctions. Some of these constitute a primary aspectual system. There are, in addition, other aspectual-denoting morphemes, both suffixes and stems (serving as predicates), which are considered secondary.

TABLE 18: KYUQUOT ASPECT MORPHEMES

| Aspect | Primary Affix | Secondary Affix | Predicate |
|---------------|----------------------------|---|---|
| perfective | -ši(χ) MOM | | |
| continuative | -(y)a· CONT | -y'i·ha 'excessive' | takšik 'always' |
| durative | -akʷ DUR | -yu· '...ed' -(?a)kʷa· 'destroyed' | sac'i- 'unceasing' hi·šit 'do all' hüssi·k 'complete' hawa- 'finish' |
| retrospective | | | nah 'now' |
| inceptive | -ci·či(χ) INC | | |
| prospective | -ši(χ) MOM | | |
| | | -?ith [R] 'about to...' -w'it'as 'about to...' -i:χ 'prospectively' | hi·kʷat 'almost' |
| iterative | CVC#..-š SPOR | -(kʷ)a:w 'back & forth' | ?u·ši 'sometimes' |
| | -i:t [L+S] SPOR | CV# distributive | ?um'acq 'occasionally' |
| repetitive | CVC#..[L]-(y)a IT GRAD REP | -y'i·ha 'excessive' | n'up'ing 'continually' WORD-WORD 'repeatedly' |
| habitual | | -i:kʷ [R] 'given to...' | ?int 'habitually' |
| graduative | [L] GRAD | -aya [L] 'slowly' | ?u·sit 'slowly' nu·t- 'slowly' |

Parallel to many languages, Nootka's primary aspectual categories are perfective and imperfective. The perfective portrays an event as a complete, nondifferentiated blob which is neither necessarily momentary

nor completed. So, for example, *k'wissiñ* 'It snowed' expresses an event which could have lasted for hours or days but is portrayed as atemporal. In a prospective form, e.g. *k'wissiñw'ic'* 'It's about to snow', the snowfall is still an atemporal complete event, but one which is not completed because it has not yet occurred. Perfective forms cannot generally be dominated by a predicate expressing temporal duration.

- (323) **n'upči·tškint hisšíñ*

/n'up-či-t-ši(ñ)-int his.-ši(ñ)/ one-..days-MOM-PAST hit-MOM

- (324) **c'a·nc'a·wint hisšíñ*

/CVC#c'aw-[L]-(y)a-int .../ IT-one-GRAD-REP-PAST

However, if a duration can be viewed as a phaseless whole, then perfective forms can accompany higher temporal predicates of duration as well.

- (325) *qi·ča·?ñ hisšíñ*

/qi-ši(ñ)-?ñ his.-ši(ñ)/ long time-MOM-TEM chop-MOM

- (326) *ku·?at ?uyint hisšíñ*

/.. ?u-(y)i-?int his.-ši(ñ)/ morning it-..time-PAST hit-MOM

Most temporal predicates (whether punctual or durational) can dominate imperfective predicates (whether continuative, inceptive, or iterative) and predicates telicized by the presence of -(?a)*k'wa-* 'completely'.

- (327) *n'upči·tškint hisk'wa·?p*

/n'up-či-t-ši(ñ)-int his.-(?a)k'wa-?p/

one-..days-MOM-PAST hit-completely-CAUS

- (328) *c'a·nc'a·w hi·shi's*

/CVC#c'aw-[L]-(y)a CVC#his.-[L]-(y)a/ He was chopping continually, one after another

IT-one-GRAD-REP IT-hit-GRAD-REP

Predicates unspecified for tense in Kyuquot are implicitly non-future. Because present tense is associated with ongoing events, the perfective aspect is typically associated with the past tense in contexts not specified for tense.

The imperfective aspect portrays an event as a set of phases,

either spaced (iterative) or continuous (habitual, continuative, or durative), which are directional, in that there is usually a beginning, a continuation, and a termination to the event. Events specified as imperfective but not specified for tense are more commonly interpreted as being in the present (rather than the past) tense.

(329) *kʷisə*

1. It's snowing
2. It was snowing

(330) *kʷisi-čə*

1. It's starting to snow
2. It has begun to snow now
3. It began to snow

(331) *kʷiskʷiss*

1. It's (been) snowing on and off
2. It was snowing on and off

Presence of a tense morpheme can block a tense implied by aspect. A perfective form affixed by *-?a:qñ* FUT is in future tense. An imperfective form affixed by *-int* PAST is in past tense.

(332) *mitašiñ?a·qñ*

/mitaʷ-ši(ñ)-?a:qñ/

He will turn

turn-MOM-FUT

(333) *kʷisi-či-int*

/kʷis-či-či(ñ)-int/

It started/ was starting to snow
snow-INC-PAST

The Kyuquot aspect system is idiosyncratic. No aspectual morpheme is fully productive. However, perfectivity (indicated by a MOM or INC suffix) and iterativity (indicated by a SPOR, IT SPOR, or IT GRAD REP affix or affix sequence) are expressed for virtually all bases. All primary aspect morphemes except *-ši(ñ)* MOM, *-i:t* [L+S] SPOR, and [L] GRAD attach only to roots, and [L] GRAD attaches only to roots or bases containing not more than one governing suffix. The combinations of primary aspect morphemes are for the most part uncommon or even rare. The following chart roughly indicates the percentage of Kyuquot roots which are affixed by a given primary aspectual morpheme or morpheme sequence. The abbreviations for percentages are '-' 0%, 'R' 1%-14%, 'U' 15%-35%, 'C' 36%-75%, and 'VC' 75%. Basic aspectual morphemes or morpheme sequences are arrayed vertically, with cooccurring basic aspectual morphemes arrayed

horizontally.

TABLE 19: FREQUENCY OF OCCURRENCE OF PRIMARY ASPECT MORPHEMES

| Aspect | | Cooccurring with: | | | |
|-------------------------|---------|-------------------|-----|--------|-----------|
| | | Ø | [L] | -ši(x) | [L]-ši(x) |
| -ši(x) | MOM | VC | C | U | C |
| CVCH#..-š (~-i:ž [L+S]) | IT SPOR | VC | R | U | - |
| -i-či(x) | INC | C | R | R | - |
| CVCH#..-(y)a | IT REP | NA | VC | NA | U |
| -akʷ | DUR | U | R | R | R |
| -(y)a | CONT | C | - | - | - |

The lack of productivity or freedom of distribution of aspect morphemes raises the problem of grammaticality. It is not clear whether the instances of unverified combinations of root or base plus aspect morphemes are ungrammatical or semantically anomalous. Consider the set of A₁ adjectival roots. There is no principled way to predict, for example, which roots can be affixed by the repetitive morpheme sequence and which cannot. To a large extent, however, the unacceptability of forms such as *ši-či-č ('make rotten repeatedly') and *ma-hma-h ('wear out repeatedly') is due to judgments of semantic incongruity or meaningfulness. Further reflections on events and their phase characteristics may yield judgments of grammaticality for certain stems which have so far been judged as ungrammatical by consultants.

An aspect synopsis for the root *sus-* 'swim' is presented below.

TABLE 20: ASPECT SYNOPSIS OF PRIMARY ASPECT MORPHEMES

| Aspect | Form | Gloss |
|--------------|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| MOM | <i>susšiñ</i> | He went swimming. He swam |
| MOM MOM | <i>susšiššñ</i> | He was just going to swim |
| GRAD MOM | <i>su-sšiñ</i> | He was just going to start swimming |
| | | He was thinking about going swimming |
| GRAD MOM MOM | <i>su-sšiššñ</i> | He was on the verge of going swimming |
| CONT | <i>susa</i> | He's swimming |
| DUR | | |
| INC | <i>susi-čñ</i> | He's learning to/ has started to swim |

| | | |
|-------------|------------|---|
| INC MOM | | |
| GRAD INC | | |
| IT | sussuss | 'He swims' every now and then |
| IT MOM | sussusss̥ | He started to go swimming every now and then |
| GRAD IT | su·ssus̥s | He's swimming more and more |
| IT GRAD REP | su·ssu·s | He goes swimming again and again, repeatedly |
| IT GRAD MOM | su·ssu·s̥s | He started to go swimming regularly, repeatedly |

4.5. Roots and Stem Forms

The discussion of Kyuquot morphology has concentrated on two systems - inflectional and aspectual. The remaining part of this chapter concerns stem formation and the morphological properties of the elements which constitute stems. Affixes which are neither inflectional nor primarily aspectual are termed lexical affixes. Kyuquot is poly-synthetic. There are only about 1500 roots and, at the same time, over 400 lexical affixes, virtually all suffixes except for plural infixes and reduplicative morphemes. Roots, lexical and aspectual affixes combine to form complex stems.

All morphemes are subcategorized by semantic class. The relative proportions of roots belonging to each class are: verbal (47%), nominal (33%), adjectival (17%), and other, i.e. quantifier, quantity, locative, and temporal combined (3%).

Only a small proportion (15%) of roots can be accompanied by either inflectional or lexical affixes. These are termed stem-form roots. Stem-form roots are typically bisyllabic, although there are monosyllabic ones in all semantic classes: *qʷis* 'do what' (V), *čims* 'brown bear' (N), *tič* 'alive' (A), *wik* 'no, not' (Qr), *mu(y)* 'four' (Qy), *hič* 'there' (L), and *qi* 'for a long time' (T). At least some bisyllabic stem-form roots may historically derive from morpheme sequences which became bound. This hypothesis requires more investigation of proto-Nootkan.

When a root cannot serve as both a stem (i.e. a form used either as a complete word or as a base for inflectional suffixes) and as a base within multimorphemic stems, it will be associated with one of

the following types of root-stem form patterns.

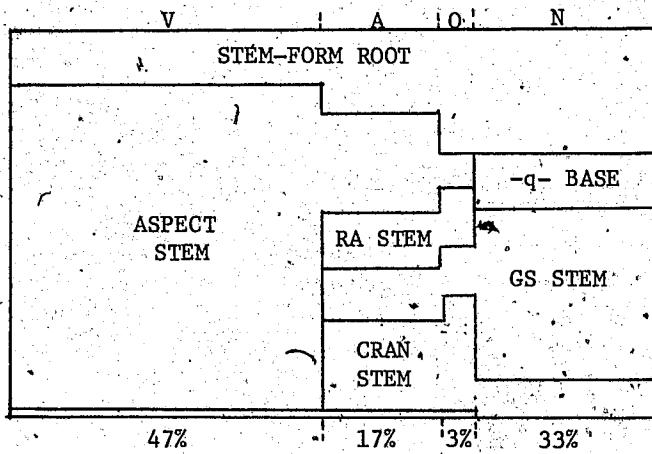
TABLE 21: BASE AND STEM FORMS

| | Base Form | Stem Form | Stem Form Name |
|----|------------|------------------------|----------------|
| 1. | root | root-aspectual affix | aspect stem |
| 2. | root | root-governing suffix | GS stem |
| 3. | root | root-restrictive affix | RA stem |
| 4. | root | root-absolutive affix | |
| 5. | root | root-cranberry affix | cranberry stem |
| 6. | root | cranberry stem | |
| 7. | root-q- | root | -q-base stem |
| 8. | root-GS-q- | root-governing suffix | |

The following table illustrates the distribution of form types (including stem-form roots) for each of the three primary semantic classes, V, A, and N, and the composite class O (i.e. Qy, Qr, L, and T).

- The four classes are represented as vertical columns (bounded at the top and bottom by broken lines). The width of a column indicates the proportion of roots in the class to the total number of roots in Nootka (indicated below the column as a percentage). For each root set, V, A, N, and O, the percentage of roots associated with a certain root-stem form pattern (e.g. aspect stem, GS stem, etc.) is represented as a proportion of the vertical column indicating that root set.

FIGURE 5: ROOT CLASSES AND ROOT-STEM PATTERNS



Half of all roots have a stem-form composed of the root plus an aspectual affix; either *-ak'* DUR or *-(y)a'* CONT if the root is A, Qy, Qr, or T and *-ši(ñ)* MOM if the root is V (and inherently nondurative).

Examples of roots with aspectual stem-forms are: *m'at-* *m'ata* 'cold', *tupk-* *tupkak* 'black', *hiš-* *hišuk* 'all', *c'awa-* *c'awa·k* 'one', *nay'i-* *nay'i·k* 'at once', and *hapt-* *haptšiñ* 'hide':

Another quarter of all roots have a stem-form composed of the root plus a nonaspectual suffix, most commonly a GS such as *-yu* '...ed' for adjectival roots, e.g. *has-* *hasyu* 'loud, bright' (**hasak*), or *-mit* '...plant' for nominal roots, e.g. *qaq-* *qaqmit* 'alder'. Some roots have stem-forms composed of roots plus restrictive affixes (RA's). RA's are noninflectional and nonderivational, and do not influence the semantic class of the stem in which they occur. RA's can be attached to roots which have a stem-form which does not include that restrictive affix. For example, the root *t'iqw-* 'sit' can be accompanied by a RA such as *-a's* 'on surface' (i.e. *t'iqw'a's* 'sitting on it'), but the stem-form of *t'iqw-* is *t'iqšiñ*, which is an aspectual stem-form. This indicates that the RA does not necessarily have a stem-forming function, but can contribute an appositive component of meaning to a base. Some RA's (locative ones at least) can additionally have a stem-forming function for certain adjectival and locative roots. Half the locative roots, including *?ap-* 'right at' and *ñ'a-* 'outside', must be affixed by some locative RA to serve as stems. A given root is not, however, associated with a particular affix. Hence, there is no unique stem-form for such roots, although one stem-form seems closest in meaning to each root, e.g. *?app'i* 'right at the center, middle' for *?ap-* 'right at'. In contrast, each adjectival root whose stem-form is a RA is associated with a specific stem-forming RA; e.g. *hikw-* *hikw'at* 'almost' ('almost-at flat surface') and *pušat-* *puš'at* 'tired' ('tired-down').

Some stem-forms are composed of a root plus an affix which serves only to produce stem-forms. Such an affix, which bears no meaning and does not predetermine the semantic class of a stem, is termed a cranberry affix if it accompanies only one root and an absolutive one if it occurs in more than one stem. Cranberry affixes, which are uncommon, include *-as* in *sah-as* 'gather cedar bark', *-i·q* in *hut-i·q* 'jealous', *-it* in

c'uw-it (from /*c'ux-it/*) 'coho', and *-u·k* in *tuk-u·k* 'sea lion'.

In addition, a small number of nominal roots have a cranberry stem-form; i.e. a stem-form which cannot be derived from the root by affixation. All the roots associated with cranberry stem-forms are listed below: *čapxw-* *čakup* 'man', *buč-* *bu·cma* 'woman', *muk-* *mawič* 'deer', *qu?ac-* *qu·as*. 'adult, person', *qawaš-* *qawi·* 'salmonberry', *sibč-* *sini·x* 'dog', *m'as-* *m'a·ya(-q-)* 'salmonberry shoots'.

Absolutive affixes, which can attach to roots of different semantic classes, include *-i*, *-a*, or *-u*, e.g. *?inx-i* 'ready' or *?ak-a* 'two'; first or second syllable vowel lengthening, e.g. *quč-* *qu·č*. 'slave', or a combination of suffix and vowel lengthening. The use of absolute stems appears to be much less common in Kyuquot than in Port Alberni Nootka. Most roots with lengthened vowels in their stem-forms in Port Alberni Nootka have cognates in Kyuquot in which both the root and stem-form have a long vowel.

The choice of stem-form associated with a root is unpredictable on the basis of phonological or morphological principles. However, root or combining forms can be predicted from stem forms, except in two cases:

1. nominal cranberry stems, which are not composed of an affix plus the root, as in *sini·x*; *sibč-* 'dog'; and
2. vowel- or nasal-final nominal stems, which have a peculiar combining-form when followed by certain lexical suffixes. This type of base consists of the stem (or a phonological variant of the stem) plus *-q-*. This *-q-* is reminiscent of Malkiel's (1978:144) 'interfix', a segment inserted between root and affix.

Stems associated with combining forms account for about a third of all nominal stems which are either monomorphemic or composed of a root plus a nasal- or vowel-final GS (e.g. *-in*, *-na*, *-im*, *-um*, *-min*).

Although the occurrence of *-q-* is morphophonologically predictable, the phonological shape of a stem or root preceding *-q-* is not fully predictable. This irregularity may have arisen due to the freezing of particular combining forms in shapes deriving from certain ordered phonological rules (nasal to homorganic stop, vowel change, and consonant deletion) which operate only in the pre-*q-* environment. The following table sets out the combining forms attested for certain stem types.

TABLE 22: STEM ALTERNATIONS PRECEDING -q-

| Stem Form | No Change | Nasal to Stop > | Vowel Change > | Consonant Deletion |
|-----------------------|-------------|-----------------|----------------|---|
| { ..C-in (..-min)} | ..C-in-q- | ..C-it-q- | ..C-at-q- | - |
| ..C-im | ..C-im-q- | ..C-ip-q- | - | - |
| ..C-im-c | ..C-im-c-q- | - | - | / ..C- { ^a _i _u } -q- |

The majority of nasal-final Kyuquot stems are unchanged preceding -q- and are hence represented by the second column in Table 22. Examples include: ?awat-in-q- 'awat-in 'eagle', hum-im-q- hum-im- 'cockle', and c'ast-im-c-q- c'ast-im-c- 'mink'. The irregular combining forms given in Table 23 are attested for a small proportion of nasal-final stems. Examples of each of the irregular stem-forms are: qu?is-it-q- qu?is-in- 'raven', ma·ckw-at-q- ma·ckw-in 'housefly', ci·k-ip-q- ci·k-im-in 'iron', k'u·n-ip-q- k'u·n-im 'elk', hasa·-q- hasa·-m-c 'crab', and c'a·ya-q- c'a·y-im-c 'certain seaweed'.

Most vowel-final nominal stems are unchanged preceding -q-, e.g. ?a·ma(-q-) 'loon', na·ni(-q-) 'grizzly bear', and c'imt'u·(-q-) 'squirrel'. However, if the stem ends in a short i, this vowel is often replaced by a when preceding -q-, as in hu·n'a-q- hu·n'i 'whale' or maht'a-q- maht'i 'house'.

The morphology of base-affix linking is complex and idiosyncratic. Some affixes attach only to roots or -q-forms, e.g. -sa·ca '...container'. Some affixes attach only to stem-forms, e.g. -maqan 'want to (be)...'. However, the majority of affixes are idiosyncratic. A certain suffix will attach to the root forms of some roots, the stem forms of others, and to either the root or stem forms of still others. The choice of base form is predictable by neither phonology nor the semantic class of the base or affix. Moreover, the distribution of roots occurring in root form, stem form, or either root or stem form (i.e., as free variants) differs from affix to affix.

Consider the forms employed for the four bases following: (1) čapaxw- čakup 'man', (2) žuč- žu·ema 'woman', (3) muk- mawič 'deer', and (4) quč- quč 'slave'. Each base has a root and a stem form. In the following table, base form possibilities are represented as columns.

The location of the numbers representing the above bases indicates the base form a given base has when associated with a particular suffix.

TABLE 23: DISTRIBUTION OF SELECTED BASE FORMS

| Suffix | Gloss | Base as Root Root | Base as Root or Stem or Stem | Unacceptable as Base Stem |
|--------------------|--------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| - <i>(c)snaʃt̪</i> | handle.. | 1,2,3 | | *4 |
| - <i>i:h</i> | try to get.. | 2 | 3 | *1,*4 |
| - <i>kway i:h</i> | chase.. | 1,2 | | 3,4 |
| - <i>c'a:s</i> | bet.. | 1,2,3 | | 4 |
| - <i>(č)i:t̪</i> | make.. | 4 | 1,2,3 | |
| - <i>n'a:h</i> | wait for.. | 1 | 2,3 | 4 |
| - <i>maʃaqx</i> | want to.. | | | 1,2,3,4 |

The unpredictable variation illustrated for the four bases above is representative of that for the approximately 315 nominal roots with variable base forms and stems with -q- combining forms, regardless of whether the stem form includes a governing, restrictive, absolute, or cranberry affix or is a cranberry form itself. This high level of variability suggests that many complex words are not generated by morphological rules but are part of the speaker's lexicon and are learned as words, and that this aspect of morphology exhibits characteristics of a moribund state, in which processes of both generalization and idiosyncratization are accelerated. In Kyuquot, generalization is illustrated by -q- formation and idiosyncratization by base form choice.

It is not clear whether economy favors stem or root as the basic dictionary form. In this work, the stem form is used to refer to the word, e.g. *tupkak* 'black', *čikup* 'man', and *sa:sin* 'hummingbird'. When referring to a base used for further noninflectional suffixation, the -q- combining form is used (if there is one), e.g. *sa:sin-q-*, the base in *sa:sin-q-nak* 'have a hummingbird'. Otherwise, the root form is used, e.g. *čapxʷ-*, the base in *čapxʷ-na:k* 'have a man', or *tupk-*, the base in *tupk-na:k* 'have a black (one)'.

4.6. Noninflectional Affixes - Introduction

A grammar is assumed to include a set of morphemes and a dictionary containing entries capable of serving as stems. Such entries should

be listed in both their root form or combining form and their stem form, e.g. čapxʷ- čakup 'man', sa·sit-q- sa·sin 'hummingbird', etc. Morphemes serving as stems are entered once, e.g. n'a·s 'day, light', sack 'sharp', and huhtik 'know'. Both morphemes and dictionary entries serve as raw material with which word formation rules form new stems. Word formation rules are, however, not productive in the sense that syntactic rules are. A high proportion of 'potential' words generated by word formation rules are deemed ungrammatical (i.e. 'not Kyuquot') by native speakers.

For example, a suffix may attach to one root but not to another of the same semantic class.

(334) *trituc'i·h
/truc'-i:h [R]/ He tried to get a woman.
woman-try to get..

(335) *čačapw'i·h
/čapxʷ-i:h [R]/ man-try to get..

Secondly, a suffix may attach to the root forms of some dictionary entries and to the stem forms of others. Hence, in the dictionary, morphemes must have specified the morpheme types (e.g. semantic classes, morphophonemic shapes, etc.) to which they are productively suffixed and some indication of their degree of productivity. Stems resulting from the composition of morphemes by word formation rules are typically interpretable but grammatically unacceptable. The content of such forms must be expressed differently, e.g. by using a syntactically expanded form. For example, the ungrammatical (335) has a grammatical sentential paraphrase.

(336) ?u?u?i·h čakup
/?u-·i:h [R] .../ He tried to get a man
it-try to get.. man

The complexity of Kyuquot words and the extent to which 'potential' words are ungrammatical requires that word formation rules be more decompositional than compositional, at least at present. That is, these rules are more an account of how lexical entries presently in the dictionary could have been produced, rather than how new stems could be generated. It is nonetheless true that native speakers can produce

morpheme sequences which they have never encountered before. It is not at all clear on what basis they assign grammaticality to innovations.. The types of word formation rules discussed here are those which pertain to the mechanics of morpheme assembly. Other features of word formation, such as meaning extension and morpheme coining, are not discussed.

Noninflectional affixes comprise the majority of Kyuquot affixes. In linguistic theory, noninflectional affixes have been termed derivational and distinguished from inflectional affixes by four criteria:

1. the peripheral position of inflectional affixes;
2. sandhi rules operating at derivational but not inflectional affix boundaries;
3. the relatively nonidiosyncratic contribution to word meaning and privileges of occurrence of inflectional affixes; and
4. the power of derivational affixes to influence the grammatical or semantic class of a stem.

By these characteristics, Kyuquot inflectional suffixes are a distinct set. They precede only other inflectional suffixes and are hence found right-most in a word. Inflection associated with a NP adjunct can occur either in the NP or the associated predicate. The morphophonemic process of glottalization of preceding consonants is less powerful when triggered by an inflectional affix in that fricatives are not affected. Nor do any inflectional suffixes influence the stem shape by reduplicating the initial portion of the word or lengthening the root and/or reduplicative vowel, as do noninflectional suffixes. In addition, although the semantic contribution of inflectional morphemes is not always regular, their collocational properties are. Virtually any stem can be affixed by any inflectional morpheme.

Noninflectional affixes in Kyuquot have reverse properties. They can precede other noninflectional affixes.

- (337) *tukna·kmaq̩* He wants to have a black one
/tuk-nə·kʷ-maqaq̩/ black-having..-want to..

They are more closely bound to a constituent and have more morphophonemic influence on the base. The glottalizing noninflectional suffixes trigger both stop to ejective and fricative to homorganic ejective glide changes.

Some noninflectional suffixes are associated with obligatory root reduplication, root and/or reduplicative vowel lengthening, or both processes. Noninflectional affixes are idiosyncratic with respect to collocational possibilities and semantic interpretation. Some iteratively occur in one stem, usually as a result of the inclusion of the first instance of the repeated morpheme within a lexical entry, as in the following case.

- (338) *t'at'apw'inw'in* a spider (or bug) in the middle
/CV#t'ap-w'in-w'in/ distrib-girded about-in-middle (2)

There is one traditional characteristic of derivational affixes which Kyuquot noninflectional affixes do not all possess. This is the potential to determine the semantic class of a resulting stem. Non-inflectional affixes are therefore divided into two types: governing suffixes (GS's), which when attached to a base yield a new base whose semantic class equals that of the GS; and restrictive affixes (RA's), which do not determine semantic class. For the purpose of class-type identification, GS's include dots as part of their glosses, e.g. 'eat...'. The dots represent the content of the base to which the GS is attached.

In order to illustrate the different results obtained by adding a GS or a RA to a base, three roots, *čapxw-* 'man' (N), *žuč-* 'woman' (N), and *k'ič-* 'break' (V), are each accompanied by a GS and then by a RA. The semantic class of each morpheme is indicated below the underlying form, and the semantic class equivalent to that of the resulting stem is underlined.

- (339) *čapxča·s*
/čapxw-(k)ča·s/
 N L
čapxw-a·s
/čapxw-a·s/
 N L

He's beside the man
 man-beside..

There's a man on it
 man-on surface

- (340) *žuči·z*
/žuč-(č)i·z/
 N V

He drew a woman
 woman-make..

- žučsuht*
/žuč-(c)suht/
 N V

There's a woman, coming out of the
 woman-come out of woods woods

- (341) *k'ik̥yu* It's broken
/k'ik̥-yu/
 V A
k'ik̥ ik̥w'is It broke accidentally
/k'ik̥-ik̥w'is [R]/
 V A

The semantic class of any sequence of morphemes is the same as that of its right-most GS (including aspectual GS's) or of its root, if there are no GS's. Restrictive affixes (including nonderivational aspectual ones) have an appositive rather than a class-assigning function.

There are over 400 noninflectional (lexical) affixes, which are subcategorized as follows.

TABLE 24. NUMBERS OF AFFIXES

| | L | V | A | N | Qy | T | Aspect | ABS | TOTAL |
|-------------|-----|----|----|----|----|---|--------|-----|-------|
| Governing | 10 | 77 | 75 | 50 | 5 | 5 | 5 | - | 227 |
| Restrictive | 117 | 22 | 13 | - | 6 | 6 | 3 | 12 | 179 |

Of the above 406 affixes, two consist only of infixes, two consist only of reduplicating morphemes, and one only of vowel lengthening. The rest include a suffix. Many suffixes, however, trigger obligatory root syllable reduplication and/or lengthening of the root and/or reduplicative vowel. Such parasyntactic morphophonological processes are not characteristic of any phonological or lexical subclass of affixes, although the absence of reduplication-triggering nominal affixes may be significant.

The behavior of the morpho-semantic classes of lexical affixes is discussed in the following section on word formation. A full list of lexical affixes, subcategorized by morphological class (i.e. governing or restrictive), semantic class of affix, and type of base to which the morpheme can attach, is provided in an appendix (p.356).

4.7. Governing Suffixes and Derivation

4.7.1. Predicative Governing Suffixes

4.7.1.1. Choice of Base

Governing suffixes are of two main types, predicative and classi-

fier. The former are primarily verbal or adjectival while the latter are mostly nominal. The position and scope of predicative verbal GS's are treated first. The scope of a GS is the morphological material in the same word or sentence which the suffix governs in a predicate-object or predicate-complement relationship.

When a predicative GS governs a NP object, the suffix attaches to (incorporates) the NP constituent which would be left-most in the order Qr > Qy > A > N.

- (342) $\check{c}'apic$
 $/\check{c}'apic-(\check{c})i\cdot\beta/$ He made a canoe
canoe-make..
- (343) $\check{\alpha}uti\cdot\beta \check{c}'apic$ He made a nice canoe
- (344) $mu\cdot kwi\cdot\beta \check{\alpha}ut \check{c}'apic$ He made four nice canoes

Alternatively, the suffix can attach to a referential copy of the NP.

- (345) $?ukwi\cdot\beta (\check{\alpha}ut) \check{c}'apic$ He made a (nice) canoe
 $/?u-(\check{c})i\cdot\beta \dots \dots /$ it-make.. nice canoe

An incorporated nominal must be nonparticular as in (346). If, however, the incorporated entity is a referential copy or a modifier of a NP whose head is present as an independent stem, then the NP can be particular.

- (346) $\check{c}'apic$ He made a (*the) canoe
- (347) $?ukwi\cdot\beta \check{c}'apici$ He made the canoe
 $/?u-(\check{c})i\cdot\beta \check{c}'apic-i\cdot\beta/$ it-make.. canoe-DEF

The incorporated element can also be an implicit nominal, i.e. a modifier representing a NP which has no surface nominal head as in (348) and (349), or it can be a derived nominal as in (350) and (351).

- (348) $\check{\alpha}uti\cdot\beta$ He made a nice one
- (349) $mu\cdot kwi\cdot\beta \check{\alpha}ut$ He made four nice ones
- (350) $\check{\alpha}i\cdot hmaqsnaf\alpha\cdot\beta$ He was teasing a woodpecker
 $/\check{\alpha}i\cdot h\beta\cdot ma-q-(c)sna\beta\alpha:\beta/$ red-NOM-COMB-tease..
- (351) $?ak'aqsi\cdot\beta$ He made two of them (watches)
 $/?ak-c'aq-si:k\beta/$ two..vessel-finish..

However, the incorporated element cannot recur as an independent stem, as in **č'apict č'apic*, **nuti·č'nut č'apic*, or **mu·kʷi·č' mu č'apic*. Nor can a nominal serve as base, when its modifiers are left as independent stems, as in **č'apict nut*, **č'apict na?u*, or **č'apict mu*. Nor can a modifier serve as a base when a dominant modifier (i.e. one more leftward in the constituent hierarchy given on the previous page) or qualifier is left as an independent stem. If, however, the qualifier is one which must follow the predicate (e.g. *tani* 'really'), then it does not serve as a base for a GS, even if that qualifier modifies the NP governed by the suffix. Compare the following two sentences.

- (352) *?i·hi·č'nut č'apic* He made a really nice canoe
 (353) *nuti·č'tani č'apic* He made a really nice canoe

In passive versions of predicates composed of base plus GS, the right-most GS is passivized. If it governs a NP, then that NP serves as the subject of the predicative stem. Contrast the status of the NP's in the following pairs of sentences.

- (354) *si·chinint* He did it for me
/si-chin[L]-int/
si·chin'atinti·s It was done for me
/si-chin[L]-'at-int-(y)i:-s/
 (355) *sičsnaičt* He teased the dog
/sič-(c)snaɪt/
sičsnaičtat The dog was teased
/sič-(c)snaɪt-'at/ dog-tease..-PASS

If other GS's intervene, the grammatical status of an embedded NP is not changed by passivization.

GS's can also govern a sentential complement, which can be verbal, nominal, locative, etc., depending on the particular suffix.

- (356) *cassidmačqk* He wants to chase it
/cas-č'i(h)-mačqk/
 (357) *čimqmačqk* He wants to be happy
/čim-čaqk-mačqk/

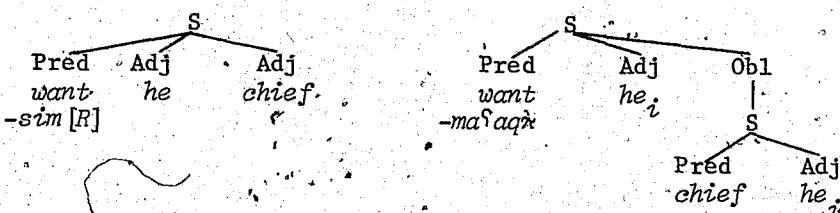
- (358) *haw itma^fqñ.* He wants to be chief
/haw it-maqñ/ chief-want to..

The bases in (357) and (358) cannot be interpreted as objects: *'He wants a happy one' or *'He wants a chief'. Contrast sentence (358) with the following one.

- (359) *hahaw itsim* He wants a chief
/haw it-sim [R]/ chief-want..

In (358), the base functions as a predicative complement; in (359), the base functions as object of the GS. These two one-word sentences are diagrammed below as if they were multi-word structures.

FIGURE 6: OBJECT AND COMPLEMENT BASES OF GS'S



The incorporation of complements is parallel to that of NP objects. The GS is attached to a referential copy of the complement, the qualifier of the predicate (if there is one), or the highest predicate.

- (360) *?u·t'i·?it m'ačik fini·ñ* He pretended to bite the dog
/?u-t'i: ?ita [L] m'a-ši(ñ) .../ it-pretend to.. bite-MOM dog

- (361) *?i·ht'i·?it m'ačik fini·ñ* He pretended to really bite the dog
/?i:h-w-t'i: ?ita [L] .../ really-pretend to.. bite dog

- (362) *m'ačikt'i·?it fini·ñ* He pretended to bite the dog

The element serving as base cannot recur as an independent element.

Parallel to NP incorporation, it is the left-most and highest constituent of the clause governed by the suffix which serves as base to the suffix. Hence, a qualifier cannot be present if the predicate it modifies serves as base to a GS, as in **m'ačikt'i·?it ?i·h fini·ñ*. And a NP cannot serve as a base if it is governed by a predicate which is itself governed by the suffix attached to that base, as in

*i·ni·nt'i·?it m'ačiñ. That is, if a suffix governs a complement composed of a transitive predicate plus an object NP, it is the predicate and not the object which serves as base for the suffix.

An incorporated complement (like a NP) can itself be a complex morpheme sequence including a base and a GS.

- (363) čapox' a·hmafqñ
/čapox-n'a·h-maqñ/

He wanted to seek a man
man-seek..-want-to..

The base can also be a referential copy of an independent NP object:

- (364) ?un' a·hmafqñ čakupi

He wanted to seek the man

There are no attested grammatical stems in which are found more than two suffixes governing sentential complements. When more than two such GS's are in a governing relationship, they must be distributed over more than one stem.

- (365) ?umafqñ ?u·n'a·ht'i·?it

He wanted to pretend to look for it

/?u-maqñ ?u-n'a·h-t'i:·?ita [I]/ it-want to.. it-seek..-pretend.

- (366) *?u·n'a·ht'i·?itndqñ

The causative -ap is a predicative verbal suffix which governs a sentential complement with a predicate of any semantic class and any aspect. Some examples are given below.

- (367) ?uh?ap
/?u-h-ap-i·/

Let/ Make it be him!

it-ABS-CAUS-IMPV

- (368) ha?uk wapi s
/ha?uk-ap-(y)i:-s/

I made him eat. I fed him

eat(DUR)-CAUS-INDF-I

- (369) naqnaqšapintin
/OVC#naq-š-ap-int-in/

We made him drink now and again

IT-drink-SPOR-CAUS-PAST-IP

When the stem form (serving as base) ends in a momentaneous aspect allomorph, the sequence of momentaneous and causative morphemes is replaced by a syncretic momentaneous-causative (MOMCAUS) morpheme. This syncretic morpheme has several allomorphs, generally predictable from the momentaneous allomorph associated with the base to which the syncretic MOMCAUS morpheme attaches. For example, if the momentaneous allomorph of

a base is $\text{-}\check{s}i(\lambda)$, then its MOMCAUS allomorph is $\text{-sa}^{\cdot}p$, as in *qahsik* 'He died', *qahsa^p* 'He killed it', or *tup\check{sh}ik* 'It blackened', *tupksa^p* 'He made it black'. The following table gives the MOMCAUS allomorphs which are associated with the different momentaneous allomorphs.

TABLE 25: MOMENTANEOUS-CAUSATIVE SYNCRETIC ALLOMORPHS

| Momentaneous | MOMCAUS | Momentaneous | MOMCAUS |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| \emptyset | $\text{-}'ap$ | $\text{-nu}(\lambda)$ | -nup |
| $\text{-}\check{ci}(\lambda)$ | $\text{-}'ap, \text{-iy}'ip$ | $\text{-}\check{s}i(\lambda)$ | $\text{-sa}^{\cdot}p$ |
| $\text{-i}\cdot\check{ci}(\lambda)$ | $\text{-iy}'ip$ | $\text{-u}(\lambda)$ | $\text{-}'ap, \text{-iy}'ip,$ -up |
| $\text{-inu}(\lambda)$ | $\text{-in}'ip, \text{-i:np}$ | $\text{-}'uwi(\lambda)$ | $\text{-}'uwip, \text{-u:p}$ |
| $\text{-}\lambda$ | -p | | |

The disjunctive sets of allomorphs for $\text{-}\check{ci}(\lambda)$ and $\text{-u}\lambda$ are in complementary distribution for different bases. That is, each $\text{-}\check{ci}(\lambda)$ or $\text{-u}\lambda$ base can associate with only one of the possible MOMCAUS allomorphs. The disjunctive sets of allomorphs for $\text{-inu}(\lambda)$ and $\text{-}'uwi(\lambda)$ are in complementary distribution for different phonological contexts resulting from vowel deletions. The phonological contexts cannot be specified with certainty at this time but they appear to be the following. The disyllabic allomorphs occur when the vowel of the following syllable is deleted; otherwise, the monosyllabic allomorphs occur.

- (370) *?akisti^np*
/ak-ista-i:np/ He made two get into the canoe
two.. sea passengers-MOMCAUS

- (371) *?akistin'ip^t*
/ak-ista-in'ip-^at/ Two were made to get in the canoe
two.. sea passengers-MOMCAUS-PASS

Other examples of stems in which syncretic MOMCAUS allomorphs are found are given below.

- (372) *hitaqsp \check{c}apici*
/hita-qs-p \check{c}api-?i-/ He made him get in the canoe
there(MOM)-in vessel-MOMCAUS canoe-DEF

- (373) *wi^nap'u:p*
/wi^nap-^u:p/ He made, her stay
stay-MOMCAUS

In the above cases, verbal suffixes govern object NP's or comple-

ment clauses. Adjectival GS's, and a very few nominal and locative GS's, have this predicative role as well. NP-governing suffixes include $\cdot\text{na}\cdot k^w$ 'having...' (A), $-\text{mi}\cdot k^w$ 'getter of...' (N); and $-(k)\text{ča}\cdot s$ 'beside...' (L). Complement-governing suffixes include $-\text{i}\cdot k^w [R(L)]$ 'given to...' (A) and $-(q)\text{hs}\cdot i$ 'one who...' (N). There are no locative suffixes which govern a sentential complement.

The constraints on what can serve as a base which is a constituent in a governed NP or clause (S) are identical for all GS's, regardless of the semantic class of the suffix. Hence those for adjectival, nominal, or locative suffixes are equivalent to those for verbal ones. The following examples illustrate the ordering of governed constituents.

- (374) $\cdot\text{?u}\cdot\text{n}\cdot\text{a}\cdot k^w \cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{h}\cdot\text{č}\cdot\text{a}\cdot\text{p}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{c}$
 $/\text{?u}\cdot\text{n}\cdot\text{a}\cdot k^w \dots /$

He has a big canoe
 it-having... big canoe

- (375) $\cdot\text{?i}\cdot\text{h}\cdot\text{m}\cdot\text{a}\cdot k^w \cdot\text{č}\cdot\text{a}\cdot\text{p}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{c}$

He has a big canoe

- (376) $\cdot\text{č}\cdot\text{a}\cdot\text{p}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{c}\cdot\text{n}\cdot\text{a}\cdot k^w$

He has a canoe

In general, modifiers have precedence over heads as bases, and predicates have precedence over objects.

- (377) $\cdot\text{?a}\cdot\text{y}\cdot\text{a}\cdot\text{m}\cdot\text{i}\cdot k^w \cdot\text{h}\cdot\text{u}\cdot\text{n}\cdot\text{i}$
 $/\text{?a}\cdot\text{y}\cdot\text{a}\cdot\text{m}\cdot\text{i}\cdot k^w \dots /$

He's a getter of many whales
 many-getter of... whale

- (378) $\cdot\text{q}\cdot\text{ah}\cdot\text{s}\cdot\text{a}\cdot\text{p}\cdot\text{w}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{c}$ $\cdot\text{mu}\cdot\text{w}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{c}$
 $/\text{q}\cdot\text{ah}\cdot\text{s}\cdot\text{a}\cdot\text{p}\cdot\text{w}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{t}\cdot\text{as} \dots /$

He's about to kill a deer
 die-MOMCAUS-about to... deer

- (379) $\cdot\text{x}\cdot\text{aph}\cdot\text{y}\cdot\text{ik}^w \cdot\text{ma}\cdot\text{c}\cdot\text{k}\cdot\text{w}\cdot\text{in}$
 $/\text{x}\cdot\text{aph}\cdot\text{y}\cdot\text{ak}^w \cdot\text{ma}\cdot\text{c}\cdot\text{k}\cdot\text{w}\cdot\text{-in}/$

It's a fly swatter
 slap-thing for... housefly-NOM

The base can itself include a base plus one or more GS's, and can be explicitly or implicitly nominal.

- (380) $\cdot\text{?i}\cdot\text{n}\cdot\text{k}\cdot\text{w}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{ty}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{k}\cdot\text{m}\cdot\text{i}\cdot k^w$
 $/\text{?i}\cdot\text{n}\cdot\text{k}\cdot\text{w}\cdot\text{-}(\text{č})\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{t}\cdot\text{y}\cdot\text{ak}^w\cdot\text{mi}\cdot k^w/$

He's one who gets kindling
 fire-make...-thing for...-getter of...

- (381) $\cdot\text{?u}\cdot\text{š}\cdot\text{h}\cdot\text{y}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{m}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{sh}\cdot\text{u}\cdot\text{b}$
 $/\text{?u}\cdot\text{š}\cdot\text{h}\cdot\text{y}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{t}\cdot\text{y}\cdot\text{u}\cdot\text{-m}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{sh}\cdot\text{u}\cdot\text{b}/$

He has friends as visitors
 some-related to...-thing-having...

- (382) $\cdot\text{x}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{s}\cdot\text{-i}\cdot\text{č}\cdot\text{-f}\cdot\text{a}\cdot\text{s}\cdot\text{t}$
 $/\text{x}\cdot\text{i}\cdot\text{s}\cdot\text{-i}\cdot\text{č}\cdot\text{-f}\cdot\text{a}\cdot\text{s}\cdot\text{t}/$

It was done by the one dressed in
 white-dressed in...-done by.. white

In order to clarify how each GS builds on the previous base, the last three examples are presented below with embedded bases bracketed and assigned a semantic class.

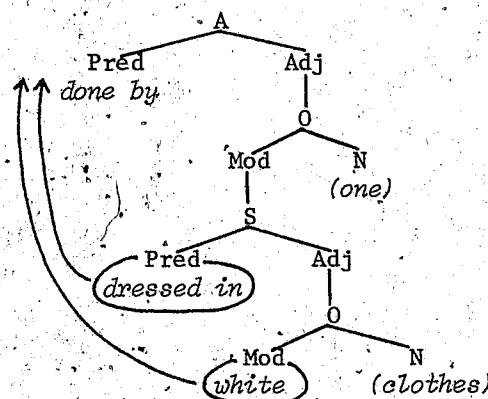
(383) [[[[?ink^w]_N i:t]y'ik]_N mi k]_N

(384) [[[[[?u:s]_{Qr}]N hy'i]_A mis]_N hut]_A

(385) [[[[[?is]_A]N ?ic]_A fəst]_A

When only a bracket intervenes between two semantic class markers, e.g. ..._A_N..., this indicates that the derived (i.e. outer) semantic class membership is the result of implicit derivation (cf. section 4.7.4).

The ordering of the GS's is from the most deeply-embedded or 'lowest' predicate or modifier on the left to the least embedded or 'highest' on the right. For example, sentence (382)/(385) can be represented as follows.



Suffixes do not all govern the same semantic types of sentential complement predicates. In the following list of the types of predicates possible, the bracketed letters indicate the semantic class of the suffix and of a stem composed of a base plus that suffix. Suffixes can govern predicates which are:

1. verbal: -c'a:q 'involved in...ing' (V), -i:k^w[R(L)] 'given to...' (A), -ma:f^{kw} 'one expert at...ing' (N), etc.;
2. adjectival: -sah 'because of being...' (A), etc.;
3. verbal or adjectival: -y'ak^w 'thing used for.../' (N), -sinh[L] 'try to'

- (be)..' (V), -yu 'resulting from being..-ed (A), etc.;
 4. verbal, adjectival, or nominal: -t'i:?ita[L] 'pretend to (be)..' (V);
 5. verbal, nominal, or locative: -w'it'as 'about to (be)..' (A); or
 6. all classes: -'ap 'cause to (be)..' CAUS (V).

Further examples of suffixes governing predicates are given below.

- (386) *hu-hupimaqñ i·k* He's always wanting to help people
/hupi-maqñ-i:k^w [RL]/ help-want to..-given to..
- (387) *pikčasb̥y ik* It's a movie camera
/pikčas-(č)i:b-yak^w/ picture-make..-thing for..
- (388) *ča·pxšahpt'i?it* She's impersonating a man
/capx^w-šahp-t'i:?ita[L]/ man-do like a..-pretend to..

Some suffixes govern either a NP object or a sentential complement of the following types:

1. verbal: -?in 'costume for..' (N), -y'it 'giving evidence of..' (A), -wa 'say.., say to (do)..' (V), etc.;
2. adjectival: -'in [R] 'make sound like/of..' (V), etc.;
3. verbal or adjectival: -mis 'business of (being)..' (N), -c'a·k 'seems to (be).., like/dressed in..' (A), -a·yuk 'cry due to (being).., in order to..' (V), etc.;
4. locative: -?i: 'get to be at..' (V);
5. verbal or locative: *tahin* 'take back, deprive of.., prevent from..' (V);
6. verbal, adjectival, or nominal; -simč [L] 'train to (be).., to obtain ..' (V), etc.

Examples of such suffixes include those found in the following sentences.

- (389) *xu·thw' q̥wanitis* He said to use a knife
/xut-hw'at[L]-wa-nit-?i:s/ knife-use..-say to..-PAST-IND
- (390) *hi·hin?asc' payk^w* He was crying due to his sore wrist
/hin.-?as[RL]-č'p[R]-a·yuk/ there(MOM)-at wrist-sore in..-cry due to..
- (391) *m'ikšiñw'ic'a·kiš* It appears that it's about to rain
/m'ikšiñw(k)-w'it'as-c'a·k-?i:s/ rain-MOM-about to..-seems to be..-IND

4.7.1.2. Scope

So far, the scope relations of bases and GS's have been straightforward. A GS typically attaches to a constituent of either the NP object or the sentential complement which the suffix governs. There are two features of scope which are more complex. First, there is the problem of conjoined constituents. A GS can govern a conjoined set of NP's or clauses. In such cases, both constituents are affixed by the GS or neither is.

- (392) *bo·ti·t̪ ?uhīš č'apic̪* He made a boat and a canoe
/bo·t̪-(č)i·t̪ .. č'apic̪-(č)i·t̪/ boat-make.. and canoe-make..
- ?ukʷi·t̪ bo·t̪ ?uhīš č'apic̪* He made a boat and a canoe
?ukʷi·t̪ bo·t̪ ?uhīš č'apic̪ He made a boat and a canoe
- (393) *naqšíkmañqñs ?uhīš wa?içmañqñs* I want to drink and sleep
/naq-ší-(n)-mañqñ-s .. wa?iç-mañqñ-s/
 drink-MOM-want to..-I and sleep-want to..-I
?umañqñs naqšík ?uhīš wa?iç I want to drink and sleep

It is, however, ungrammatical to attach the suffix to one of a set of conjoined constituents: **naqšíkmañqñs ?uhīš wa?iç*.

Quantity conjuncts are the only exception to this symmetry principle. They can be asymmetrically affixed by a GS.

- (394) *hayuč̪ ?uhīš ?akči·t̪, watyu* He was at home for twelve days
/hayu-č̪-t̪ .. ?ak-či·t̪ wat-yu/
 ten-for..days and two-for..days go home-..-ed
- (395) *hayuč̪ ?uhīš ?akči·t̪ watyu* He was at home for twelve days
- (396) *hayu ?uhīš ?akči·t̪ watyu* He was at home for twelve days

Hence, except for quantity conjuncts, the formation of words by the adding of GS's is structure-preserving. In the case of the quantity conjuncts, asymmetric affixation does result in nonstandard syntactic constituents. A transitive predicate can govern a surface NP consisting of *?uhīš NP*. Possibly, during word formation, both conjuncts are affixed by the GS, but then optional deletion of one GS can take place, prior to the operation of the morphophonological rules (including vowel

length assignment). Such a deletion rule may be a function of the unique status of quantity conjuncts as strictly ordered constituents of a lexical entry.

The second feature of scope to be discussed concerns the morphological relation of suffixes to one set of roots, the quantifiers, a set including *?ana-* 'only', *?iq-* 'same, still', *?u-* 'some', *hiš-* 'both, all', *kwiš-* 'different', *xa?u-* 'other, different', *wik* 'not, no, none', and perhaps a few others. When a quantifier is affixed by a predicative GS, it can serve as either a modifier of or an implicit NP object or a higher predicate dominating the predicate expressed as the GS. Examples of quantifier bases associated with GS's are given here.

- (397) *wikn'a·h*
/wik-n'a·h/

He sought no one. He did not search
no(t)-seek.

- (398) *hiš'i·c*
/hiš.-i·c/

They ate all of it.. They all ate
all-eat..

- (399) *xa?u·wixint*

He found another one. He found it again
It was another who found it
other-find. -PAST

- (400) *?a·načaša·t iini·x*
/?ana-(e)snaša·t [L] .. /

He teased only the dog.
Only he teased the dog
only-tease.. dog

The higher predicate can serve as a topical subject as in (398), (399), and (400), i.e. as *They all..*, *It was another..*, and *Only he..*

Quantifiers which can serve as topical subjects when affixed by a predicative GS include *?ana-*, *hiš-*, *kwiš-*, *xa?u-*, *mit-* 'same', and *takw-* 'each'. Alternatively, the quantifier can serve as a higher 'adverbial' predicate as in (397) and (399), i.e. as *He did not..*, and ..again:

Quantifiers which serve as higher adverbial predicates in this context include *?ana-*, *?iq-* 'still', *xa?u-* 'again', *ha-* 'completely', and *wik* (*wiš-*) 'not'. The glosses given are typical adverbial glosses from an English viewpoint. This does not imply that, for example, *xa?u-* 'other' and *xa?u-* 'again' are different morphemes.

Neither topical subject predicates nor adverbial predicates can otherwise serve as bases to GS's. Nor can nonquantifier modifiers

attached to GS's be interpreted as subject modifiers or higher predicates.

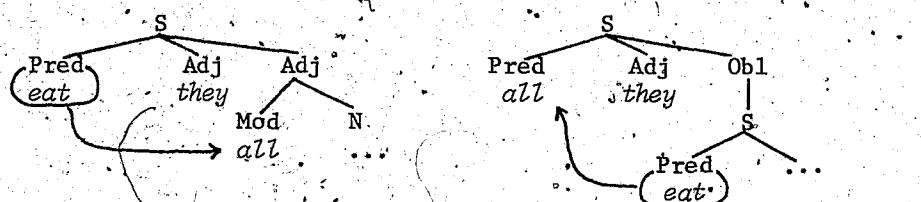
(401) *?a·ya·wi·int*

He found many. *Many of them found it

/?aya-a·wi(?) [E]·int/

many-find..-PAST

This unique characteristic of quantifiers in Nootka is reminiscent of the tendency of a quantifier in many languages to govern the constituents of the clause in which it occurs and to occur in a topicalizing position or construction. In Nootka, although a quantifier can serve as a modifier within a nonpredicative NP, it more commonly serves as either a predicative NP or as a base within the predicate interpreted as a higher predicate. Consider the two interpretations of (398), which can be diagrammed as follows.



The left-hand interpretation is typical. A GS, e.g. '-i·c 'eat..', can attach to the constituent it governs, the object modifier in this case. The right-hand interpretation is possible only for quantifier bases: the GS can attach to the constituent which governs it.

4.7.2. Transitivity and Control

Before beginning the discussion of nongoverning lexical affixes, a brief discussion of the causative and other transitivizing morphemes will be presented. The causative morpheme generally adds one participant, a controller, to the event expressed by the base to which '-ap CAUS is attached. If the base is intransitive, then '-ap, its allomorphs, or a syncretic MOMCAUS allomorph, transitivizes that base. In such cases, the noncausativized intransitive subject is equivalent to the causativized transitive object.

(402) *pinkšik*

He woke up

/pink-ši(?) /

awaken-MOM

pinksap

/pink-sa*p/

She woke him up

awaken-MOMCAUS

(403) huqšik

It spilled

huqsa*p

He spilled it. He made it spill

(404) x'ihhta

/x'i-h-ta/

They were paddling apart

paddle-apart

x'ihhta*p

He made them paddle away from each other

If the base is itself transitive and hence already associated with an agent, then the causative affix introduces an additional agent who controls the one associated with the embedded transitive base. The noncausativized transitive (agentive) subject is thus equivalent to the causativized object counterpart.

(405) cassik

He chased it

cassa*p

She made him chase it

(406) ?una·kšn x'atmis

/?u-na·k·w-ši(n) x'at-mis/

He got some dirt

it-having..-MOM dirt-NOM

?una·ksp x'atmis

They got him some dirt

A causativized stem can be secondarily causativized, but only when the left-most affix has a transitivizing function as in (407).

(407) huqsa*p'p

/huq-sa*p'-ap/

He made him tip it over

spill-MOMCAUS-CAUS

Hence, -'ap cannot attach to a stem composed of a transitive root or stem plus a causative morpheme as in *cassa*p'p or *huqsa*p'ap'p.

An intransitive stem can sometimes be transitivized by -'ap when the controller and (reflexive) patient are identical. Contrast hat'i's 'He bathed' and hat'i·sap ?u'ukʷh 'He Bathed himself'. This emphasizes the subject's control of the event, and can also imply that the subject is willing himself to oppose his own desire, as in wi·nap'p ?u'ukʷh 'He made himself stay'. The causative morpheme can also indicate control by permission rather than force.

- (408) *naqsa·pinti·s*
/naq-sa·p-int-(y)i:-s/ I let him drink
 drink-MOMCAUS-PAST-INDF-I
- (409) *siy'a·sap's k'iksa·p*
/siy'a·q-ap-i-s k'iksa-p/ Let.ME break it!
 I-CAUS-IMPV-I Break-MOMCAUS

There is a second idiosyncracy concerning *-'ap* and its function of expressing indirect control or permission. It can be used with stems of desire to indicate that the subject (the desirer) is not coreferential to the complement subject but might subsequently influence the event expressed as a complement, due to his desire for the event to occur and his intention to involve someone else as a participant in the event.

- (410) *'apa·k watšik* He was/willing to go home
'apa·k'p watšik He was willing to let him go home
/'apa·k-'ap wat-ši(n)/ willing-CAUS go home-MOM
- (411) *hupi·mañqxi·s* I wanted to help
hupi·mañqñ'pi·s I wanted him to help
/hupi-mañaqñ-'ap-(y)i:-s/ help-want to...-CAUS-INDF-I

This construction does not simply denote 'causing someone to want to...'. Nor does it arise due to the 'migration' of *-'ap* to a higher predicate. Consider the following sentence set.

- (412) *qañšiñmañqxi·s* I wanted to die
qañsa·pmañqxi·s I wanted to kill it/ make it die
/qañ-sa·p-mañaqñ-(y)i:-s/ die-MOMCAUS-want to...-INDF-I
- qañšiñmañqñ'pi·s* I wished he would die
qañsa·pmañqñ'pi·s I wished he would kill it
/qañ-sa·p-mañaqñ-'ap-(y)i:-s/ die-MOMCAUS-want to...-CAUS-INDF-I

A causative morpheme can precede a 'wanting' morpheme and behave normally, as in the word meaning *I wanted to kill it*. It is only following the 'wanting' morpheme that *-'ap* serves to render subjects of predicates of desire noncoreferential to their complement subjects. Other predicates whose subjects are coreferential to complement subjects, e.g. *n'amatsik*

'try', cannot be made to have noncoreferential complement subjects by presence of the causative.

Although many roots or stems are intransitive and are transitivized by *-'ap* CAUS, many others, whether verbal, adjectival, locative, etc., are inherently transitive, e.g. *cas-* 'chase', *kut* 'good to', and *kawa-* 'near to'. Their transitivity is evidenced by the presence of noncausativized passive versions, e.g. *kut'at* 'He was treated well' or *kawa?k't* 'It was being approached'. In addition, forms can undergo implicit transitivization of either idiosyncratic or repetitive types. Both types involve an intransitive predicate interpreted transitively without presence of a causative morpheme. The idiosyncratic type is uncommon, and may represent error or an incipient change in the language.

- (413) *k'ika-niš ḡ'apic* We're breaking up the canoe
/k'ik-(y)a-n-iš .. / break(intr)-CONT-IP-IND

In contrast, repetitive transitivization is common. In fact, virtually all repetitive intransitive stems can be interpreted as transitive ones with plural objects. This suggests that cyclic, i.e. non-random and symmetric iterativity implies a participant with some control over the event.

- (414) *hu·qhu·q* He was spilling them all
/CVChuq-[L]-(y)a/ IT-spill-GRAD-REP

Such stems can, however, also be interpreted as intransitive, e.g. 'It spilled repeatedly/ again and again' for (414). When an intransitive stem has a controlling agent as subject, then transitivization is impossible.

- (415) *tu·xtu·x* He hopped repeatedly
/CVG#tux-[L]-(y)a/ *He made him hop repeatedly
 *He made a bunch of them hop
 IT-hop-GRAD-REP

Control is also indicated by stems such as *?uksa·p* 'coax' or *?uc'inh* 'force', the oblique phrase *q'a? uñ* 'on purpose', the momentaneous aspect *-ši(ñ)* (by implying that an event is completed and hence more controlled than a noncompleted event), and the telic suffix *-*(2a)kwa*

(by requiring that the event must be carried out to a completion-point beyond which continuation of the event is impossible). Perhaps because of this greater degree of control, a telecized transitive predicate, even if inherently transitive, must be explicitly marked as such by *-ap*.

A lack of control can be indicated by passive voice, irrealis mood, and the lexical affix *-w'is [R]* 'accidentally', the latter attaching only to certain verbal roots.

- (416) *k'ik'itw'is*
/k'ik'-w'is [R]/

It broke accidentally

break-accidentally

- (417) *wawaw'is*
/wah-w'is [R]/

He 'threw it away accidentally'

throw away-accidentally

4.7.3. Classifier Governing Suffixes

The second type of GS is the classifier type. Classifier GS's are like predicative ones because they determine the semantic class of a resulting stem. Hence they do not serve as objects to a transitive base or as subjects to an intransitive base.

- (418) **huq̚hta*k*
*/huq-h̚ta*kw/*

spill-..soft vessels

- (419) **ci*tp'i*i*
*/ci*t-p'i*iw/*

saw-..long cylindrical objects

They are unlike predicative GS's in that they neither govern NP objects nor sentential complements nor have any multi-word constituent within their scope. In other words, the scope of a classifier GS is always restricted to its base.

Classifier GS's include content and counter classifiers. The former, all nominal GS's, designate an entity as part of a class:

1. human or mythical beings:

- a. NP base: *-aqsp* 'female inhabitant of...', *-m'i't* 'mythical male...';
- b. verbal base: *-maškw* 'one who is expert at ...ing';
- c. adjectival base: *-nik* 'one who is...';

2. nonhuman animate entities:

- a. NP base (all stem form classifiers): *-ma*c* '...animal, sea plant',

- i'w'..berry';*
- b. verbal base: -(s)tu'p 'animal which... (characteristic motion)';
3. inanimate entities:
- NP base: -sy'ik '...thing', -sa'htakw '...class';
 - verbal base: -ck'i· 'remains of...-ing';
 - NP or verbal base: -?in 'costume for...', -u·t 'place for...';
 - NP, verbal or adjectival base: -p'at'a '(man-made) thing'.

The above list indicates all the subtypes, but not the members, of the content classes.

When a nominal content classifier governs a verbal or adjectival base, that base typically indicates the source or function of the resulting nominal.

| | | |
|-------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| (420) | <i>madu't</i> <i>/mad-u·t/</i> | jail bind-place.for.. |
|-------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|

When it governs a nominal base, then that base designates a particular subtype of a class.

| | | |
|-------|--|---|
| (421) | <i>qa'y'uk'waqsp</i> <i>/qa'y'uk-.aqsp/</i> | a Kyuquot woman Kyuquot-female inhabitant of.. |
| (422) | <i>pat'i·w</i> <i>/patq-i·w/</i> | a rosehip rosehip-..berry |
| (423) | <i>čimsm'i·t</i> <i>/čims-m'i·t/</i> | Bear (mythical character) brown bear-mythical male.. |

The use of particular affixes is not fully predictable, e.g. the choice of *-i·ta* or *-(q)hsí* for an agentive nominal, *-im*, *-na*, or *-ma* for an animal, *-č'akw* (*-y'akw*) or *-hta* for a man-made tool, and *-stu'p*, *-a'cy'a*, *-sy'i*, or *-mis* for a non-man-made object. Many nominal GS's are only fairly productive. Stems ending in *-m'i·t* 'mythical male..', *-a'qs* 'mythical female..', *-?i·qsa* '..kin', *-sy'i* '..thing', and *-sy'up* '..thing' seem to constitute closed classes, as do all the stem form classifiers (class 2a above).

The stem form classifiers are distinct from other content classifiers because a given base can be affixed by only one stem form classifier, resulting in the stem form of that base. For example, the root

sa's- 'hummingbird' has as stem form *sa's-in* 'hummingbird-..animal'. No other stem form classifier can affix to *sa's-*. There is one exception to this constraint. Some berry terms, whose stem forms end in *-'i·w* '..berry' or some cranberry affix, can also be affixed by *-(c)smit* '..berry plant', e.g. *katkint-ap̚* 'strawberry' and *katkintsmit* 'strawberry plant'.

Analogous to content classifiers are a limited number of quantity and temporal GS's, e.g. *-m'a[L]* '..quantity' and *-(y)iya* 'time of..'.

The second major type of classifier GS is the counter type, which affixes to a quantity base. Counter classifiers render a stem nominal, locative, temporal, or quantity, as in the following examples.

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (424) <i>?am̚ist</i> | two passengers (in a sea vessel) |
| <i>/?ak-ista/</i> | two-..sea passengers |
| (425) <i>?aksa·c̚.</i> | in two places |
| <i>/?ak-sa·ca/</i> | two-in..places |
| (426) <i>mu·či·t̚</i> | for four days |
| <i>/mu·-či·t̚/</i> | four-for..days |
| (427) <i>suc̚ i·q</i> | one hundred |
| <i>/suc̚ i-i·q/</i> | five-..score |

4.7.4. Other Features of Derivation

Some affixes cannot be classed as either predicative or classifier, but have bases which modify the content of the attached affix. Such affixes can be verbal, e.g. *-ay'iim̚* 'pray for.. weather', adjectival, e.g. *-mu't* 'formerly..', locative, e.g. *-cuq* 'in the.. hand', etc. They have within their scope only their base and not a multi-stem constituent.

The morphemes identified above as temporal counter classifiers have a secondary function. They can serve as temporal or nominal GS's which are modified by their base. This base can be adjectival or temporal, or it can be a constituent of a sentential complement.

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| (428) <i>ñit̚p'at̚</i> | (in) a nice season |
| <i>/ñit̚-p'at̚/</i> | nice-(in), season |

- (429) *wikq'ičh ta'it* (in) a year of no sickness
/wik-q'ičh ta-iit/ not...year drift-in house

The morphological and syntactic structure of such stems has not yet been investigated.

There are also certain affixes which govern either a sentential complement or a temporal oblique constituent, e.g. *-m'u·p* 'absent for..'.

- (430) *qi·či·b·m'u·p* He was absent for many days
/qi-či-b-m'u·p/ long time-for..days-absent for..

Temporal bases are rare in Kyuquot and are usually followed by a temporal or verbal GS.

- (431) *?u·ši·mafq̑k watšik* He wanted to go home sometimes
/?u·š-(y)iya-maq̑k wat-ši(n)/ some..time-want to.. go home-MOM

In a sentence such as (431), the temporal base is understood as the topical predicate of the embedded clause.

The incorporation of locative bases is also rare, except with a few locative and verbal GS's. However, the root *hist-* 'there' serves as a base for GS's which normally govern a NP object base.

- (432) *histn'a·h* He looked for it there
/hist-n'a·h/ there-seek..

- (433) *hist'aqsp* She's a woman from there
/hist-·aqsp/ there-female inhabitant of..

- (434) *hi·sthw'at* He was using it there
/hist-hw'at [L]/ there-use..

It is not clear whether *hist-* is a nominal root, an implicitly-derived nominal, or a locative root with unique privileges of occurrence. In any event, *hist-* differs from other locative roots such as *hit* 'there', *?ap-* 'right at', and *?ust-* 'down', which cannot be affixed by morphemes governing NP objects. In addition, *hist-* serves as a base for verbal restrictive affixes.

In addition to derivation by a GS, there is also implicit derivation. In this type of derivation, a stem is assigned a semantic class other than the one to which it belongs morphologically. Implicit derivation

in Nootka has been described by Swadesh (1933:43) as follows:

a theme [or stem, S.R.] functions as though it were equivalent to some particular derivation of that theme.

In one type of implicit derivation, a stem of the form X-GS is truncated to X when serving as a base for further suffixation. For example, nominals derived by a GS can be either optionally or obligatorily truncated prior to the GS -na·kʷ.

| | | |
|-------|---------------------------------------|--|
| (435) | yaxx'ak /yaxxʷ-y'akʷ/ | broom sweep-thing for.. |
| | yaxxa·k /yaxxʷ-na·kʷ/ | He has a broom sweep-having.. |
| (436) | ?uyaqhmis /?u-yaqh-mis/ | a story it-tell...-thing |
| | ?uyaqh(mis)nak /?u-yaqh-mis-na·kʷ/ | He has news it-tell....thing-having.. |

Another type of implicit derivation involves certain predictable semantic class extensions. First, a nominal root plus a locative RA is interpreted as an adjectival meaning 'having N at L' (the bahuvrihi or -na·kʷ type).

| | | |
|-------|-----------------------|--|
| (437) | ha?umqs /ha?um-qs/ | He has food in his canoe food-in vessel |
|-------|-----------------------|--|

Similarly, an adjectival root plus a locative RA is interpreted as an adjectival meaning "having an A one at L" or "having A L" (where L is a body part location).

| | | |
|-------|---|--------------------------------------|
| (438) | ~x' u ~x' uk' was /~x' uk'- as [RL]/ | He has wide wrists broad-at wrist |
|-------|---|--------------------------------------|

Second, a transitive verbal root plus a locative or verbal RA can be rendered in English as a past participle adjectival (a resultant state), 'V-ed at L' or 'V-ed as V₂-ing', where V₂ indicates the verbal affix.

| | | |
|-------|------------------------|---|
| (439) | m'a?iht /m'a- ihta/ | He was bitten on the nose bite-at nose |
|-------|------------------------|---|

(440) či·n̩·ut
/či·-a·n̩·ut/

It was pulled along a long object
pull-along long object

(441) či·w̩·itt
/či·-w̩·itta/

He was pulled out of the canoe
pull-go out of vessel

A third type of implicit derivation involves the implicit nominalization of nominal modifiers (i.e. quantifiers, quantities, adjectivals) preceding certain affixes.

(442) n̩utna·k
/n̩ut-na·kʷ/

He has a nice one
nice-having..

(443) čim?it
/čim·-it/

bed
comfortable-in house

Finally, there are idiosyncratic derivations in which verbal, locative, or adjectival stems are implicitly derived as nominal ones. Such stems are often lexemes which belong only to the derived semantic class.

(444) m̩am̩atn̩·i
/m̩a-m̩at-n̩·i/

a white (Caucasian) person
dwell-move about-at:slope to sea

(445) n̩ ič' ič' wkw
/n̩ ič' ič' uk [R]/

flour
white (powder)-resembling..

The latter stem illustrates both regular implicit nominalization, in the derivation of n̩ ič- 'white' to mean 'white thing', and idiosyncratic implicit nominalization, in the derivation of the whole stem as a nominal.

There are cases where a stem can belong to both the basic and the idiosyncratically-derived semantic class. Many of these are locative stems derived as nominals.

(446) hi·hin̩as
/hin̩.-as [RL]/

(at the) wrist
there(MOM)-at wrist

However, one cannot predict which stems will undergo idiosyncratic implicit derivation and which will not.

4.8. Restrictive Affixes

Restrictive affixes have an appositive relation to their base and do not influence the semantic class of the stem in which they occur.

They do not govern an object or a complement base. For example, if a predicative stem is composed of a RA plus a NP constituent, the NP is the predicate, not the object.

- (447) *si-čpaxn' aq* There's a cougar up on top
/si-čpax-n'aq/ (*He's on top of the cougar)
 cougar-on top

The rules for determining which constituent of a clause or NP will serve as base for a RA are parallel to those for a GS. In a NP, the constituents form the following hierarchy, in which each constituent has precedence over the constituents to its right: qualifier > quantifier > quantity > adjectival > nominal. A NP constituent cannot serve as a base if another constituent, which has precedence over the first, would be left as an independent stem.

- (448) *?ani-čak ti-pin* There was only a table in the house
/?ana-či-čak .. / only-in house-TEM table
**ti-piničak ?ana*

- (449) *?ayaqsañqu su-ḥa* There'd be many spring salmon in the
/?aya-qs-čak-qu: .. / many-in vessel-TEM-COND canoe
**su-ḥa-qsanqu ?aya*

When a RA modifies a clause, the affix attaches to the (highest) predicate.

- (450) *casw'itint fini-k* He chased the dog out of the canoe
/cas-witta-int .. / chase-go out of vessel-PAST dog

In conjoined structures, the RA attaches to either or both of the conjuncts.

- (451) *x'issp'i ?uhiš tupksp'i* There's a white one, and a black one
 on top
x'issp'i ?uhiš tupkak DITTO
x'isuk ?uhiš tupksp'i DITTO
/x'is.-uk .. tupk-(c)sp'i/ white-DUR and black-on top

Such RA ellipsis has not been observed in conjuncts including more than one stem. That is, the identical RA's must be separated by no more than one word boundary if they are to undergo ellipsis.

4.8.1. Locative and Verbal Restrictive Affixes

Locative RA's account for three-quarters of all RA's and accompany bases of all semantic classes. They indicate location of an entity or an (implied) event occurring at or for a specific time, as in *čimsn'a·q* 'a brown bear up there', *či·ihn'a·q* 'a red (thing) up there', *mu·n'a·q* 'four (of them) up there', *časn'a·q* 'chasing (around) up there', and *qi·n'a·q* '(doing it) up there for a long time'. In addition, when bound to a locative base, LRA's can indicate a more specified location, e.g. *hižn'a·q* 'up there' rather than simply *hiž* 'there'.

4.8.1.1. Locative Affixes

The grammatical counterpart of a LRA is an adverbial locative oblique if it modifies a predicate and a locative modifier if it modifies a NP. Few LRA's have a root equivalent. There are no roots for abstract locations such as 'in', 'on', 'beside', etc. and few for ones in nature or on the body. Instead, a locative stem equivalent to a LRA is composed of the LRA plus one of a very small set of referential or generic locative roots such as *?ap-* 'right at', *?ust-* 'downward, at an enclosure', and *hiž* 'there'.

A LRA does not assign semantic class to a stem. However, it does assign aspect. The aspect assigned is imperfective (continuative) if the root governs no object and optionally involves a nonsubject patient.

- | | |
|---|---|
| (452) <i>č'iski·č'</i> <i>/č'isk-i·č'/</i> | He's scraping along the rim scrape-along rim of container |
| (453) <i>mitap'aq</i> <i>/mitač-p'aq/</i> | He's turning at his knees turn-at knee |
| (454) <i>tuqp'il</i> <i>/tuq-p'it/</i> | It's melting at the handle melt-at handle |
| (455) <i>čaq'-ahs</i> <i>/čaq-ahs/</i> | He's throwing wet things in a canoe throw wet things-in vessel |

If the root is transitive, then an associated LRA assigns a perfective resultant aspect and passive voice to the stem. The relation of such forms to ones which are formally passive is still under investigation.

- (456) *ta'qu'in*
/ta'q-w'in/ He's (been) squeezed at the waist
 squeeze-at middle
- (457) *č'i'a'c'č*
/č'i-a-c'č/ He got cut on the sole of his foot
 cut-on sole, palm
- (458) *n'ac'is*
/n'ac-fis/ He was seen at the beach
 see-at beach

In many of these stems, the LRA's seem interpretable as nominal patients. Although this may be semantically valid, it is grammatically more consistent for them to be locative adverbials. First, there are no nominal RA's otherwise found in Nootka. Second, a momentaneous (perfective) stem cannot end in a LRA but must be accompanied by the momentaneous allomorph (underlined below) of that affix, whether the root is inherently momentaneous or not. The following stems all have momentaneous roots.

- (459) *sacp'inx* He crawled on top
/sa-(c)p'i-nu(č)/ crawl-on top-MOM
- (460) *qahitč* He became paralyzed
/qah-(č)t-u(č)/ die-at body-MOM

Finally, compare the aspect of the following form with that of (452), in which the momentaneous morpheme is absent.

- (461) *č'iski'č'č* He scraped at the rim
/č'isk-i'č'-č/ scrape-at rim of container-MOM

If a nominal is affixed by the momentaneous morpheme, the stem is interpreted as inceptive. But when a LRA is thus affixed, the resulting stem is momentaneous (perfective), not inceptive.

Unlike nominals, LRA's typically govern an object, which must be a sentential constituent independent of the stem in which the affix is found. Such transitivity is possible whether or not the base which the LRA accompanies is transitive. In the following examples, the transitive LRA governing the object is underlined.

- (462) *su^hhsn'it* *?u^kwt p'u[?]im'inh-i* There's a sockeye between the
/su-h-hsn'it ?u-(č)it [L] p'u[?]i-m'inh-i/ halibuts

spring salmon-between it-do to.. halibut-PL-DEF

- (463) mata'sk̓ tihati He alighted on the mat
 /mat-a's-k̓ tihat-i/ fly-on-MOM mat-DEF

- (464) casp'aq ti'pin He was chasing it on the table
 /cas-p'aq .../ chase-on top table

LRA's can govern objects even if the affix is itself part of a base to which other suffixes are attached.

- (465) mata'sma'q̓ tihat̓ He wanted to alight on the mat
 /mat-a's-k̓-ma'q̓ .../ fly-on-MOM-want to.. mat

Contrast the relation of *sini* 'dog' to the locative morpheme in the following sentences.

- (466) hita'hit̓ sini'hit̓ He was in front of the dog
 /hit-a'hit̓ .../ there-at front dog

- (467) sini'whit̓ There's a dog in front (of him).

Only the NP independent of the LRA can be its object. There is, of course, potential ambiguity. A NP associated with a stem in which a LRA occurs could be in a subject or object relation to the stem. For example, in (466), *sini* could also be interpreted as subject of the clause 'The dog was in front of him'. The interpretation can often be disambiguated on the basis of linguistic context, semantic constraints, and knowledge of the world.

- (468) ?i'w'ahs suč'is There's a big tree in the canoe
 /?i:w'-ahs .../ big-in vessel tree

- (469) mixta's ti'pin There's an old person on the table.
 /mixt-a's .../ old-on table

In (468), a tree cannot be interpreted as a vessel; hence, 'There's a big tree-vessel' is not an acceptable reading for that sentence. In

(469), *mixt-* refers only to animate beings; hence, it cannot modify the object *ti'pin* and 'old table' cannot be the subject.

LRA's have a special relationship to quantifier bases. A quantifier can, of course, modify a subject NP associated with a LRA or serve

as a higher predicate to a LRA. It can, however, also modify the location site designated by the LRA. Consider the following sentences.

(470) *kʷispa*

/kʷis-.pa/

There's another one at the end
It's at the other end
different-at end

(471) *hisqu̚t*

/his-qu̚t/

There's both of them at the side
It's on both sides

both-at side

(472) *?iqit*

/?iq-i-t/

There's the same one in the house
He's still in the house
He's in the same house

same-in house

Only quantifiers can behave in this way. This emphasizes the power of quantifiers to overrule the normal principles of word formation and semantic interpretation.

The position of a LRA in a stem is fairly predictable. It is normally separated only by RA's from the base which it modifies. With a nominal GS, one can predict that if it is the nominal that is at the location specified, then the LRA follows the nominal GS and the base produced by that suffix.

(473) *?ak̚p'i·s*

/?ak̚-p-i-t-cis/

There are two poles at the beach
two...long objects-at beach

If the location has something to do with some constituent of a stem indicating an entity and derived by a nominal GS, then the LRA precedes the other suffix.

(474) *m'atagy'ik*

/m'at,-aq̚-y'ik/

refrigerator

cold-inside-thing-for (being)..

Other GS's interact with LRA's in a similar way. If the derived state or event occurs at the location specified by a LRA, then that suffix follows the GS.

(475) *sitč-na·kʷib*

/sitč-na-kʷ-i-b/

He has a dog, in the house

dog-having...in house

- (476) ñ'upči·ž
 /ñ'u-pči-žit/

He's in a hot place in the building
 hot-in..-in house

- (477) ?u·šn'a·hščim
 /?u·š-n'a·h-ščim/

He (with the others) was looking for
 someone
 some-seek..-with others

If, however, the location specified by the LRA is the site of occurrence for the event or state serving as the base for the GS, then the LRA attaches to the embedded base, prior to the GS.

- (478) qahityash
 /qah-(č)it-y-i·h/

He was suffering from paralysis
 die-at body-suffer from..

- (479) ?apwini
 /?ap-w'in-(y)iya/

It took place in the meantime
 right at-in middle-time when..

- (480) hu·patin'uk'wh
 /hup-at-in'uk'wh[L]/

He was looking on at the sun
 round-at flat surface-look on at..

There are a few cases where the position of the LRA seems unmotivated. Consider the following.

- (481) ti·č'ahsim
 /ti·č'-ahs-im[L]/

He sayed him (at sea)
 alive-in vessel-bring home..

- (482) qaca·scut
 /qac-a·s-cut/

It's at the right side
 right-on-at..side

It is not clear whether these are isolated anomalous instances, peculiar lexical entries, or evidence for as yet unrecognized principles of word formation and semantic interpretation. There are, so far, no examples of a LRA preceding a quantity GS, nor of a quantity or temporal GS preceding a LRA.

Half of the LRA's refer primarily to a body part location, e.g. -qi· 'at head', -'akki 'at rump', -č'uiq 'at head', and -(q)hta[R] 'at foot'. Many of these have secondary semantic extensions in other location domains such as nature and man-made objects. For example, -qi· can also mean 'at promontory', and -'akki 'behind, at rear'. The primary location referent of a LRA is the one which comes most commonly or easily to the speaker's mind without linguistic or environmental cues.

Body part LRA's are unique among the Kyuquot affixes because only for them does the obligatory (parasyntactic) reduplication associated with some affixes have a semantic correlation. When a body part has a mate, the LRA expressing that part must be associated with reduplication: [R+L] for 'at the eye', [R+L] for 'at the hand' or 'at the leg', [RL] for 'at the wrist', and [R] elsewhere. When a body part has no mate, the associated LRA does not trigger reduplication. The sides of the body, e.g. of the head or hip, and the soles of the feet are not treated as having mates; their associated LRA's do not trigger reduplication. For body part LRA's, obligatory reduplication bears a distributive meaning. This is supported by pairs such as *-p'aq* 'at the top (of hill)' and *-p'aq [R]* 'at the knee, hill', in which a variant without reference to a paired body part does not trigger reduplication. This correlation of parasyntactic and distributive reduplicative functions is restricted to the body part LRA's. Otherwise, neither obligatory reduplication nor vowel lengthening can be assigned semantic content.

The rest of the LRA's have as their primary domain of reference nature, e.g. *-'aʔa'* 'on rocks' or *-(w)aqsa [L]* 'at edge of stream, bank'; man-made objects, e.g. *-e'u'* 'in container' or *-yin* 'at bow'; or abstract geometric configurations, e.g. *-apu(t)* 'underneath' or *-a's* 'on'. In addition, certain LRA's refer to an abstract locative relation or an extension in space, e.g. *-aqt* 'extending across', *-scim* 'with others', or *-(c)swi* 'extending through'. These can also have secondary extensions in other locative domains.

4.8.1.2. Verbal Affixes

In addition to LRA's, there is a small set of verbal RA's. The semantic interpretation of stems with VRA's is parallel to that of ones with LRA's. VRA's can attach to bases of any semantic class. If a predicative stem is composed of a nominal base and a VRA, the base is interpreted as a predicative NP coreferential to its subject and dominating a verbal predicate.

(483) *tuhtu·psuht*

/tuh-(š)tu·p-(c)suht/

There's a scary monster coming out of
the woods
afraid-..thing-come out of woods

- (484) *?it̚su·ñ*
/iit̚-suñ/

There's a dog that's dying
 dog-die(MOM)

If the base⁸ is quantifier, quantity, or adjectival, it is interpreted as a modifier of the NP or (if no nominal is present) as an implicit NP.

- (485) *nut̚sit*
/nut̚-sit/

There was a good thing happening
 good-happen.

- (486) *k̚ ana·ct̚isris*
/k̚ am-(y)a·-(c)sti·s-k̚-?is/

A few were going up inlet

few-CONT-go up inlet-MOM-DIM

- (487) *?anaсуht̚ zu ema*
/?ana-(c)suhta ../

There was only a woman coming out of the
 only-come out of woods woman woods

As a general rule, a quantity modifying an inanimate nominal in such a construction must be specified by a governing nominal counter classifier.

- (488) *?axc̚ aqsuht̚ e apic*
/?ak̚-c̚ aq-(c)suhta ../

There are two canoes coming out of the
 two...vessels-come out of woods woods

If a form composed of a NP-denoting base and a VRA is transitivized by ⁻ap CAUS, then the NP is coreferential to the object of the derived stem.

- (489) *?ayawahst̚*

There were many getting out

?ayawahst̚ ap

He took many out

/?aya-wahst̚. - ap/

many-go out-CAUS

If a predicate is composed of a verbal base plus a VRA, the base typically indicates the manner in which the VRA event occurred. The base is interpreted as an event simultaneous with the event indicated by the suffix.

- (490) *sawahst̚*
/sa-wahst̚/

He was crawling out
 crawl-come out

- (491) *ku·thu·?euhnt̚*
/CVC#ku·ñ-[L]-(y)a-(c)suhta/

He was coming out of the woods slowly

IT-slowly (do)-GRAD-REP-come out of woods

Such a construction is semantically similar to one in which cotemporan-

eous events are signalled as such by the affix -(q)h 'meanwhile'.

The behavior of VRA's parallels that of LRA's. VRA's seem to attach to the base they modify. However, because few complex stems including VRA's have been encountered, no generalization with respect to their siting can be made at this point. Like LRA's, VRA's can govern independent objects.

- (492) *tuxw'itt č'apici* He hopped out of the canoe
/tux-w'itta č'apic-i' hop-go out of vessel canoe-DEF

- (493) *tuxw'ittama?qñ č'apici* He wanted to hop out of the canoe
 VRA's also have the same relationship to quantifier roots as LRA's. The quantifier can serve as modifier of a NP or as a higher adverbial predicate.

- (494) *wik'a?at* There was no one going down there
/wik-č'a?at/ He wasn't going down
 no(t)-go down

4.8.1.3. Aspectual Derivation

Both VRA's and LRA's can attach to locative bases. It is in this context that the verbal nature of the VRA's is grammatically supported. Locative bases are aspectually imperfective. If affixed by a VRA, the resulting stem is continuative.

- (495) *hitkwist* He was coming out of a hole
/hit-kwist/ there-come out of hole

- (496) *hitsti's* He was going up inlet
/hit-(c)sti's/ there-go up inlet

In contrast, if a locative root is affixed by a LRA, the resulting stem is durative.

- (497) *hitqu* He's at the point
/hit-qu/ there-at point

- (498) *hitsep'i* He's at the top
/hit-(c)sp'i/ there-at top

The durative stem can be rendered inceptive by the addition to the LRA of

its momentaneous aspect allomorph, e.g. *hitsp'ink* 'He got to the top, began to be on the top'. The continuative stem, composed of locative base plus VRA, cannot be inceptivized and cannot be affixed by the momentaneous morpheme, e.g. **hitsti-sk*.

The other locative roots, which are aspectually durative, include *?ust-* and *?ap-* (~*?am-*). The former generally denotes either a downward direction or a location adjacent to an enclosure, as in *?ust'a?* 'down at the rocks', *?ust'ahs* '(down) inside a vessel', and *?ust'sim* 'in the doorway'. The latter generally denotes a precise spot and has *?ap-* as the preconsonantal allomorph. Locative stems of the form *?ap-LRA* are prone to implicit derivation as nominals denoting locations.

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| (499) <i>?am'akk</i> | (at). the rear end |
| <i>/?am'-akki/</i> | right at-behind |
| (500) <i>?apqi</i> | (at). the mountain top |
| <i>/?ap-qi/</i> | right at-at top |

There is another root *hin-* (~*hita-*) 'do, occur, go there (MOM)'. It is aspectually perfective and, hence, semantically verbal. If affixed by a LRA, the stem is continuous.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| (501) <i>hitac'p</i> | He was going to the top |
| <i>/hita-(c)sp'i/</i> | there(MOM)-at top |
| (502) <i>hitaqu</i> | He's going around the point |
| <i>/hita-qu/</i> | there(MOM)-at point |

If affixed by a VRA, the stem is momentaneous (perfective), suggesting that the VRA is perfective itself.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| (503) <i>hitacuht</i> | He came out |
| <i>/hita-(c)suhta/</i> | there(MOM)-come out |
| (504) <i>hita'sat</i> | He went down there |
| <i>/hita-?a?at/</i> | there(MOM)-go down |

The perfectivity of VRA's is supported by their association with *-i*: (~*-ay*) [L] 'slowly', which otherwise affixes only to momentaneous bases.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (505) <i>hu'p'ati</i> | There was the sun slowly setting |
| <i>/hup-?ata-i: [L]/</i> | round-go down-slowly |

The imperfective (continuative) stems composed of *hin-* (*hitq-*) plus a LRA can be perfectivized by the momentaneous allomorph of the LRA.

- (506) *hitac'pink* He got/went to the top
/hita-(c)sp'i-nu(ñ)/ there(MOM)-at top-MOM
- (507) *hiti-sk* He went to the beach
/hita-^cis-ñ/ there(MOM)-at beach-MOM

In contrast, a stem composed of *hin-* (*hita-*) plus a VRA cannot be thus perfectivized, no doubt because the stem is already perfective as in (503) and (504).

The *hin-* and *hita-* allomorphs are in complementary distribution. An affix associates with only one of the two forms. Generally, *hin-* precedes a vowel and *hita-* a consonant or a suffix triggering glottalization or lenition (suggesting that at least historically the latter suffixes were consonant-initial). Contrast the above *hita*-form stems with the following.

- (508) *hinin* He came there
/hin.-in/ there(MOM)-come

There are, however, exceptions in which *hin-* is present rather than the expected *hita-*, e.g. (446).

There are certain LRA's and VRA's which can attach only to *hit* and not to *hin-* (*hita-*), i.e. *-j̥nta* 'at the point', *-(c)sat'* [E] 'at the forehead', and *-(c)sti's* 'go up inlet'. A few others can attach only to *hin-* (*hita-*) and not to *hit*, i.e. *-i'c'* 'at the rim of a container', *-wisc* 'go up the bank', and *-w'itta* 'go out of a vessel'... As a result, the aspectual possibilities of such morphemes are limited.

4.8.2. Adjectival Restrictive Affixes

The remaining restrictive affixes consist of small sets of adjectival, quantity, and temporal affixes. Most adjectival RA's behave like manner adverbials and attach to nominal, verbal, and adjectival bases. ARA's include *-ck'in* 'slightly', *-(c)st'at* ([RctL]) 'reciprocally', *-(q)aq* 'very', *-(q)hit* 'excessively', *-(s)as* 'really', *-t'i:na* 'slightly', and *-w'is* [P] 'accidently'.

- (509) *qu[?]ass* an Indian
/qu[?]as-(s)as/ person-really

They affix to the base which they modify as in (510), where the reciprocity is a characteristic of the root 'kick' and not of the derived base 'kicking thing'.

- (510) *yackst[?]ity[?]ik* football
/yack-(c)st[?]ab-y[?]ak^w/ kick-each other-thing for..

The position of ARA's in stems is also influenced by cooccurrence restrictions based on morpho-semantic class. For example, -(c)st'at 'reciprocally' attaches only to verbal bases and, hence, cannot follow -y[?]ak^w in (510). Similarly, -(q)hb 'excessively' can attach to only adjectival or quantity bases. Hence, the base to which -(q)hb attaches in the following example can be predicted morphologically, without having to determine which base -(q)hb most clearly modifies.

- (511) *n[?]ikču[?]qb* It's excessively scratched
/n[?]ik-ču[?]-(q)hb/ scratch-..-ed-excessively

The ARA -apa ([RL+L]) 'too, very' also serves as a manner adverbial and affixes to the base it modifies (cf. example (513)).

- (512) *mi[?]mi[?]txšikap* He turned too much
/mitx^w-ši(?)-apa [RL+L]/ turn-MOM-too
- (513) *?a[?]a[?]ypank* He has too much
/?aya-apa [RL+L]-na[?]k^w/ much-too-having..

In addition, it behaves like an inflectional affix by attaching to a predicate dominating the one it modifies. Consider the following.

- (514) *nuhapiyin Sac[?]ik* We're the best at it
/nuh-apa-(y)i:-n .. / we-very-INDEF-IP expert at
- (515) *sutpa[?]c[?]i[?]h* You're the biggest
/sut-apa-a[?]c .. / you-very-II(IND) big

This type of structure always involves a topical NP predicate, with -apa modifying the embedded verbal or adjectival predicate.

There are two affixes, -k^wa[?](y) & 'absent, lacking' (the use of y

being optional) and $(?a)k^w_a$ 'completely (destroyed)', which serve as either manner adverbial affixes to verbal bases (like other ARA's) or predicative affixes attached to NP phrases which are coreferential to the subject and dominate the ARA (like LRA's and VRA's).

- (516) žuč^wa·yž^w
 /žuč-k^wa·yž^w/ There's a woman absent
 woman-absent

- (517) mu·?ak^wič^w
 /mu·-(?a)k^wa- i·či(ñ)/ There were four that were destroyed
 four-destroyed-INC

In these cases as well, the ARA is bound to the base it modifies.

Finally, there are two ARA's indicating a benefactive relation. They are transitive but, like LRA's, their object cannot be the base to which they attach. The first, -(y)i·t 'for', is unproductive and affixes only to a few transitive verbal roots.

- (518) č'i·y-i·t
 /č'i-(y)i·t/ He cut it for her
 cut-for

The other, -či·p 'for', is productive for both intransitive and transitive bases. The presence of -či·p in a predicate raises its valence by one place, a benefactee NP. This participant is affected beneficially or adversely by the event expressed in the predicate. In addition, this event may occur at the request of the benefactee or may involve a participant who serves in place of the benefactee.

- (519) nahi·čipints puk I gave the book for him (in place of him
 or for him to receive)
 /nahi·-či·p-int-s .../ give-for-PAST-I book

- (520) ku·w'itčpi:s su·tit ta·na I stole money from you/ for you
 /ku·w'it-či·p-(y)i:-s sut-(č)it[L] .../
 steal-for-INDF-I you-do to... money

- (521) hisšincip's Hit it for me!
 /his-ši(ñ)-či·p-i-s/ hit-MOM-for-IMPV-I

In active predicates, the benefactee NP serves as an object or as an oblique if a patient object is already present. In passive predicates with -či·p, the benefactee serves as subject.

- (522) *hisšiňčip' atints* . . . It was hit for me
/his-ši(n)-či-p'-at-int-s/ hit-MOM-for-PASS-PAST-I

- (523) *?un'a·hčip' atint sini·n* The dog was sought ^{for} something.
 He looked for something for the dog
/?u-n'a·h-či-p'-at-int .. / it-seek..-for-PASS-PAST dog

The benefactee suffix can also indicate that the possessor of the patient is affected by the event, as in sentence (520), which can also mean 'I stole your money'. Also note the following sentences.

- (524) *hisšiňčinti's nishin* I hit her on the foot
/his-ši(n)-či-p-int-(y)i:-s .. / hit-MOM-for-PAST-INDF-I foot

- (525) *hisšiňčinti's sini·n* I hit her dog

This interpretation of the benefactee is possible only when the possessor does not equal the subject, unless the benefactee-possessor is treated as a reflexive.

- (526) *?u?a·pčip šawis ?u·kʷachin* She bought shoes for herself
/?u-a·p-či-p .. ?ukʷa-chin [L]/ it-buy..-for shoe self-do for..

- (527) **?u?a·pčep šawis* (She bought her own shoes)

In addition, by indicating that another party (the benefactee) is affected, -či·p can distinguish two third person participants. Contrast the following sentences, differentiated structurally only by the presence or absence of -či·p..

- (528) *hi·nutčintiš čakupkʷ* She waited for her man
/hi-n-a-wit [L]-či-p-int-iš čakup-uk/
 there(MOM)-wait for..-for-PAST-IND man-POSS

- (529) *hi·nutčintiš čakupkʷ* She waited for her man

In active sentences, the presence of both -či·p 'for' and -uk POSS indicates that the benefactee is possessed.

- (530) *?un'a·hčipkʷintin sini·n* We're seeking something for his dog
/?u-n'a·h-či-p-uk-int-in .. / it-seek..-for-POSS-PAST-IP dog

- (531) *?un'a·hčipintin sini·n* We're seeking a dog for him/ something for the dog

In passive ones, the cooccurrence of *-či-p* and *-uk* signals that the pro-nominal affix is coreferential to either the benefactee (who is the possessor of the patient) or the possessor of the benefactee. Both interpretations are given for the following example.

In both readings the benefactee is subject. In the first reading, the pronoun is coreferential to the subject. In the second, it refers to the possessor of the (third person) subject. The interpretation of pronominal affixes as possessors, when accompanied by *-uk* POSS, was discussed earlier in relation to the *-uk* morpheme (cf. section 4.3.5).

The benefactee associated with a predicate can also be expressed within an embedded or higher clause by other suffixes. These include -*a'atip* 'destined for...', -*chin* [L] 'do for...', -*y'akw* 'thing for...', and -*inmaš* 'in place of...'. In such constructions, the presence of -*xi'ip* in the predicate is optional.

- (533) *č̥ ičix(čp)intin ?u-a?atp* Mary We cut it for Mary
 /č̥ i-ši(n)-či-p-int-in ?u-a?atip ../
 cut-MOM-for-PAST-IP it-destine for.. Mary

4.8.3. Quantity Restrictive Affixes

Quantity RA's are all plural markers. Unlike *-m'inh* PL, they can precede other noninflectional suffixes. The QRA class is small and morphophonologically distinctive. It includes a reduplicative affix, *CV#* distributive, and two infixes, *-t-* PL and *'V_y'- [L]* PL, in addition to the suffixes *-i·h* [L] PL, *'aqa* 'severally', and *-yu* 'severally'.

The last two morphemes identify small complementary sets of verbal roots and bases as having a plural subject.

- (534) mitaw'a[•]?aq
/mitaw-(y)a[•]-aqə/ A bunch were turning around
turn-CONT-severally

- (535) *ki-waq* A bunch were laughing
/kɪ'wəq/ laugh-severally

- (536) *ñ'a·biyu*
/ñ'a·b-yu'/

A bunch were mourning
 mourn-severally

Similarly, *-i·h* ([L]) PL, *-t-* PL, and *-t...i·h* PL are each limited to small complementary sets of common human nominal roots or cranberry stem forms; e.g. *ča'kuph* 'men', *tu'emi'h* 'women', *qutqwa's* 'people', and *ha'tkmi'h* 'princesses', which are based on the singular forms *čakup*, *tu'ema*, *qu'as*, and *ha'kum* respectively.

Distributive (CV#) reduplication has two main meanings, plurality and spatial distribution, which can, but need not, coexist in a given stem. It denotes plurality for entities which are clearly distributed within some domain of nature, e.g. a forest, beach, or sea, or some other domain such as kinship.

- (537) *susuc'is*
/CV#susic'is/

a bunch of trees
 distrib-tree

- (538) *?u?um?iqs*
/CV#?um?i-i·qsa/

mothers
 distrib-mother-.kin

It also attaches to quantity or adjectival roots to denote plurality of entities modified spatially, e.g. as 'hollow', 'crosswise', 'thick', 'little', 'inside', etc.

- (539) *ñ'ix'ixa?*
/CV#ñ'iñw-a·?a/

There's red (ones) all over the rocks
 distrib-red-on rocks

- (540) *?a?inhiis*
/CV#?ana-h-i·s/

There are some little ones
 distrib-only-quantity-DIM

- (541) *?a?ayaqñ*
/CV#?aya-aqñ/

There are a bunch inside
 distrib-many-inside

Distributive reduplication may be historically linked to the parasynthetic reduplication associated with LRA's referring to paired body parts.

- (542) *sasač'imb*
/sačk-imb [R]/

His ears are pointed
 sharp-at ear

CV# reduplication found in verbal predicates can mean either that the event is spatially distributed as in (543) or that it involves a

plurality of patient participants normally distributed in space.

- (543) *qi·čik n'an'amat*
/qi·-ši(ñ) CV#n'amat/

She took a long time trying (to hang a picture) here and there.,
 long time-MOM distrib-try

- (544) *wawatuq'wat*
/CV#watuq'-a·t/

A bunch were barking
 distrib-bark-PL

- (545) *?u?uxp'itsp*
/CV#?ux-p'it-sa·p/

He's making a bunch of them fall over
 distrib-fall-at edge-MOMCAUS

- (546) *hiyissa?t*
/CV#his-ši(ñ)-at/

A bunch of them were hit
 distrib-hit-MOM-PASS

However, distributive reduplication in verbal stems, as in nominal ones, need not indicate actual spatial distribution.

- (547) *>fafasp'u·ñ*
/CV#fasp-²u:(ñ)/

A bunch of them were paid
 distrib-be paid-MOM

- (548) *c'i·c'ish*
/CV#c'is-hi·/

There's a bunch of bad ones
 distrib-bad-DUR

The function or source of the long reduplicative vowel in (548) and other forms is not known. As some bases can be affixed by either *CV#* or *CV·#*, perhaps the lengthening of the vowel is a unique morpheme, e.g. one of emphatic length.

CV# and *-t-* can combine to form a plural marker which is restricted to colours, adjectivals commonly attributed to humans, and some human nominals.

- (549) *ñ'itñ'ihkw*
/CV#t-ñ'ihw-uk/

There are some red ones
 distrib-PL-red-DUR

- (550) *hathan'k*
/CV#t-han'ah/

There are some naked ones
 distrib-PL-naked

- (551) *ha·tha·kwañ*
/CV#t-ha·kwa·ñ/

There are some girls
 distrib-PL-girl

A given human nominal is pluralized by either *-i·h* ([L]), *-t...-i·h*, or *CV#t-*. For some speakers, *CV#t-* is much more productive and is used for

nonhuman nominals as well, as in *sutsuč*'s 'trees' and *sitinh* 'dogs', based on the singular forms *suc'* is and *sinič* respectively. All the plural markers so far mentioned are in free variation with *-m'inh* PL.

The last QRA to be discussed is the infix *-Vy'-[L]*, which is inserted after the initial consonant of a verbal or adjectival stem to indicate plurality of its subject or NP head. The infix vowel is generally a copy of the root vowel. If the root vowel is inherently long, then the copied vowel is long; if short, the copied vowel is short. The copied vowel can reduce to [ə], phonemically *a*. Certain lexical entries tend to occur with the reduced form; others with the unreduced form. It is not known why this is so.

- (552) *may'i·xtkʷ*
/mixt-Vy'[L]-uk/

There's a bunch of old ones
old-PL-DUR

- (553) *bay'i·ct*
/tic-Vy'[L]-i·t/

There's a bunch of pregnant women
pregnant-PL-at body

- (554) *tuy'u·q'wic̚*
/tuq-Vy'[L]-ci·ci(ñ)/

A bunch started to fall
fall-PL-INC

However, *-Vy'-[L]* usually accompanies predicates composed of a verbal root and the IT GRAD REP morpheme complex. In such stems, *-Vy'-[L]* indicates that the subject is plural not as a mass but as a set of discrete participants.

- (555) *siy'i·ñsiy*
/CVC#Vy'[L]-si-[L]-(y)a/

They're each/ all poling (boats)
IT-PL-pole-GRAD-REP

- (556) *k'ay'a·šk'as*
/CVC#Vy'[L]-k'aš-[L]-(y)a/
IT-PL-put away-GRAD-REP

They're each/ all putting their
things away

The short surface root vowel is due to regular vowel shortening of non-obligatorily long vowels in third or later syllables.

The IT GRAD REP complex indicates iteration of an event either in time or by different participants. When this complex occurs with *-Vy'-[L]*, it is the latter interpretation which dominates. The event is understood as continuative (but not necessarily repetitive) and involving a set of

discrete participants. Contrast the following sentences.

- (557) *tu*xtu*x* He jumped over and over
/CVC#tux-[L]-(y)g/ Several were jumping

- (558) *tuy'u*xtux* They were each/ all jumping

The formation of stems including IT GRAD REP and *-V_y'- [L]* is occasionally complicated by the mutation of the reduplicative vowel: *u* → *a* and *a* → *i*.

- (559) *tuy'a*xtuy* They were handling small things

- (560) *c'ay'i*xc'ax* They were each/ all spearing it

4.8.4. Temporal Restrictive Affixes

Six temporal RA's have been identified: *-aya* [L] 'slowly', *-ik* 'prospectively', *-(k^w)a:w* 'at intervals', *-pa:c'* 'immediately', *-wi* 'at first', and *-(q)h* 'meanwhile' (SÍM). The first three morphemes have been mentioned in relation to aspect (cf. sections 4.4.9, 4.4.7, and 4.4.6 respectively). The fourth attaches only to verbal bases and is unproductive.

- (561) *kamitqa*c'* He ran off immediately
/kamitq^w-pa:c'/ run-immediately

The fifth is also unproductive but attaches to predicates of any semantic class. It may be a semantic extension of the VRA *-wi* '(point) comes out (first)'.

The last morpheme in the above list, *-(q)h* 'meanwhile', is highly productive. It attaches to verbal, adjectival, and locative bases to indicate that a certain event or state is simultaneous with a second event or state.

- (562) *wabyu*qh wa?i^c* He was sleeping while at home
/wab-yu--(q)h.../ go home-... éd-SIM sleep

- (563) *hitn'i·shint c'apic^b* He made the canoe while at the beach
/hit-n'i-c-is-(q)h-int c'apic-(c)i·b/
 there-at beach slope-at beach-SIM-PAST canoe-make..

Temporal and manner adverbials, which are structurally higher predicates, are frequently identified by -(q)h as simultaneous with the embedded predicate.

- (564) haptakhak $\dot{x}^{\circ} i \cdot x^w a$ She secretly laughed
 $/hapt-ak^w-(q)h-\dot{a}k \dot{x}^{\circ} i \cdot x^w-(y)a^{\circ}/$ hide-DUR-SIM-TEM laugh-CONT

Such -(q)h-marked predicates cannot be linked by $?uhis$ 'and' to the predicate expressing the state or event with which they are simultaneous. Hence these associated predicates are not coordinate but are in a matrix-subordinate relationship. The -(q)h-affixed predicate represents the ground during which another event or state takes place. In addition, -(q)h-affixed predicates can occur without an embedded predicate.

- (565) k*ic*a^qh He had his eyes closed meanwhile
 $/k^{\circ}ic-(y)a^{\circ}-(q)h/$ close eyes-CONT-STIM

However, in such a sentence, the presence of -(q)h implies that some other event or state is simultaneous with the one expressed.

The -(q)h suffix, which is found only in predicates, has a number of semantic extensions seemingly derived from that of simultaneity. First, it can express simultaneity of the event or state expressed and the present moment, i.e. 'still, ongoing'.

- (566) wa?i^čhi^s We're still sleeping
 $/wa?i\check{c}-(q)h-n-i\check{s}/$ sleep-SIM-IP-IND

Second, it can mean 'in contrast' in predicates which are counter to one's expectations or opposed to some other state or event.

- (567) mixtuk^whaki^s ?acyu He's old to go fishing
 $/mixt-uk-(q)h-\dot{a}k-\dot{i}^{\circ}s \dot{?}ac-yu^{\circ}/$ old-DUR-SIM-TEM-IND go out...-ed

- (568) mixtuk^whi^s $\dot{x}u \cdot k^w a^{\circ} n$ He's old for a doctor

- (569) $\dot{z}u \cdot emaqhi^s$ $\dot{x}u \cdot k^w a^{\circ} n$ The doctor is a WOMAN (!)

- (570) $\dot{z}u \cdot emaqhi^s$ hissi^k $\ddot{o}apic$ It's a WOMAN who (nevertheless)
made the canoe

$/\dot{z}u \cdot ema-(q)h-\dot{i}^{\circ}s$ his-si:k^w .../ woman-SIM-IND all-finish.. canoe

It appears that the -(q)h in topical predicates is this same.

morpheme, but with a less contrastive and more topicalizing function.

- (571) *?ayaqha^{fs} t'i^{as}* MANY were sitting down
/?aya-(q)h-a^{fs} t'i^{w-}as/ many-SIM-EVID sit-outside
- (572) *xa[?]u·qhint sini^x m'ačik* The OTHER dog was biting
/xa[?]u⁻(q)h-int^x m'a[?]ši(x)/ other-SIM-PAST dog bite-MOM

For some speakers, -(q)h is found in all topical NP predicates (regardless of the semantic class of the constituents), e.g. (570) and (571). For all speakers, -(q)h must be present in all NP predicates in which a quantifier is inflected as in (572). The special status of quantifiers reflects their function in establishing and delineating one set in relation to another, e.g. *all* versus *none* or *some* versus *other*.

Temporal and quantity RA's are rarely found preceding GS's. However, they do occur as example (573) demonstrates.

- (573) *su·twi·wi[?]a·q[?]tac* YOU'LL be found first
/sut-wi⁻a·wi(x) [L]-?a:q[?]-at-a^c/ you-first-find..-FUT-PASS-II(IND)

Such RA's are found most commonly in stems composed of roots or roots plus other RA's, or at least stem-finally as in (574) and (575).

- (574) *t'ut[?]uč[?]i[?]haa* A bunch were seeking sea urchins
/t'uč[?]i[?]b[FL]-aqa/ sea urchin-seek..-severally
- (575) *či[?]p[?]itspi:* He made him pull it down slowly
/či[?]-p[?]it-sa[?]p-aya [L]/ pull-at edge-MOMCAUS-slowly

4.8.5. Restrictive Affix Order

Two or more RA's adjacent in one base must conform to the following order: {QRA} > VRA > LRA > {ARA} . Once a GS is added to a base, any RA can again be added (given that any subsequent sequence of RA's follows the above order). Examples below illustrate the sequence constraints.

- (576) *xa[?]i[?]w[?]aqaqčiki[?]č* A bunch were laughing as they went along
/xa[?]i[?]x^{w-}aqa-qčik-(y)i:-č/ laugh-severally-go along- INDf-INF

- (577) *č'i·tapiqčkm' inh*
/č'it-api [L]-qčik-m' inh/
- (578) *hukʷist'a*
/hup-kʷist-'a·?a/
- (579) *qi·qi·?itap*
/qi·-č-it-api [RL+L]/
- (580) *sa·yičpi·tayiš hu*
/sayi-č-pi:t-aya [L]-?i·š .. /
 far-at-extending across-slowly-IND over there
- A bunch were moving sideways as they went along
 bank-in air-go along-PL
- There's the sun rising on the rocks
 round-go out of hole-at rocks
- He was in the house too long
 for long time-in house-too
- He's still too far away

The order of RA's is first of all a function of their semantic classes. The only complication arises with respect to the LRA's, which can either precede or follow VRA's. Some VRA's, such as *-qčik* 'go along', require that any adjacent LRA must precede; others, like *-kʷist* 'go out of hole', require that they follow. In addition, two VRA's, *-mat-* 'move about' and *-wi-* '(point) goes out (first)', must be followed by a RA, either locative, adjectival, or verbal.

- (581) *n'i·kmati·č'ač'k* guitar
/n'ik-mat-i·č'a [L]-č'ač'k/ scratch-move about-at bowstring-thing for..
- (582) **n'ikmat*
- (583) *hišwa's* EVERYONE'S going outside
/hiš-wi-·'as/ all-go out-outside
- (584) **hišwi*

The principles of VRA ordering are not yet fully determined. Clearly, however, the VRA, and not the LRA, determines which will precede the other.

It is still necessary to describe the principles governing the order of a sequence of RA's belonging to the same semantic class (either verbal, adjectival, or locative). A pair of adjacent TRA's or QRA's is considered either redundant or anomalous. The cooccurrence of VRA's is rare and typically involves *-mat-* 'move about'. A sequence of ARA's is more common than one of VRA's, but is idiosyncratic and cannot be

productively generated. The only principle evident is that *-t'i:na* 'slightly' and *-apa* [RL+L] 'too' tend to follow (and qualify) any other adjacent ARA.

- (585) *ñiħek'int-i:n* It was slightly reddish
/ñiħw-ck'in-t'i:na/ red-slightly-slightly

In contrast, a sequence of two or even three LRA's is common and accounts for most instances of adjacent RA's of the same semantic class and morphological (i.e. restrictive or governing) type. In a sequence of two LRA's, the peripheral or right-most affix indicates the general location or ground; the one to its left indicates the specific sublocation. The peripheral suffix commonly denotes a body part or a general location in the world, e.g. 'outside' *-as*, 'in the house, enclosure' *-eit*, or 'at the beach' *-eis*.

- (586) *y'ay'aqp'qn'uk* Her fingernails are long
/y'aq-p'aq-n'uk [R]/ long-at top-at hand

- (587) *hi·zabit* It's up in the air in the house
/hit-apि [L]-eit/ there-in air-in house

The ground can be expressed by other types of location sites as well.

- (588) *hitcin'aħs* It's in the bow of the boat
/hit-ca-yin-'aħs/ there-in direction of..-in bow-in vessel

- (589) *?a·phta·pinp* He separated them (up in the air)
/?ap-hta-api [L]-nup/ right at-apart-in air-MOMCAUS

The same figure-ground principle also governs sequences of three LRA's. Each LRA serves as the ground for the one to its left.

- (590) *kʷisitqu?a* It's at the other side of the point on
/kʷis.--(č)it-qu-?-a?-a/ the rocks
 other-at side-at point-at rocks

- (591) *hittqapa?* It's at the back of the neighbouring
/hit-tqa-pa-?as/ place outside
 there-at back-extending across-outside

There are in addition a very small number of LRA sequences which are not

subject to the figure-ground principle. At least some of these, such as (592) below, appear to be suffix compounds and hence prone to nonstandard processes of word formation and interpretation.

- (592) *hitinkʷaqʷ* It's in the corner
/hit-(w)inkʷ-aqʷ/ there-in corner-inside

Further research may reveal whether such sequences are lexical idiosyncracies or the remnants of older systems of affix organization. No instances of more than three adjacent LRA's are judged acceptable, although a stem can include more than three LRA's (or other suffixes) if they are not all associated with the same root or GS.

4.9. Other Morphemes and Morpheme Compounds

Three types of word constituents remain to be discussed: morpheme compounds, stem extenders, and cranberry morphemes. Although Nootka does not have compounds composed of roots, it does have many suffix compounds, i.e. semantic units whose content is not fully predictable as the sum of the meanings of their morphemes. The identification of a particular suffix sequence as a compound is difficult, partly because Nootka lexical affixes have ranges of reference which are far from being fully established. Nevertheless, elements such as the following appear to be compounds: *-aqʷ-as* 'in forest' ('inside-outside'), *-as-w-is* 'in sky' ('on-in enclosure'), *-as-w-is* 'under water' ('at-come to surface'), and *-i-c-as* 'carrying..along' ('possess..-at').

Suffix compounds are to be distinguished from suffix sequences which, due to regular morphophonemic and phonological processes, have forms which are nontransparent and appear fused, e.g. *-mi-či /-mət-či/* 'move about-in an enclosure' or *-(š)taqimbi /-(š)taq-(q)imbi/* 'bunches' ('..class-round'). Such sequences are not compounds because their semantic interpretation can be based on the sum of the contents of the constituent morphemes.

The second type of morpheme is the stem extender, which is equivalent to Malkiel's (1978:142) 'sub-morphemic augments'. Mary Haas (1972:83) has pointed out that the Nootka lexicon has families of roots. Each family consists of a CV form which is augmented by certain conson-

ants to form CVC and CVCC roots with related meanings. This system is unproductive but appears to be the remnant of a system operating more productively in an earlier time. Stem extenders are typically back non-ejective stops or fricatives: *k*, *kʷ*, *x*, *xʷ*, *q*, *qʷ*, *χ* and *h*. Sets of related roots in Kyuquot equivalent to those reported by Haas include the following: *hu-* 'lump', *hum-* 'whole, complete', *hunk-* 'bulging'; *ta-* 'drop', *taq-* 'throw soft things'; *qa-* 'puncture', *qat-* 'break (stick)', *qatqʷ-* 'amputate'; and *č'i-* 'cut', *č'ik-* 'cut'.

The third type of morpheme is the cranberry affix. Those used as stem-forming suffixes for nominal roots have already been discussed (cf. section 4.5). There are, in addition, a number of other affixes which can be isolated by the presence of the rest of the word in other stems. For example, the suffix *-s* 'do...' can be extracted from the form *qʷis* because of the independent existence of *qʷi-* 'which'. Some of these cranberry suffixes include: *-c* '..quantity' in *?umic* 'that much', *-(c)s-* 'attached', *-i·t* 'present (?)' in *wik'i·t* 'no one present', *-pu* 'more (?)' in *n'uppu* 'six' and *?axpu* 'seven', *-s* 'do...' in *qʷis* 'do which' and *?aqis-* 'do what?', *-st* 'from, down' in *?ust-* 'downwards', at enclosure' and *hist-* 'from there', and *-ših* 'begin to...' in *hūtikših* 'learn, begin to know'.

There is a marginal system of suppletive plural subject forms for verbal roots. Such suppletive forms include *hūuk* 'fly in a bunch', *hucc-* 'fall in a bunch', and *hūič* 'sleep in a bunch', which can be contrasted to *mat-* 'fly', *t'i-* 'fall', and *wa'ič* 'sleep'. This is also an unproductive system. It is possible that the suppletive plural *hū-* is related to the root *hu-* 'lump'. In addition, there are other roots associated with subject or objects which are plural, e.g. *tu-* 'handle many small objects', *č'u-* 'fish travel as a school', and *ša'xt-* 'many small objects make racket, hit confusedly'.

4.10. Word Structure Constraints

In Kyuquot, morphological principles of possible morpheme shape are virtually all violated (except those against vowel sequences and root-initial consonant clusters) in the surface forms of words, due to the operation of phonological and morphophonological processes.

Geminate consonant clusters can exist across morpheme boundaries.

- (593) ?i·^whsa He wanted to eat a big one
 /?i:^w-hsa/ big-want to eat..
- (594) ?appi·^t It's right in the middle
 /?ap-pi:^t/ right at-at middle, extending across

Consonant clusters including ejectives or an initial labialized consonant and word-final (or syllable-final) glottal, ejective, and resonant consonants can arise due to glottalization, vowel elision, and vowel loss.

- (595) ?u^wuk^wk^w He resembled him
 /?u-k^wuk [R]/ it-resembling..
- (596) tu^wcma^w the woman
 /tu^wcma-?i^w/ woman..DEF
- (597) ?u^wsta^w Work on something!
 /?u^ws-taq [L]-?i^w/ some-work on..-IMPV
- (598) m^wu^wkm^wu^wy He burnēd them over and over again
 /CVG#m^wu-[L]-(y)a/ IT-burn-GRAD-REP

One final principle of surface word structure is more fully discussed here. This is the constraint against reduplicative morphemes.

Nootka can have reduplicative morphemes from several sources:

1. the iterative CVG# (actually $CV\{\overset{\lambda}{C(C)}\} \#$), which is used to indicate iterative or repetitive aspect and is obligatorily accompanied by either -^wSPOR or .-[L]..-(y)a GRAD REP;
2. the distributive CV# affix; and
3. the parasynthetic reduplicative affixoids which are obligatorily associated with certain lexical affixes. These latter reduplicative forms associate only with VGS's, AGS's, LRA's, and ARA's. In some suffixes, the reduplicative portion associated with them is optional or can alternate with some other reduplicative type. Examples include -i^wk^w[R] ~ [RL] ~ Ø 'given to..', -in^wuk^wh [R] ~ [RL] 'look on at..', and, -u: [L] ~ [RL] 'do with..'. The parasynthetic reduplicative types are listed below in Table 27.

TABLE 26. PARASYNTHETIC REDUPLICATIVE PATTERNS

| Type | Form Shape | Number | Example | Gloss | Class |
|--------|------------|--------|-----------------|----------------|-------|
| [R] | CV# | | -k'uk [R] | 'resembling..' | AGS |
| [R+L] | CV#CV... | 6 | -a'n'ut [R+L] | 'at the leg' | LRA |
| [RL] | CV# | 5 | -as [RL] | 'at the wrist' | LRA |
| [RL+L] | CV#CV... | 2 | -apa [RL+L] | 'too, very' | ARA |
| [Rc+L] | CVC#CV... | 1 | -(c)sut [Rc+L] | 'at the eye' | LRA |
| [RcL] | CV·c# | 1 | -(c)st'at [RcL] | 'reciprocally' | ARA |

There is only one pair of reduplicative morphemes which can be present at once in a surface stem, the CV# distributive and the CVC# iterative.

- (599) *mimi·tmitx* They were turning repeatedly here and there
/CV#CVC#mitx-[L]-(y)a/ distrib-IT-turn-GRAD-REP

Such stems are uncommon and are typically considered odd or redundant. In addition, CV# and CVC# can cooccur only if accompanied by -[L]-(y)a and hence not by -*x* SPOR as in **mimitxmitx*.

CV# cannot accompany a parasynthetic reduplicative affix.

- (600) *?u·?u·hw'atap* He used it too much
/?u-hw'at [L]-apa [RL+L]/ it-use..-too

- (601) *?u?u·hw'at* He used it here and there
/CV#?u-hw'at-[L]/ distrib-it-use..

- (602) **?u?u·?uhw'atap*

Nor can CVC# accompany a parasynthetic reduplicative affix. If a stem including such an affix is iterative, the iteration is expressed not by reduplication but by a suffix, e.g. -*i:b* [L+S] SPOR or -*y'i:h* 'excessively', or an independent stem such as *?umac'k* 'occasionally'.

- (603) *?u·?uty'iks:i:t* He started to fear it every now and then
/?u-ity'ik [RL]-?i:(n)-i:b [L+S]/ it-fear..-MOM-SPOR

**?u?u·?uty'iks*, **?u·?u?uty'iks*

This particular precedence relation is really due to the restriction of

iterative reduplication to bases which are monosyllabic up to the associated iterative or repetitive suffix, -s SPOR or -(y)a REP. If a base is rendered multisyllabic by a parasynthetic reduplicative affix, iterative reduplication cannot apply.

More than one suffix obligatorily triggering reduplication can be present in a stem. However, the only reduplicative affix present in the surface form is the one which is higher (i.e. more leftward) in the following hierarchy (regardless of the order of the suffixal portions of the affixes): [RL+L] > {[R+L], [Rc+L], [RL]} > [RcL]. If a stem includes two parasynthetic affixes with the same reduplication pattern, the pattern occurs only once. No stems judged grammatical include suffixes associated with the [R+L] and [Rc+L], [Rc+L] and [RL], or [R+L] and [RL] patterns of reduplication. Also, [R]-triggering suffixes have been found to accompany only [RL+L] ones.

There are stems whose affixes are only optionally associated with a reduplicative sequence, e.g. -i:h [R] ~ [L] ~ [R+L] 'out to get..' or -(c)st'at [RLc] ~ Ø 'reciprocally'. When such an affix accompanies another reduplication-triggering morpheme, the nonreduplicative variant is selected.

(604) *kə·mit̪i·het̪t̪*

/kamit̪w-i:h [L]-(c)st'at̪/

They were running after each other

run-out to get..-reciprocally

Further analysis may reveal grammatical stems in which a CV-triggering suffix coexists with another reduplication-triggering suffix.

Examples of the cooccurrence possibilities for parasynthetic affixes are given below. The dominant reduplication pattern in each example is underlined.

(605) *ñ'u·ñ'u·k'an·zap*

/ñ'uk-a-n'ul [R+L]-apa [RL+L]/

His legs are really big

broad-at leg-really

(606) *pu·cpu·mat̪-sít̪ap*

/pumat̪-(c)sít̪ [Rc+L]-apa [RL+L]/

He has really itchy eyes

itchy-at eye-very

(607) *m'a·m'a·z'ast̪ap*

/m'at̪.-'as [RL]-apa [RL+L]/

He has really cold wrists

cold-at wrist-really

- (608) *m' a·m' a·byimbap*
/m' a·-yimb [R]-apa [RL+L]/

He's really cold in the shoulders
 cold-at shoulder-really

- (609) *kuku·exan'bst'at*
/kucx-a·n'ut [R+L]-(c)st'at [RcL]/
 tickle-along leg-reciprocally

They were tickling each other's
 legs

- (610) *hichi·sutst'at*
/his-(c)sut [RcL]-(c)st'at [RcL]/
 hit-at eye-reciprocally

They were hitting each other in
 the eye

- (611) *mi·mitw'isst'at*
/mitxw-·as [RL]-(c)st'at [RcL]/
 turn-at wrist-reciprocally

They were twisting each other's
 wrists

Words generated to test the effect of different parasynthetic affixes in the same stem are generally considered contrived. Potential stems bearing conflicting reduplicative sequences may, in fact, be generally blocked from usage.

Vowel lengthening affixes can also coexist in a stem in a fashion somewhat parallel to that of reduplicative affixes. The operation of vowel lengthening applies once only to a certain target vowel. For example, in the following stem, the root *gut-* does not undergo vowel lengthening twice because it is accompanied by two vowel-lengthening morphemes.

- (612) *gut'hw'atma^{kw}*
/gut-hw'at [L]-ma^{kw} [L]/

He's an expert at using a knife
 knife-use..-expert at..

Similarly, an inherently long root vowel is not further lengthened if accompanied by a vowel lengthening suffix. Contrast the following stems.

- (613) *nu·tkšin*
/nu·tk-ši(n)/

He went around it
 circle-MOM

- (614) *nu·pkšin*
/nu·tk-[L]-ši(n)/

He gradually went around it
 circle-GRAD-MOM

The short-long vowel distinction correlated with nongraduative and graduative aspect is hence neutralized for verbal stems with inherently long root vowels.

4.11. Summary

4.11.1. Morphological Summary

Kyuquot morphology is complex. All words inflect except for certain conjunctions, interjections, onomatopoetic words, and the article. One set of morphemes, the vowel quality or quantity changing morphemes, attach to both words and particles.

Kyuquot inflectional suffixes indicate likelihood (e.g. probable, conditional, irrealis), source of evidence (e.g. quotation, hearsay, inference), tense, voice, possession, iterativity, diminutivity, and person and number of subject and third person plural object. Matrix predicates inflect more freely than subordinate predicates or adjunct NP's. The latter ones inflect for certain moods and tenses, but generally only in association with the definite *-?i-*. Predicative inflectional affixes can be absent if identical to those of preceding matrix predicates. Finally, inflectional morphemes do not appear to have a unique clause position and, although sometimes dependent for meaning on the stem to which they are attached, they are not bound to particular stem-sites as are lexical affixes.

The primary Kyuquot aspectual affixes are mostly derivational and indicate the following aspects: perfective (momentaneous), inceptive, continuative, iterative (sporadic or repetitive), durative (stative), and graduative (slowly). Habituality is indicated by a post-predicative clitic. Secondary aspectual affixes and stems also denote the telic, perfect, prospective, and retrospective aspects. Roots and stems vary as to which aspectual affixes they can take. Only the perfective or perfective inceptive (i.e. momentaneous) and the sporadic iterative are common.

Kyuquot has relatively few roots and many nonderivational (lexical) affixes. Most roots are semantically verbal, adjectival, or nominal. A very few are locative, quantifier, quantity, or temporal. Most roots are augmented by a governing, restrictive, absolute (recurring but nonmeaningful), or cranberry (nonrecurring) suffix to serve as a stem. Verbal roots are typically augmented by an aspectual GS and nominal ones by a nonaspectual GS. Nasal-final or vowel-final nominal bases are

affixed by *-q-* to form a combining form, used preceding certain lexical suffixes. The choice of stem-forming suffix is not, for the most part, predictable.

A stem includes a root plus, optionally, suffixes, infixes, and reduplicative morphemes. Affixes are classed as governing or restrictive on the basis of their influence on the semantic class of their base and their grammatical relation to it. Governing suffixes are largely verbal, adjectival, and nominal, the latter including classifiers, counter classifiers, and true nominalizers. There are also a few governing locative, temporal, and quantity suffixes. GS's can govern a NP object or a sentential complement. In the general case, the suffix attaches to the dominant constituent of the NP (where quantifier > quantity > adjectival > nominal) or sentence (where predicate > object/ complement) which it governs. Alternatively it attaches to the referential *?u-* 'he, she, it' which serves as a proform of the governed constituent. Such constituent 'incorporation' is largely structure-preserving, although the governing of conjoined constituents may not be. Certain GS's are classic derivational morphemes, producing stems, determining their semantic class, and unable to govern multistem constituents.

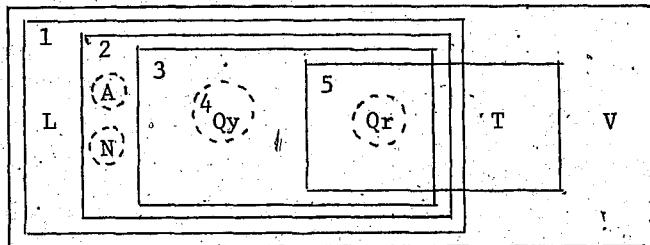
Every stem has a semantic class equivalent to that of the stem's rightmost GS or of the root if the stem contains no GS's. The semantic classes, abbreviated as V, T, L, Qr, Qy, A, and N, have grammatical correlates.

1. When bases of the classes N, A, Qy, Qr, or L are affixed by *-ši(λ)* MOM, the stem resulting is aspectually perfective inceptive; when bases of the classes T and V are thus affixed, the stem is perfective.
2. Bases of the classes N, A, Qy, and Qr can serve as one-stem NP's without affixation by *-?i* DEF; bases of other classes cannot.
3. Two Qy or two Qr bases cannot be adjacent in a NP; two bases of any other semantic class can.
4. A suffix governing Qy conjuncts can attach to either or both of them; one governing conjuncts of any other class must attach to both.
5. Qr or T bases can dominate a following GS; bases of other classes must be governed by a following GS.
6. The hierarchy of NP constituents (Qr > Qy > A > N) determining which

will serve as inflected stem in a NP predicate and as base to a GS, distinguishes Qr, Qy, A, and N from one another.

In the following diagram, each boundary encloses the semantic classes of bases which share one of the above characteristics (identified by its number). Characteristic 6 uniquely defines each of four classes, which are bounded by broken lines.

FIGURE 7: WORD CLASSES BY GRAMMATICAL FEATURES



The restrictive affixes are largely locative, indicating locations at a body part, man-made object, or abstract geometric configuration, or in nature, with secondary meaning extensions into the other domains.

There are also restrictive verbal affixes, denoting mostly spatial movements, and a few restrictive adjectival, temporal, and quantity affixes, denoting manner (or benefactee involvement), time, and plurality.

Restrictive affixes do not change the semantic class of a stem. If a LRA or VRA attaches to a predicative NP or a constituent of a NP, the grammatical relation of the base to the affix is analogous to that of a topical predicate to its embedded predicate, with the NP coreferential to the subject of the clause. Other RA's behave like manner adverbials.

LRA's and VRA's assign aspect (durative and continuous respectively) to a stem. A LRA must be affixed by a momentaneous morpheme if the stem is to be perfective, even if the root is inherently perfective. Most LRA's (and some ARA's) are transitive and govern a syntactically independent object.

Restrictive affixes are strictly ordered within a base by semantic class: $\{Qy\} > V > L > \{A\}$. No more than three RA's of different semantic classes can be adjacent, while only two RA's (three if locative) of the same semantic class can be adjacent. The ordering of LRA's and

VRA's appears to depend on the choice of the VRA. Similarly, the ordering of VRA's or ARA's depends on the identity of particular affixes. In contrast, the ordering of LRA's reflects a figure-ground relationship in which a left-hand affix represents the specified site within a more general location (the 'ground'), represented by the right-hand suffix.

In addition to inherent and morphemic reduplication and vowel lengthening, Nootka has parasynthetic vowel lengthening and six types of reduplication obligatorily associated with certain suffixes. Generally, when parasynthetic processes operate on a stem, the same type of morphemic process cannot. Although more than one affix with parasynthetic reduplication can be present in an underlying stem, only one reduplicative sequence is present in the surface form. The choice of sequence is based on a hierarchy of reduplicative patterns.

4.11.2. Typology

Nootka morphological structure, and the principles underlying that structure, is not unique. It is compatible with Greenberg's (1963:112) morphological universals. In addition, Sherzer (1976:56-83), in his work on the areal features of North American Indian languages, makes observations concerning certain areal features of morphology which can be compared to those of Nootka.

Nootka is typical of Northwest languages (i.e. those of the Northwest Coast culture area: the coast of British Columbia, Washington, and Oregon). It is polysynthetic and employs suffixes to indicate location, tense, aspect, and mood. The evidential mood is particularly characteristic of the Northwest area. Word-initial reduplication of verbal stems indicates plurality of participants, distribution, repetition, and iteration. There are form-shape classifiers, constituting in Nootka part of a counter affix system. Alienable and inalienable possession are distinguished (by affix) as are singular and plural (by distinct root forms for pronouns and by affix for nominals).

Nootka is typical of central Northwest languages (i.e. the Lower Chinook, Coast Salish, Chemakuan, and Wakashan groups) in having nominal reduplication for diminutive (cf. *sk'win [R]* 'little...'), and plural (for distributed or kin-denoting entities) and suffixes for possessor

or subject pronominals. Nootka is unlike the central subarea in having neither gender nor visibility distinctions, nor diminutive reduplication in verbal stems.

Finally, Nootka possesses many features characteristic of its family, Wakashan. It is predominately a suffixing language and uses many nonderivational lexical affixes, most of which are locative. It has many derivational affixes, a large portion of which can govern a NP or sentential complement. It has a complex inflectional system which includes a number of morphemes with quasi-derivational characteristics (e.g. the definite and passive morphemes). The morphophonology is typical of Wakashan languages and includes processes of glottalization, lenition, reduplication, and vowel lengthening, in part triggered by suffixes. Nootka, and Southern Wakashan in general, differ from Northern Wakashan in expressing aspectual, but neither inclusive-exclusive nor visible-invisible, distinctions morphologically.

4.11.3. Further Research

In this final section are set out some of the problems of Nootka morphology which would profit from further investigation. Inflection is discussed first. Diachronic work is necessary to establish the sources of the variable position and function of *-wu:s* IRREL and the phonological idiosyncracies of mood-person paradigms. The semantic interpretation and function of cooccurring moods and moods is not well understood. Similarly, the interaction of tense with aspect and mood merits further research, as do the functions of the declarative moods (ABS, IND, and INDF) and the distribution of aspectual and inflectional morphemes among constituents of different semantic and grammatical classes. Finally, one needs to investigate the functional overlap of inflectional and derivation suffixes.

The aspect system of Nootka also requires a deeper study into the influence of semantic anomaly and lexical idiosyncracy on cooccurrence restrictions and into the semantic and functional overlap of aspectual categories. Investigation of the diachronic history of the aspect morphemes would help account for the perfective allomorphs in particular. For example, the perfective form for vowel-final suffixes, *-iñu(k)* MOM, is possibly a trace of a time when some affixes were nasal-final. The

analysis of an aspectual system such as that found in Nootka can contribute to further clarification of aspectual categories.

The Nootka noninflectional morphemes each belong to a semantic class but some, such as those denoting temporal quantities and perceptual events, are hard to assign to a class. It is also necessary to investigate correlations between semantically and grammatically defined classes in Nootka. A number of problems accompany any effort to formulate a Nootka lexicon. It is difficult to tell whether a morpheme or morpheme sequence constitutes a lexeme, a lexeme with metaphorical extensions, or a set of homonyms. Finally, the nature of stem formation, e.g. the choice of base form associated with a particular suffix, suggests that many stems must be in the lexicon as entries. Diachronic research on stem-forming suffixes might help account for the association of certain affixes and affix-types with certain roots and certain root-types. The productivity of word formation rules presents certain problems as well, e.g. the range of affix types associated with implicit derivation and the range of stem types resulting from it; the limits on number of affixes or of affix types within a stem or a base; and the sources and degrees of interspeaker variation, as in the choice of nominal plural forms. It is not clear if such variation is free or correlates with age, dialect, etc.

The choice between a morphological and a syntactic expression in Nootka is influenced by many factors. Those requiring further investigation include the avoidance of syntactically complex constituents governed by GS's and the gradual historical change in favor of syntactically more complex multi-word expressions at the expense of morphologically complex stems (or at least the innovation of such stems).

There are also problems of morphophonology. It is necessary to more intensively investigate the diachronic sources of reduplication and vowel lengthening suffixes and the surface outcomes of stems in which such morphemes cooccur. The diachronic sources of obligatorily long vowels also warrant research. At least half of the obligatorily long affix vowels can be derived from truncated sequences of glides and vowels.

Finally, the phonotactics and phonology suggest other interesting

problems, e.g. morpheme-medial consonant cluster constraints; the status of mid-vowels in the vowel inventory; and the influence on phonotactics of the deviant speech habits of story characters, e.g. Mink's -*x*- infix, Pitchwoman's -*hV*- infix, Elk's nasality, and Deer's replacement of *s* by *t* and of *c* by *k*. It would also be valuable to follow the history of the violation of phonotactic constraints resulting from the incorporation of English loans. For example, the homorganic cluster constraint against morpheme-final clusters of consonants with the same place of articulation was violated much earlier in Nootka than was the constraint against root-initial clusters.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Anderson, John. 1973. *An Essay Concerning Aspect*. The Hague: Mouton.
- Andrade, Manuel J. 1953. Relations between Nootka and Quileute.
IJAL 19.138-40.
- Aronoff, Mark. 1976. *Word Formation in Generative Grammar*. Cambridge: MIT Press.
- Bach, Emmon. 1968. Nouns and Noun Phrases. *Universals in Linguistic Theory*. ed. by Emmon Bach & Robert Harms, 91-124. New York: Holt, Rinehart, & Winston.
- . 1977. Comments on the Paper by Chomsky. *Formal Syntax*. ed. by Peter W. Culicover, Thomas Wasow, & Adrian Akmajian, 133-56. New York: Academic Press.
- Bailey, Charles-James. 1973. *Variation and Linguistic Theory*. Arlington, Va.: Center for Applied Linguistics.
- Boas, Franz. 1890a. The Kwakiutl. *Report of the 60th Meeting of the British Association for the Advancement of Science (BAAS-R 60)*, 655-79.
- . 1890b. The Nootka. *BAAS-R 60*. 582-604.
- . 1900. Sketch of the Kwakiutl Language. *AmAn 2*. 708-21.
- . 1911. Introduction. *Handbook of American Indian Languages*, Part 1.1-83. (Bureau of American Ethnology, Bulletin 40) Washington: Government Printing Office.
- . 1916. Vocabularies of the Northwest Coast of America. *AmAnthSoc 26*. 185-202.
- . 1917. Introductory. *IJAL 1*. 1-8.
- . 1929. Classification of American Indian Languages. *Lg. 5*. 1-7.
- . 1932. Notes on Some Recent Changes in the Kwakiutl Language.
IJAL 7. 90-3.
- . 1947. *Kwakiutl Grammar with a Glossary of the Suffixes*. Op. posth. ed. by Helen Boas Yampolsky & Zellig S. Harris. *Transactions of the American Philosophical Society 37:3*. 201-377. Philadelphia.
- Boas, H. 1975. *Syntactic Generalizations and Linear Order in Generative Grammar*. Tübingen: Verlag Gunter Narr.
- Brame, Michael. 1978. The Base Hypothesis and the Spelling Prohibition.
LingAnal 4:1.1-30.
- . 1979. *Essays toward Realistic Syntax*. Seattle: Noit Amrofer.
- Carlson, Barry F. & John Thomas. 1979. The Nitinaht Inferential.
AnthLing Oct. 317-27.
- Carroll, John B. & Michael Tanenhaus. 1975. Prolegomena to a Theory of Word Formation. *Papers from the Parasession on Functionalism*. ed. by Robin Grossman, James San, & Timothy Vance, 47-62. Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Society.

- Chomsky, Noam. 1970. Remarks on Nominalization. *Readings in English Transformational Grammar*. ed. by Roderick A. Jacobs & Peter S. Rosenbaum. Waltham, Mass: Ginn & Co.
- . 1973. Conditions on Transformations. *Festschrift for Morris Halle*. ed. by Stephen Anderson & Paul Kiparsky, 232-307.
- . 1977. On wh-Movement. *Formal Syntax*. ed. by Peter W. Culicover, Thomas Wasow, & Adrian Akmajian, 71-132. New York: Academic Press.
- Comrie, Bernard. 1976. *Aspect*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Dahl, Osten. 1974. *Topic and Comment, Contextual Boundedness and Focus*. Hamburg: Helmut Buske Verlag.
- Drucker, Philip. 1951. *The Northern and Central Nootkan Tribes*. Bureau of American Ethnology Bulletin 144.1-480.
- Fiengo, Robert & H. Lasnik. 1976. Some Issues in the Theory of Transformations. *Linguistic Inquiry* 7.82-191.
- Frachtenberg, L. 1920. Abnormal Types of Speech in Quileute. *IJAL* 1.295-9.
- Friedrich, Paul. 1975. The Lexical Symbol and its Relative Non-Arbitrariness. *Linguistics and Anthropology*. ed. by M. Dale Kinkade, Kenneth Hale, & Oswald Werner, 200-48. Lisse: Peter de Ridder Press.
- Greenberg, Joseph H. 1963. Some Universals of Grammar with Respect to the Order of Meaningful Elements. *Universals of Language*. ed. by Joseph H. Greenberg, 73-113. Cambridge: MIT Press.
- Gruber, Jeff. 1976. *Lexical Structures in Syntax and Semantics*. Amsterdam: North-Holland.
- Haas, Mary. 1960. Some Genetic Affiliations of Argonkian. *Culture in History: Essays in Honor of Paul Radin*. ed. by Stanley Diamond, 977-92. New York: Columbia University Press.
- . 1969. Internal Reconstruction of the Nootka-Nitinat Prolinal Suffixes. *IJAL* 35.108-24.
- . 1972. The Structure of Stems and Roots in Nootka-Nitinat. *IJAL* 38.83-92.
- Haas, Mary & Morris Swadesh. 1933. A Visit to Another World, A Nitinat Text. *IJAL* 7.195-208.
- Haas, W. 1978. Linguistics 1930 - 1980. *JLing* 14:2.293-309.
- Halliday, M.A.K. 1977. Text as a Semantic Choice in Social Contexts. *Grammars and Descriptions*. ed. by Teuk A. van Dijk & Janos Petofi, 178-225. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter.
- Hankamer, J. 1973. Unacceptable Ambiguity. *Linguistic Inquiry* 4.17-68.
- Hellberg, S. 1978. Unnatural Phonology. *JLing* 14:2.157-79.
- Hinds, John. 1978. Anaphora in Japanese Conversation. *Anaphora in Discourse*. ed. by John Hinds, 136-79. Edmonton: Linguistic Research.

- Hockett, Charles F. 1958. *A Course in Modern Linguistics*. New York: The Macmillan Co.
- Hooper, Joan B. 1976. *An Introduction to Natural Generative Phonology*. New York: Academic Press.
- Hust, Joel. 1978. Lexical Redundancy Rules and the Unpassive Construction. *LingAnal* 3.137-76.
- Jackendoff, Ray. 1977. *X Syntax: A study of Phrase Structures*. Cambridge: MIT Press.
- Jacobsen Jr., William. 1968. Traces of Glottalized Resonants in Makah. LSA Paper.
- . 1969a. Labialization in Nootkan. *ICSL* 4.
- . 1969b. Origin of the Nootka Pharyngeals. *IJAL* 35.125-53.
- . 1971. Makah Vowel Insertion and Loss. *ICSL* 6.
- . 1973. The Pattern of Makah Pronouns. *ICSL* 8.
- . 1976. Noun and Verb in Nootkan. The Victoria Conference on Northwestern Languages. *Heritage Record* 4.83-153. Victoria, B.C.: British Columbia Provincial Museum.
- . 1978. Makah Vocative Vocalism. *ICSL* 13.
- . 1979. Wakashan Comparative Studies. *The Languages of Native America: Historical and Comparative Assessment*. ed. by Lyle Campbell & Marianne Mithun, 766-91. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Jakobson, Roman & Linda R. Waugh. 1979. *The Sound Shape of Language*. Bloomington: Indian University Press.
- Jewitt, John R. 1815. *A Narrative of the Adventures and Sufferings of John R. Jewitt*;... Middletown, Conn.
- Kenstowicz, Michael & Charles Kisseeberth. 1977. *Topics in Phonological Theory*. New York: Academic Press.
- Kent, R. & Frank Minifie. 1977. Coarticulation in Recent Speech Production Models. *JPhonetics* 5:2.115-35.
- Kenyon, Susan M. 1980. *The Kyuquot Way: A Study of a West Coast (Nootkan) Community*. National Museum of Man Mercury Series. Canadian Ethnology Service Paper 61. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada.
- Kinkade, M. Dale. 1969. *Lexical Suffixes in Mosan Languages*. Conference on American Indian Languages 8. New Orleans.
- . 1977. Evidence against the Universality of 'Noun' and 'Verb': Salish. Canadian Linguistic Association Paper.
- Kiparsky, Paul. 1968. Phonological Representation. *Three Dimensions of Linguistic Theory*. ed. by O. Fujimura, 1-136. Tokyo: TEC Co.
- . 1971. Historical Linguistics. *A Survey of Linguistic Science*. ed. by William Orr Dingwall, 33-63. Stamford, Conn: Greylock Publ.
- Klokeid, Terry. 1968. Linguistic Acculturation in Nitinaht. *ICSL* 3.

- Klokeid, Terry. 1969. Notes on the Comparison of Wakashan and Salish. *University of Hawaii Working Papers in Linguistics* 1:7.1-19.
- _____. 1970. Output Restraints on Nitinat Auxiliaries. *ICSL* 5.
- _____. 1974. Output Conditions, Semantic Interpretation, and Nitinat Auxiliaries. *ICSL* 9.
- _____. 1975. Abstractness and Variable Vowels in Tseshahst. Canadian Linguistic Association Paper.
- _____. 1976a. The Syntax of Prepositions in Nitinat. *Rocky Mountain Linguistic Association*.
- _____. 1976b. Encliticization in Nitinaht. *ICSL* 11.
- _____. 1977. Syntactic and Conceptual Relations in Nitinat. *ICSL* 12.
- _____. 1978. Surface Structure Constraints and Nitinaht Enclitics. *Linguistic Structures of Native Canada*. ed. by Eung-Do Cook & Jonathan Kaye, 157-76. Vancouver: UBC Press.
- Knipe, C. 1868. *Some Account of the Tahkaht Language*. London.
- Koppert, Vincent A. 1930. *Contributions to Clayoquot Ethnology*. Catholic University of America Anthropology Series 1.1-124. Washington, D.C.
- Kuno, Susumu. 1975. Three Perspectives in the Functional Approach to Syntax. *Papers from the Parassession on Functionalism*. ed. by Robin E. Grossman et al., 276-336. Chicago: Chicago Linguistic Soc.
- Labov, William. 1975. *What is a Linguistic Fact?* Lisse: Peter de Ridder Press.
- Lehmann, Winfred P. ed. 1978. *Syntactic Typology*. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Lincoln, Neville J. & John C. Rath. 1980. *North Wakashan Comparative Root List*. National Museum of Man Mercury Series. Canadian Ethnology Service Paper 68. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada.
- Linell, Per. 1977. On the Place of Morphology in a Grammar: Reply to Ureland. *Folia Linguistica* 10:1/2.85-97.
- McCawley, James D. 1968. Lexical Insertion in a Transformational Grammar without Deep Structure. *Papers from the Fourth Meeting of the Chicago Linguistic Society*, 71-80. Chicago: University of Chicago.
- _____. 1979. Epiphenomenal Syntax. Milwaukee Syntax Conference Paper.
- Malkiel, Yakov. 1978. Derivational Categories. *Universals of Human Language*. ed. by Joseph Greenberg, 3.125-50. Stanford: Stanford University Press.
- Merleau-Ponty, Maurice. 1973. *The Prose of the World*. Evanston: Northwestern University Press.
- Moon, Barbara & Peter Webster. 1975. Ghost Naming in the West Coast Languages. *ICSL* 10.
- Mozino, Jose W. 1970. *Noticias de Nutka: An Account of Nootka Sound in 1792*. trans. and ed. by Iris Higbie Wilson. Seattle: University of

Washington Press.

- Newmeyer, Frederick J. 1980. *Linguistic Theory in America*. New York: Academic Press.
- Paik, Tai Shung. 1968. Clayoquot Phonology. Master's Thesis. University of Washington.
- Powell, J.W. 1891. Indian Linguistic Families of America North of Mexico. Bureau of American Ethnology Report 7.7-139. Washington, D.C.
- Reichling, A.J.B.N., E.M. Uhlenbeck & W. Sidney Allen, eds. 1967. Preface. *Word Classes (= Lingua 17:1/2)*, i-ii.
- Robinson, Kimball. 1978. Generative Phonology and Phonological Identification. *JPhonetica* 6:3.203-13.
- Roca, I. 1976. Who is Afraid of Universal Statements? *JPhonetica* 4:2.83-91.
- Rose, Suzanne M. 1976. Lenition and Glottalization in Nootka. Master's Thesis. University of Victoria.
- Rosenberg, Sheldon. ed. 1977. *Sentence Production*. Hillsdale, N.J.: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Ross, John Robert. 1973. Nouniness. *Three Dimensions of Linguistic Theory*. ed. by O. Fujimura, 137-259. Tokyo: TEC Co.
- Sanders, Gerald. 1972. *Equational Grammar*. The Hague: Mouton.
- Sapir, Edward. 1911. Some Aspects of Nootka Language and Culture. *AmAnth* 13.15-28.
- . 1915. Abnormal Types of Speech in Nootka. Canada Dept. of Mines, Geological Survey. National Museum of Canada Memoir 62. Ottawa.
- . 1916. Time Perspective in Aboriginal Culture: A Study in Method. Canada Department of Mines, Geological Survey. National Museum of Canada Memoir 70. Ottawa.
- . 1921. *Language*. New York: Harcourt, Brace and World.
- . 1924. The Rival Whales - A Nitinat Story. *IJAL* 3.76-102.
- . 1929a. Nootka Baby Words. *IJAL* 5.118-9.
- . 1929b. Central and North American Languages. *Encyclopaedia Britannica* (14th ed.) 5.138-41.
- . 1930. List of Nootka Stems. Unpublished. Franz Boas Collection, American Philosophical Society. Philadelphia.
- . 1938. Glottalized Continuants in Navaho, Nootka and Kwakiutl (with a note on Indo-European). *Lg.* 248-74.
- . 1951. Wakashan Comparative Vocabularies. Unpublished. Franz Boas Collection.
- Sapir, Edward & Morris Swadesh. 1939a. *Nootka Texts: Tales and Ethnological Narratives with Grammatical Notes and Lexical Materials*. Philadelphia: Linguistic Society of America.

- Sapir, Edward & Morris Swadesh. 1939b. *Native Accounts of Nootka Ethnography*. Indiana University Research Center in Anthropology, Folklore and Linguistics 1.1-457 (reprinted as *IJAL* 21.4/2 1955).
- Schane, Sanford. 1973. *Generative Phonology*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall Inc.
- Sherzer, Joel. 1976. *An Areal-Typological Study of American Indian Languages North of Mexico*. Amsterdam: North-Holland.
- Simon, H.A. 1962. The Architecture of Complexity. *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society* 106.467-82.
- Sproat, Gilbert. 1868. *Scenes and Studies of Savage Life*. London.
- Strange, J. 1928. *J. Strange's Journal*. Madras: Government Press.
- Swadesh, Morris. 1930. Material on Nootka Aspect. Unpublished. Franz Boas Collection.
- . 1933. Internal Economy of the Nootka Word. Doctoral Dissertation. Yale University.
- . 1937. Nootka Phonology and Morphology. Unpublished. Franz Boas Collection.
- . 1939. Nootka Internal Syntax. *IJAL* 9.77-102.
- . 1948. A Structural Trend in Nootka. *Word* 4.106-19.
- . 1949. The Linguistic Approach to Salish Prehistory. *Indians of the Urban Northwest*, ed. by M. Smith, 161.
- . 1952. English-Nootka Vocabulary. Unpublished. Franz Boas Collection.
- . 1953a. Mosan I: A Problem of Remote Common Origin. *IJAL* 19. 26-44.
- . 1953b. Mosan II: Comparative Vocabularies. *IJAL* 19.223-36.
- . 1953c. Salish-Wakashan Lexical Comparisons noted by Boas. *IJAL* 19.290-1.
- . 1962. Linguistic Relations across the Bering Strait. *AmAn* 64.1264-91.
- Thompson, Laurence G. 1970. The Northwest. *University of Hawaii Working Papers in Linguistics* 2:5.1-159. Cf. *Linguistics in North America. Current Trends in Linguistics* 10.
- . 1976. The Control System: A Major Category in the Grammar of Salishan Languages. The Victoria Conference on Northwestern Languages. *Heritage Record* 4.156-76. Victoria, B.C.: British Columbia Provincial Museum.
- Tolmie, W. & G. Dawson. 1884.. Comparative Vocabularies. Montreal.
- Tyler, Stephen. 1978. *The Said and the Unsaid*. New York: Academic Press.
- Vennemann, Theo. 1974. Phonological Concreteness in Natural Generative Grammar. *Towards Tomorrow's Linguistics*. ed. by Roger Shuy & C.-J. Bailey, 202-20. Washington: Georgetown University Press.
- Whorf, Benjamin L. 1945. Grammatical Categories. *Lg.* 21.1-11.

APPENDIX : GOVERNING AND RESTRICTIVE AFFIXES

In the following list, the semantic classes of predicates are given for sentential complements serving as bases for governing affixes. The abbreviation *O* indicates object.

1. Governing Verbal Affixes

1.1. NP Object Base

| | | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|----------------|------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| -'ap [L] | buy.. | -hta | do to.. | -k'wayi·h [L] | try to get.. |
| -a·ta | sell.. | -hwat [L] | use.. | -ñ [R(L+L)] | dream of.. |
| -a·wi(ñ) [L] | find.. | -hwink [L] | use.. | -ma·c' [L] | gossip re.. |
| -awiqš | invite.. | -?i: | go to.. | -ma:p | pay attention to .. |
| -a·yi | give.. | -'i·c | eat.. | -ma·s (~ms) [L] | bring .. home |
| -cah [R+L] | depend on.. | -i·cs | carry..along | -(n)a:nk | bring.. |
| -ca·q [L] | prepare..food | -ih | go to..place | -na·h (~-·inh) | seek.. |
| -caqa | busy fixing.. | -i:h [(R)+(L)] | try to get, catch.. | -(q)apt | impersonate.. |
| -cama | go to..place | -iż [R] | sleep with.. | -sa?i:p | give gift to.. |
| -chin [L] | do for.. | -i(ñ) [L] | invite.. | -sc [RL] | defend.. |
| -ciñh | use..as fuel | -imc' [R+L] | entertain.. | -si:kw | finish.. |
| -(c)sma | defend.. | -(.')int | serve..food | -syi·p | go to..place with gift |
| -(c)snañ(a:)t [L] | tease, handle.. | -inuk' (h) [L] | watch.. | -sahp | act like..animal |
| -c'a:s | bet.. | -i:p (~-i·yip) | get, obtain.. | -(s)ti:s | copy.. |
| -c'im?ak [L] | do in hon- our of.. | -?i:p | ..give.. | -taq [L] | work on.. |
| -c'inaq- [L] | talk about.. | -i·tya·p | bring..as gift | -taq- [L] | come from.. |
| -c'us | talk about | -ityik [RL] | fear.. | -(y)ini:p | leave..behind |
| -(c)iż [L] | ..person refer to.. | -iyaqh | tell..story | -yi·q | go by..vehicle |
| -(c)i·ż | make.. | -(k)ş [L] | ask for.. | -(y)u:?ab | perceive.. |
| | | | | -yit | send disease into.. |

1.2. Sentential Base

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|
| -'ap | cause to (be).. A,L,NP,Qy,V | -mañaqñ | want to (be).. A,L,NP,V |
| -'as | so in order to..V | -p'icñh | do while.. V-ing |
| -ay'imč [L] | pray for ..A weather | -sinh [L] | try to (be).. A,V |
| -ca·q | involved in ..V-ing | -t'i:?'ita [L] | pretend to (be)..A,L,NP,V |
| -i·k' | go along..V-ing | -y'i·ha | die, suffer from (being).. A,V |
| -ins | move by ..V-ing | | |

1.3. NP Object or Sentential Base

| | | | |
|----------------|---|------------|-----------------------------------|
| -ahin | deprive of..O, prevent from (being)..V, L | -simč [L] | train to get..O, (be)..A, V |
| -a'yuk | cry for..O, due to..A; L, V | -t'u:t [L] | potlatch for..O, for a ..A reason |
| -c'i·nh | order..O, someone to..V | -u: [(R)L] | do..A, V with others, do with ..O |
| -in (~-in) [R] | make sound of..O, sound..A | -wa- | say..O, to someone to..V |

2. Governing Adjectival Affixes

2.1. NP Object Base

| | | | | | |
|--------------|----------------------|-------------|---------------------------|--------------|------------------------------|
| -a'at(k) [L] | destined for.. | -hwak | dressed in.. | -p'i·č [L] | having..as, spouse |
| -?ab | aware of.. | -i·c | owned by.. | -p'u·qš | smelling of.. |
| -atsimhi [L] | liking.. | -ičas [L] | having.. as bedcover | -(q)kijū | related to.. |
| -a:buk [R] | care for.. | -kum [RL+L] | for sake of.. | -(q)imš | round-shaped.. |
| -a:s | belonging to.. | -(kw)a·št | dried.. | -sim [R] | needing.. |
| -?a·ta | lacking.. | -kwin [R] | little.. | -sy'u·č [L] | ..exposed |
| -a:wit [L] | expecting.. | -k'uk [R] | resembling.. | -šahi | having..wrong |
| -chi | married to.. | -mat [L] | born at..place | -(š)taqyu | powered by.. |
| -ckwi· | remaining.. | -mhi [R] | fit for.. | -(š)tis [L] | in reference to, guided by.. |
| -c'ib | dangerous, tabooed.. | -mi·h | sore in.. body part | -?ut | having..as vehicle. |
| -či·p [L] | ..resource stored up | -na·kʷ | having.. | -(w)inkʷ [L] | mixed with.. |
| -(č)ža· | named.. | -naq | liking..food | -(w)inq [L] | baited with.. |
| -čap [R] | sore in.. body part | -naqa [L] | baited with.. | -y'iħ | on account of.. |
| -(č)i·č | clothed in.. | -nit | stocked with ..resource | -y'uk | wrapped in.. fabric |
| -hsa· | want to eat.. | -n'a·h | seeking.. | -šašt | done by..human agent |
| -htin | made of.. | -p'a· [L] | disliking.. | | |
| -hu:t | having.. as visitor | -p'at | tasting of.., amazed at.. | | |

2.2. Sentential Base

| | | | |
|----------------|------------------------|--------------|----------------------|
| -i:kʷ [(R(L))] | given to..V-ing | -p'it | ...A in size |
| -maħsa | wanting to..V | -sah | because of being ..A |
| -maħaqħ | want to (be)..A,L,NP,V | -w'it'as | about to (be) ..L,V |
| -mu:t | formerly..A | -yu: (~-ču:) | ..A, V-ed |
| -m'u:p | away for..V-ing,T | -y'a | troubled by ..V-ing |
| -n'ah [L] | ready to..V | | |

2.3. NP Object or Sentential Base

- anu: (~i-nuxi (~N)) [L] because of ..O; due to..V-ing
- c'a:k (~cy'a:k) like, dressed in,..O, seems to be A,V
- (a)inkw [L] with..O, working with..O, about to (be) ..L,V
- ith (~-?a:th) [R] waiting for..O, about to (be) ..L,V
- k'wāp [L] like..O, like to..V
- p'u: (~N) paid in..O (currency), paid for..V-ing.

- (s)taqa [(RL)] for the sake of..O, for ..A reason, order to..V
- ?u:kt obtained from..O, by..V-ing
- (w)inq baited with..O, to ..V
- w'at related to..O, by..V-ing
- (y)u: ?at perceiving..O, someone V-ing
- y'it giving evidence of..O, V-ing

3. Governing Nominal Affixes

3.1. NP Base

- ?aqqa ..animal hide
- a'qs mythical female..animal
- ?aqsp female inhabitant of..
- ?a:th (~-?ath) male inhabitant of..
- (c)smit ..(berry) plant
- im ..animal
- in ..thing
- ?i:qsa ..kin
- i:w ..berry
- ma (~-um/ Cw; -im/ third or later syllable) ..animal, body-part, man-made thing

- ma:c (~-imc / third or later syllable ..animal, sea plant
- makt ..plant
- mi:k [E] human getter of.. resource
- min ..sea animal, rattle
- mit (~-pt / V.) ..plant
- m'i:t mythical male..animal
- na ..animal, natural object
- sa:hatakw ..kind, class
- saq ..animal skin
- sim ..thing
- sy'ik / -sy'up ..thing
- (s)taq- ..bunch

3.2. Sentential Base

- apx human who ..V
- ck'wi remains of..V-ing
- hta instrument for..V-ing
- i:ta human who ..V
- ma:kw human expert at ..V-ing

- nik person who is a ..A type
- (q)hsixi human who ..V
- stu:p thing resulting from ..V-ing
- (s)tu:p animal which ..V (typically)
- y'ikw (~-?ikw) instrument for (being) ..A,V-ing

3.3. Quantity Base

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| -c'aq ..vessels | -p'i:t ..long bulky objects | -saq ..skins |
| -hta:kw ..soft vessels | -p'it ..handspans | -sath ..tribes |
| -ista ..passengers in sea vessel | -qimb ..round objects | -y'it ..fathoms |

3.4. NP or Sentential Base

- | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|---|
| - <i>a</i> ³ <i>cy'a</i> | / -(c) <i>sy'i</i> | ..thing, thing associated with (being) ..A,V-ing | natural object, business of (being) ..A,V-ing |
| - <i>i.n</i> [L] | ..means of suspension, thing hung for ..V-ing | - <i>p'at'a</i> | ..man-made thing, thing associated with (being) ..A,V-ing |
| - <i>?in</i> | costume for ..O,V-ing | - <i>saca</i> (~-ic) | ..receptacle, receptacle for ..V-ing |
| - <i>mis</i> | ..plant, body substance | - <i>u'l w</i> | place for ..O,V-ing |

4. Governing Locative Affixes

- | | | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------|-------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| - <i>ca</i> | toward..L,NP | - <i>čh</i> | ..L deep | - <i>sa.ca</i> (~-ic) | in ..Qy |
| -(c) <i>skw</i> | ..NP far apart | - <i>či</i> [RL] | attached to | places | |
| - <i>cuq</i> | in ..L hand | | ..NP | -(w)ak ^w int[<i>L</i>] | with the head at ..NP |
| - <i>eu:t</i> | on ..L side | - <i>(k)ča:s</i> | beside ..NP | -(y)u's | ..L,Qy at home |

5. Governing Temporal Affixes

- | | | | | | |
|----------------|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|---------|--------------|
| - <i>či:t</i> | for..Qy days | - <i>p'at</i> | in, for ..Qy seasons | -(y)iyā | time of ..NP |
| - <i>?i čh</i> | in, for ..Qy seasons | - <i>q?i·čh</i> | for ..Qy years | | |

6. Governing Quantity Affixes

- | | | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| - <i>i.q</i> | ..Qy score | - <i>p'inq</i> | ..Qy times around | - <i>p'it</i> | for ..Qy times |
| - <i>m'a</i> [L] | ..NP quantity | | | - <i>t'im</i> [L] | ..Qy at a time |

7. Restrictive Locative Affixes

7.1. Body Part (Head)

- | | | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| - <i>cit'im</i> | at side of head | - <i>(č)uxs</i> | at head as headgear | - <i>qi:</i> | at head, end, promontory |
| - <i>c'a·qi</i> | at head | - <i>i.k</i> | at head | - <i>qin</i> | at head; bow of vessel |
| - <i>c'a:s</i> | at crown of head | - <i>inqe</i> | at back of head, upper nape | | |

7.2. Body Part (Face)

- | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| - <i>aksut</i> | at lips, rim, mouth, opening of cave | - <i>c'itb</i> | at front of face | - <i>ihta</i> | at nose, point |
| - <i>?dqsut</i> | at mouth | - <i>(c)suk</i> | at nose, septum | - <i>im[R]</i> | at ear |
| - <i>(c)s'a:t'</i> | at forehead, cliff face | - <i>(c)sub</i> [R+L] | at eye | - <i>p'a?</i> | at forehead |
| - <i>(c)sitk^w</i> | at cheek | - <i>c'uq</i> | in mouth, closed container | - <i>p'uqb[R]</i> | at cheek |
| | | | | - <i>(q)u'b</i> | at face, along wall |

7.3. Body Part (Torso)

| | | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------------------|------------|-------------------------------|
| -a·csa (~-(c)si·) | at | -cit·'ak̥i | at hip | -ku·'k [R] | at loins |
| | lap | - (c)sw·int [RL] | at armpit | -mi·'ka | at bottom, rump |
| -?a·č | at crotch, bay | - (c)su·q̥t | at guts, emotions | -pi· | at middle (along spine), back |
| -'ak̥i* | at rump, rear | -i·t | voice, at throat | -p'i· | at upper back |
| -'a·p'i· | at back | -inqa | at belly, interior of land | - (w)int | at neck, collarbone |
| -ashut | at chest, front | -i·t | at body | -yim [R] | at shoulder, blade, upper arm |
| -cit | | | | | |

7.4. Body Part (Limbs)

| | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------------|--------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------|
| -?a·c'ž | at palm, sole | - (c)sput | between legs | -in'uk [R(+L)] | at hand |
| -a·n'už [R+L] | at leg, along long thin object | - (c)st'iaw- | [R] at thigh, branch | -p'aq [R] | at knee, hill |
| -as [PL] | at wrist | - (c)ink [R] | at calf | - (q)hta [R] | at foot |

7.5. Nature

| | | | | | |
|----------|--------------------|------------|----------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| -'a·?a | on rocks, edge | - (c)sti·s | up inlet | - (q)hsa [L] | along bank |
| -ačišt | at, on water | -c'a·tu | far out at sea | -qu· | at point |
| -'aqñ·s | in forest, | -c'ita | far out at sea | - (w)ač | at water margin |
| -'as | outside, on ground | -cis | at beach, sea | - (w)aqsa [L] | at edge of stream, bank |
| -asu·s | under water | -n'a·q | at top of height | - (y)u·k | all over land (in view) |
| - (c)sit | at water level | -n'i | just offshore, down slope to sea | | |

7.6. Man-made Objects

| | | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-----------|--------------------------|-----------|------------------------|
| -a·c(in) | at bow of boat | -c'u· | in container | -p'i· | at handle |
| -'ahs (~-qs/ V) | at, in vessel | -h [R+L] | at sleeve | -p'i· | at edge of wall, house |
| -a·sc' | on roof | -i·c' [L] | at top, rim of container | - (q)čs | at vehicle |
| - (c)sa·m'aqñ | at wall | -i·t | in house | - (q)hsa· | at bundle |
| - (c)su·ž [R] | at wall | - (kʷ)iqs | at lid | -yin | in bow of vessel |

7.7. Spatial Extension or Relation

| | | | | | |
|------------|------------------------|-------|--------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| -a·qt | extending across | -hta | apart | -scim | with others |
| -as | attached | -i·č | on, covering | -u·č | extending out in view |
| - (c)st'uq | behind, out of view | -pi·t | extending across (in mid-line) | - (w)i·c [L] | extending along edge |
| - (c)swi· | extending out, through | | | | |

7.8. Abstract Geometric Configurations

| | | | |
|----------|------------------|-------------|------------------|
| -a'kut | in front | -a's | on |
| -?at | at flat surface | -?ata | at opening |
| -atc'a | at upright plane | -ci't | at edge |
| -apa [L] | above, in sky | -(c)s'im | at opening |
| -'aput | underneath | -(c)skwa'pt | at hole, chimney |
| -aqit | inside | -hin [R] | at end |
| -aqst | within | -hsn'a'k | in middle |
| | | -hsn'u't | in between |

| | |
|-------------|-----------------|
| -'i'k' [L] | below |
| -kumqki | behind |
| -misa | at top |
| -pin | at edge |
| -p'ič | at upright base |
| -(q)imt | at curved thing |
| -(s)tqa | at back, behind |
| -(w)a'a [L] | at edge |

8. Restrictive Verbal Affixes

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------------------|--------|--------------------|
| -?ata | sink, go down | -mat- | move about |
| -vita | burp | -n'i | come home; arrive |
| -(c)suhta | come-out of woods | -pa | go over, past |
| -hc'i | hold over fire to dry | -panč | go along, randomly |
| -ht | go downstream | -p'aq | going by |
| -i?i(?) | come into the house | -qči'k | go along |
| -in | come | -sit | happen |
| -k'ist | come out of hole | | |

| | |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| -suwi(?) (~-su:(?)) | die, get destroyed |
| -u'k | go along |
| -wahst | go out |
| -wi | (point) goes out first |
| -w'itta | come out of vessel |
| -w'is | come up to surface of water |
| -w'isč | move further up bank, slope |

9. Restrictive Adjectival Affixes

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|------------|-----------------|
| -(?a)k'va- | completely, destroyed | -či'p | for |
| -apa [RL+L] | too, very | -h | pejoratively |
| -ck'in | slightly | -k'va'(y)t | absent, lacking |
| -(c)st'ab [(RcL)] | re-ciprocally | -(q)aq | very |

| | |
|-----------|--------------|
| -(q)h'č | excessively |
| -(s)as | really |
| -t'i:na | slightly |
| -w'is [R] | accidentally |
| -(y)i't | for |

10. Restrictive Quantity Affixes

| | | | |
|-------|--------------|----------|----|
| -'aqa | "severally, | -i'h [L] | PL |
| CV# | distributive | -t-[R] | PL |

| | |
|------|-----------|
| -Vy' | [L] PL |
| -yu' | severally |

11. Restrictive Temporal Affixes

| | | | |
|----------|---------------|--------|-------------|
| -aya [L] | slowly | -pa:c' | immediately |
| -'iň | prospectively | -p'ičh | while |
| -(kw)a:w | at intervals | | |

| | |
|-------|------------------------|
| -(q)h | meanwhile, in contrast |
| -wi | at first |

VITA

Surname ROSE Given Names SUZANNE MARIA

Place of Birth VANCOUVER, B.C. Date of Birth March 26, 1952

Educational Institutions Attended, with Dates of Entering and Leaving

UNIVERSITY OF VICTORIA, VICTORIA, B.C. 1969 to 1976

UNIVERSITY OF VICTORIA, VICTORIA, B.C. 1978 to 1981



to _____

Degrees, Diplomas, etc., Awarded with Dates and Names of Institutions

B.A. (Honors) 1974 University of Victoria, Victoria

M.A. 1976 University of Victoria, Victoria

Honours and Awards:

Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council Doctoral Fellowship,

1978-1981

Publications:

PARTIAL COPYRIGHT LICENSE

I hereby grant the right to lend my dissertation (the title of which is shown below) to users of the University of Victoria Library, and to make single copies only for such users or in response to a request from the library of any other university, or similar institution, on its behalf or for one of its users. I further agree that permission for extensive copying of this dissertation for scholarly purposes may be granted by me or a member of the University designated by me. It is understood that copying or publication of this dissertation for financial gain shall not be allowed without my written permission.

Title of Dissertation

KYUQUOT GRAMMAR

Author

Suzanne Maria Rose

Suzanne Maria Rose

Date

August 20, 1981